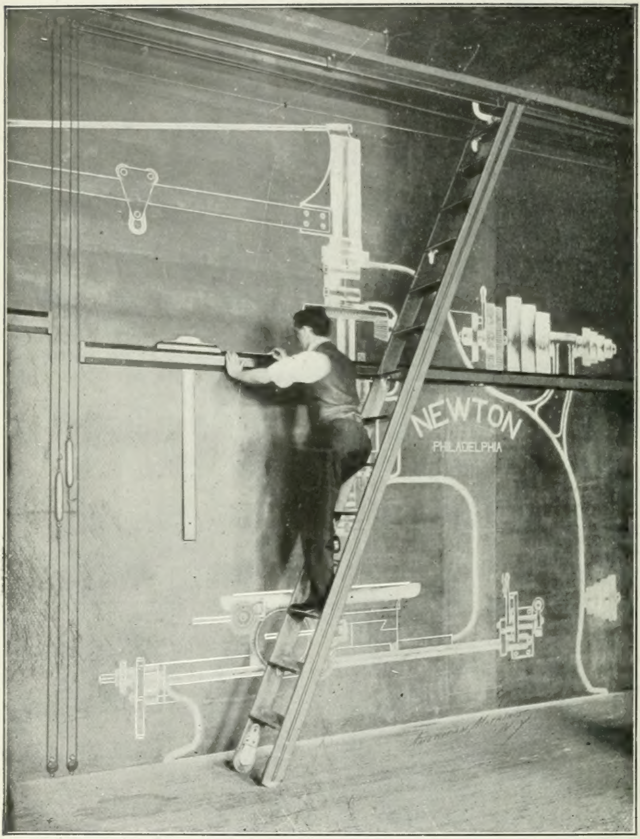
3 1761 07550662 6

I ④

258c



LARGE BLACKBOARD USED IN THE DRAWING ROOM OF THE NEWTON MACHINE TOOL WORKS.

Cyclopedia
of
Mechanical Engineering

A General Reference Work
ON MACHINE SHOP PRACTICE, TOOL MAKING, FORGING, PATTERN MAKING,
FOUNDRY WORK, METALLURGY, STEAM BOILERS AND ENGINES,
GAS PRODUCERS, GAS ENGINES, AUTOMOBILES, ELEVATORS,
REFRIGERATION, SHEET METAL WORK, MECHANICAL DRAWING, MACHINE DESIGN, ETC.

Editor-in-Chief
HOWARD MONROE RAYMOND, B. S.
DEAN, ARMOUR INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY

Assisted by a Corps of
MECHANICAL ENGINEERS, TECHNICAL EXPERTS, AND DESIGNERS OF THE
HIGHEST PROFESSIONAL STANDING

Illustrated with over Two Thousand Engravings

SEVEN VOLUMES

107271
13. 1. 11

SCHOOL OF PRACTICAL SCIENCE TORONTO

CHICAGO
AMERICAN TECHNICAL SOCIETY
1908

COPYRIGHT, 1908
BY
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF CORRESPONDENCE

COPYRIGHT, 1908
BY
AMERICAN TECHNICAL SOCIETY

Entered at Stationers' Hall, London.
All Rights Reserved.

TJ
9
A54
1908
v. 7

LIBRARY
MAY 6 - 1974
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

Editor-in-Chief

HOWARD MONROE RAYMOND, B. S.

Dean, Armour Institute of Technology

Editors and Authors

EDWARD R. MARKHAM

Consulting Mechanical Engineer.
Instructor in Machine Shop Work, Harvard University and Rindge Manual Training School.
Formerly Superintendent, Waltham Watch Tool Co.
American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

CHARLES L. GRIFFIN, S. B.

Mechanical Engineer, Semet-Solvay Co.
Formerly Professor of Machine Design, Pennsylvania State College.
American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

WALTER B. SNOW, S. B.

Formerly Mechanical Engineer, B. F. Sturtevant Co.
American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

LOUIS DERR, S. B., A. M.

Associate Professor of Physics, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

WM. C. STIMPSON

Head Instructor in Foundry Work and Forging, Department of Science and Technology, Pratt Institute.

RALPH H. SWEETSER, S. B.

Superintendent Algoma Steel Co., Ltd.
American Institute of Mining Engineers.
Formerly Instructor, Massachusetts Institute of Technology

GEORGE F. GEBHARDT, M. E., M. A.

Professor of Mechanical Engineering, Armour Institute of Technology.

Editors and Authors—Continued

GEORGE L. FOWLER, A. B., M. E.

Consulting Engineer.
American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
American Railway Master Mechanics' Association.

* * *

JOHN LORD BACON

Instructor in Forge Work, Lewis Institute, Chicago.

* * *

EDWARD D. AGLE

Superintendent of Shops and Instructor in Machine Tool Work, Armour Institute of Technology.

* * *

FREDERICK W. TURNER

Instructor in Machine Shop Work, Mechanic Arts High School, Boston.

* * *

WALTER S. LELAND, S. B.

Assistant Professor of Naval Architecture, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.
American Society of Naval Architects and Marine Engineers.

* * *

HELON BROOKS MACFARLAND, B. S., M. M. E.

Associate Professor of Mechanics, Armour Institute of Technology.

* * *

LEON H. RITTENHOUSE, M. E.

Head of Department of Engineering, Haverford College.
Formerly Instructor in Mechanical Engineering, American School of Correspondence.

* * *

EDWARD B. WAITE

Head of Instruction Department, American School of Correspondence.
American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

* * *

WALTER H. JAMES, S. B.

Department of Mechanical Drawing, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

* * *

S. H. BUNNELL

Master of Works, Watertown Engine Co., Watertown, N. Y.

Editors and Authors—Continued

RAYMOND BURNHAM, M. E.

Associate Professor of Experimental Engineering, Armour Institute of Technology.

❧

LIONEL S. MARKS, S. B., M. M. E.

Assistant Professor of Mechanical Engineering, Harvard University.
American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

❧

ALFRED E. ZAPF, S. B.

Secretary, American School of Correspondence.

❧

WILLIAM NEUBECKER

Instructor, Sheet Metal Department of New York Trade School.
Formerly Superintendent, Foerster Co.

❧

LAWRENCE K. SAGER, S. B., M. P. L.

Patent Attorney and Electrical Expert.
Formerly Assistant Examiner, U. S. Patent Office.

❧

GEORGE R. METCALFE, M. E.

Head of Technical Publication Department, Westinghouse Electric & Manufacturing Company.
Formerly Technical Editor, "Street-Railway Review."

❧

SAMUEL S. WYER

Mechanical Engineer.
American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

❧

ARTHUR L. RICE, M. M. E.

Editor of "The Engineer," Chicago.

❧

ROBERT V. PERRY, S. B., M. E.

Associate Professor of Machine Design, Armour Institute of Technology.

❧

CHARLES DAY

With Dodge & Day, Engineers, Philadelphia.
American Institute of Electrical Engineers.

Editors and Authors—Continued

CHARLES E. DURYEA

First Vice-President, American Motor League.
Author of "Roadside Troubles."

◆

WILLIAM S. NEWELL, S. B.

With Bath Iron Works, Bath, Me.
Formerly Instructor, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

◆

ERNEST L. WALLACE, B. S.

Instructor in Electrical Engineering, American School of Correspondence.
American Institute of Electrical Engineers.

◆

L. ALLEN SOMMER

Instructor in Machine Tool Work, Armour Institute of Technology.

◆

ALFRED S. JOHNSON, Ph. D.

Formerly Editor, "The Technical World Magazine."

◆

ERVIN KENISON, S. B.

Department of Mechanical Drawing, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

◆

JOHN H. JALLINGS

Mechanical Engineer.

◆

JAMES RITCHEY

Formerly Instructor in Wood Working, Armour Institute of Technology

◆

LAWRENCE S. SMITH, S. B.

Department of Mechanical Engineering, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

◆

CHARLES DICKERMAN

Refrigerating Engineer, Pennsylvania Iron Works Co.

◆

HARRIS C. TROW, S. B., *Managing Editor*

Editor of Textbook Department, American School of Correspondence.
American Institute of Electrical Engineers.

Authorities Consulted

THE editors have freely consulted the standard technical literature of America and Europe in the preparation of these volumes. They desire to express their indebtedness, particularly, to the following eminent authorities, whose well-known treatises should be in the library of every Mechanical Engineer.

Grateful acknowledgment is here made also for the invaluable co-operation of the foremost manufacturers and engineering firms, in making these volumes thoroughly representative of the best and latest practice in the design and construction of steam and gas engines, machine tools, and other classes of modern machinery; also for the valuable drawings and data, suggestions, criticisms, and other courtesies.

IRVING P. CHURCH, C. E.

Professor of Applied Mechanics and Hydraulics, College of Civil Engineering, Cornell University.
Author of "Mechanics of Engineering."

❧

ROBERT H. THURSTON, C. E., Ph. B., A. M., LL. D., Dr. Eng.

Late Director of Sibley College of Engineering, Cornell University.
Author of "The Materials of Engineering," "A Textbook of the Materials of Construction," "Manual of the Steam Engine," "Manual of Steam Boilers," "History of the Steam Engine," etc.

❧

PETER SCHWAMB, S. B.

Professor of Machine Design, and Director of Mechanical Laboratories, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.
Author of "Notes on Gearing."

❧

JOHN LORD BACON

Instructor in Forge Work, Lewis Institute; American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
Author of "Forge Practice."

❧

EDWARD R. MARKHAM

Instructor in Machine Shop Work, Harvard University and Rindge Manual Training School; Formerly Superintendent, Waltham Watch Tool Co.
Author of "The American Steel Worker."

❧

SIMPSON BOLLAND

Author of "The Iron Founder," "The Iron Founder's Supplement," "Encyclopedia of Founding," "Dictionary of Foundry Terms," etc.

❧

THOMAS D. WEST

Practical Moulder and Foundry Manager; Member, American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
Author of "American Foundry Practice."

❧

DAVID ALLAN LOW

Whitworth Scholar; M. I. Mech. E., Professor of Engineering, East London Technical College.
Author of "Machine Design."

Authorities Consulted—Continued

WILLIAM KENT, A. M., M. E.

Consulting Engineer; Dean of the L. C. Smith College of Applied Science, Syracuse University; Member of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, etc.

Author of "The Mechanical Engineer's Pocket Book," "Strength of Materials," "Steam Boiler Economy," etc.

GARDNER D. HISCOX, M. E.

Author of "Gas, Gasoline, and Oil Engines," "Modern Steam Engineering," "Mechanical Movements, Powers, Devices," "Compressed Air and Its Applications," etc.

GARDNER C. ANTHONY, A. M., Sc. D.

Professor of Technical Drawing, and Dean of the Department of Engineering, Tufts College, Mass.

Author of "Elements of Mechanical Drawing," "Machine Drawing," "The Essentials of Gearing."

OSCAR E. PERRIGO, M. E.

Author of "Modern American Lathe Practice," "Modern Machine Shop Construction, Equipment, and Management," "Change Gear Devices," "The Milling Machine and Its Work," "Gear Cutting," "Pattern Making and Moulding," etc.

SAMUEL S. WYER

Mechanical Engineer; American Society of Mechanical Engineers, etc.

Author of "Treatise on Producer Gas and Gas-Producers," and "Catechism on Producer Gas."

CECIL H. PEABODY, S. B.

Professor of Marine Engineering and Naval Architecture, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

Author of "Thermodynamics of the Steam Engine," "Tables of the Properties of Saturated Steam," "Valve Gears to Steam Engines," "Manual of Steam Engine Indicators," "Steam Boilers."

MANSFIELD MERRIMAN, Ph. D.

Professor of Civil Engineering, Lehigh University; Member of American Society of Civil Engineers, etc.

Author of "Mechanics of Materials," "Treatise on Hydraulics," "Elements of Sanitary Engineering," etc.

JOSHUA ROSE, M. E.

Author of "Mechanical Drawing Self-Taught," "Modern Steam Engineering," "Steam Boilers," "The Slide Valve," "Pattern Maker's Assistant," "Complete Machinist," etc.

WILLIAM JOHN MACQUORN RANKINE, LL. D., F. R. S. S.

Civil Engineer; Late Regius Professor of Civil Engineering and Mechanics in the University of Glasgow, etc.

Author of "Applied Mechanics," "The Steam Engine," "Civil Engineering," "Useful Rules and Tables," "Machinery and Mill Work," "A Mechanical Textbook."

C. W. MacCORD, A. M., Sc. D.

Professor of Mechanical Drawing and Designing, Stevens Institute of Technology.

Author of "Kinematics or Practical Mechanism," "Elements of Descriptive Geometry," "Mechanical Drawing," "Velocity Diagrams," "Movement of Slide Valves by Eccentrics."

Authorities Consulted—Continued

GAETANO LANZA, S. B., C. E., M. E.

Professor of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics, Massachusetts Institute of Technology; Member of American Society of Mechanical Engineers, etc.

Author of "Applied Mechanics."

M. NISBET-LATTA

Member American Gas Institute; Member American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

Author of "Hand-Book of American Gas-Engineering Practice."

EDWARD F. MILLER

Professor of Steam Engineering, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

Author of "Steam Boilers."

JOSEPH V. WOODWORTH, M. E.

Author of "American Tool Making " "Punches, Dies, and Tools for Manufacturing in Presses," "Dies, Their Construction and Use for the Modern Working of Sheet Metals," etc.

WILLIAM C. UNWIN, F. R. S., M. Inst. C. E.

Professor of Civil and Mechanical Engineering, Central Technical College, City and Guilds of London Institute, etc.

Author of "Machine Design," "The Development and Transmission of Power from Central Stations," etc.

J. A. EWING, M. A., B. Sc., F. R. S., M. Inst. C. E.

Professor of Mechanism and Applied Mechanics in the University of Cambridge.

Author of "The Steam Engine and Other Heat Engines."

L. ELLIOTT BROOKES

Author of the "Automobile Handbook," "Practical Gas and Oil Engine Handbook," "The Calculation of Horsepower Made Easy," "20th Century Machine Shop Practice."

JOHN PERRY, D. Sc., F. R. S.

Professor of Mechanics and Mathematics in the Royal College of Science; Vice-President of the Institution of Electrical Engineers; Vice-President of the Physical Society.

Author of "The Steam Engine and Gas and Oil Engines."

JOHN GOODMAN

Professor of Engineering in the Yorkshire College, Leeds (Victoria University); Whitworth Scholar; Associate Member of the Institution of Civil Engineers; Member of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers.

Author of "Mechanics Applied to Engineering.'

R. E. MATHOT, M. E.

Member of the Societé des Ingenieurs Civils de France, Institution of Mechanical Engineers, Association des Ingénieurs de L'École des Mines du Hainaut, of Brussels.

Author of "Gas-Engines and Producer-Gas Plants."

Authorities Consulted—Continued

A. JAY DU BOIS, C. E., Ph. D.

Professor of Civil Engineering in the Sheffield Scientific School of Yale University.
Author of "The Mechanics of Engineering."

WILLIAM METCALF

Engineer and Steel Manufacturer; Member of American Society of Mechanical Engineers, etc.
Author of "Steel: A Manual for Steel Users."

JOSEPH G. HORNER

Associate Member of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers.
Author of "Pattern Making," "Hoisting Machinery," "Tools for Engineers and Woodworkers," "Engineers' Turning," etc.

J. E. SIEBEL

Director Zymotechnic Institute, Chicago.
Author of "Compend of Mechanical Refrigeration."

WILLIAM RIPPER

Professor of Mechanical Engineering in the Sheffield Technical School; Member of the Institute of Mechanical Engineers.
Author of "Machine Drawing and Design," "Practical Chemistry," "Steam," etc.

HENRY M. HOWE, B. S., A. M., LL. D.

Professor of Metallurgy, Columbia University.
Author of "Iron, Steel, and Other Alloys," "Metallurgical Laboratory Notes."

IRA REMSEN, M. D., Ph. D., LL. D.

President of Johns Hopkins University, and Professor of Chemistry, etc.
Author of "Principles of Theoretical Chemistry," "Introduction to the Study of the Compounds of Carbon," "The Elements of Chemistry," "Inorganic Chemistry," etc.

ROBERT GRIMSHAW, M. E.

Author of "Steam Engine Catechism," "Boiler Catechism," "Locomotive Catechism," "Engine Runner's Catechism," "Shop Kinks," etc.

HAROLD M. ROYLE, F. C. S.

Chief Chemical Assistant of the Beckton Gas Works.
Author of "The Chemistry of Gas Manufacture."

JOHN G. LIVERIDGE

Chief Engineer, R. N.; Instructor in Applied Mechanics and Engine Design, Royal Naval College, Greenwich.
Author of "Engine Room Practice."

Foreword

THE rapid advances made in recent years in the field of Mechanical Engineering, as seen in the evolution of improved types of machinery, new mechanical processes and methods, and even new materials of workmanship, have created a distinct necessity for an authoritative work of general reference embodying the accumulated results of modern experience and the latest approved practice. The Cyclopedia of Mechanical Engineering is designed to fill this acknowledged need.

¶ The aim of the publishers has been to create a work which, while adequate to meet all demands of the technically trained expert, will appeal equally to the self-taught practical man, who, as a result of the unavoidable conditions of his environment, may be denied the advantages of training at a resident technical school. The Cyclopedia not only covers the fundamentals that underlie all mechanical engineering, but places the reader in direct contact with the experience of teachers fresh from practical work, thus putting him abreast of the latest progress and furnishing him that adjustment to advanced modern needs and conditions which is a necessity even to the technical graduate.

¶ The Cyclopedia of Mechanical Engineering is based upon the method which the American School of Correspondence has developed and successfully used for many years in teaching the principles and practice of engineering in its different branches. It is a compilation of representative Instruction Books of the

School, and forms a simple, practical, concise, and convenient reference work for the shop, the library, the school, and the home.

¶ The success which the American School of Correspondence has attained as a factor in the machinery of modern technical and scientific education is in itself the best possible guarantee for the present work. Therefore, while these volumes are a marked innovation in technical literature—representing, as they do, the best ideas and methods of a large number of *different* authors, each an acknowledged authority in his work—they are by no means an experiment, but are in fact based on what has proved itself to be the most successful method yet devised for the education of the busy workingman. They have been prepared only after the most careful study of modern needs as developed under the conditions of actual practice in the Machine Shop, the Engine Room, the Drafting Room, the Factory, etc. The formulæ of the higher mathematics have been avoided as far as possible, and every care exercised to elucidate the text by abundant and appropriate illustrations.

¶ Numerous examples for practice are inserted at intervals; these, with the test questions, help the reader to fix in mind the essential points, thus combining the advantages of a text-book with those of a reference work.

¶ Grateful acknowledgment is due the corps of editors and authors—engineers and designers of wide practical experience, and teachers of well-recognized ability—without whose co-operation this work would have been impossible.

Table of Contents

VOLUME VII

MECHANICAL DRAWING . *By E. Kenison and C. L. Griffin*[†] Page [*]11

Instruments and Materials — Orthographic Projection — Plan and Elevation — Co-ordinate Planes — Profile Plane — Working Drawings — Lines (Full, Invisible, etc.) — Location of Views — Cross-Sections — Shade Lines — Dimensions — Finished Surfaces — Conventional Representations — Scale Drawings — Sketches — Detail Drawing — Tracing — Blue-Printing — Assembly Drawing — Working Shop Drawings — Lettering — Inking — Order Sheets — Drafting Room Organization — Symbols — Material Lists — Filing System

MACHINE DESIGN . . . . . . *By C. L. Griffin* Page 197

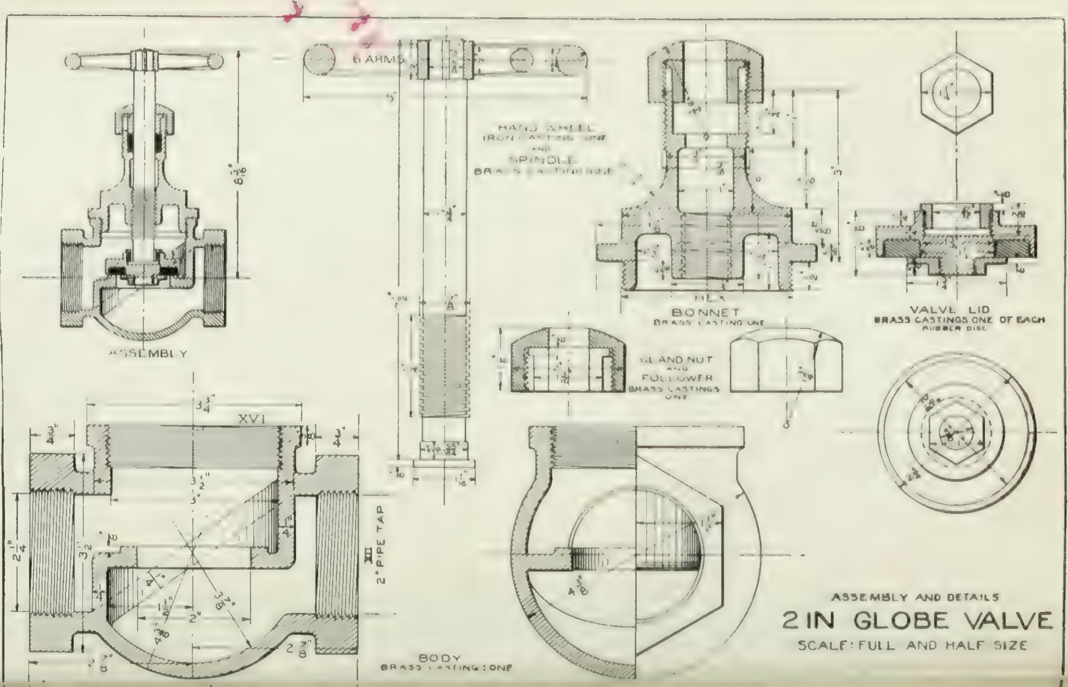
Principles and Method of Machine Design — Mechanical Thought, Development, and Specification — Theory and Production — Invention — Handbooks and Empirical Data — Calculations, Notes, Records — Sketches — Analysis of Conditions and Forces — Theoretical Design — Practical Modification — Delineation — Constructive Mechanics — Forces, Moments — Tension, Compression, Torsion — Friction and Lubrication — Working Stresses and Strains — Design of an Elevator Wire-Rope Drive — "Reversed" Machine Design — Design of Machine Tools (Lathe, Planer, Milling Machine, etc.) — Design of Motive-Power Machinery (Steam Engine, Air-Compressor, Steam Pump, etc.) — Design of Structural Machinery (Cranes, Elevators, Locomotives, Cars, Cableways, etc.) — Design of Mill and Plant Machinery (Rolling Mills, Mining Machinery, Crushers, Stamps, Drills, etc.) — Use of Cast and Wrought Iron and Steel — Suggestions on Original Design — Design of Component Parts of Machinery — Belts — Strength of Leather Belting — Horse-Power Transmitted by Belts — Speed of Belting — Material of Belting — Pulleys (Rim, Arms, Hub) — Split Pulleys — Special Forms of Pulleys — Shafts — Simple and Combined Stresses of Torsion, Bending, Compression — Deflection — Centrifugal Whirling — Horse-Power of Shafting — Bessemer, Open-Hearth, and Nickel Steel — Spur Gears — Involute and Cycloidal Curves — Pitch Circles — Mortise Teeth — Shrouding — Hook-Tooth Gear — Stub Tooth — Web Gear — Bevel Gears — Worm and Worm Gear — Friction Clutches — Couplings (Flange, Clamp, Claw) — Bolts, Studs, Nuts, and Screws — Keys, Pins, and Cotters — Spline — Bearings, Brackets, and Stands

GENERAL INDEX . . . . Page 389

---

[*] For page numbers, see foot of pages.

[†] For professional standing of authors, see list of Editors and Authors at front of volume.



ASSEMBLY AND DETAILS

2 IN GLOBE VALVE

SCALE: FULL AND HALF SIZE

MECHANICAL DRAWING

PART I

The subject of mechanical drawing is of great interest and importance to all mechanics and engineers. Drawing is the method used to show graphically the small details of machinery; it is the language by which the designer speaks to the workman; it is the most graphical way to place ideas and calculations on record. Working drawings take the place of lengthy explanations, either written or verbal. A brief inspection of an accurate, well-executed drawing gives a better idea of a machine than a large amount of verbal description. The better and more clearly a drawing is made, the more intelligently the workman can comprehend the ideas of the designer. A thorough training in this important subject is necessary to the success of everyone engaged in mechanical work. The success of a draftsman depends to some extent upon the quality of his instruments and materials. Beginners frequently purchase a cheap grade of instruments. After they have become expert and have learned to take care of their instruments they discard them for those of better construction and finish. This plan has its advantages, but to do the best work, strong, well-made and finely finished instruments are necessary.

INSTRUMENTS AND MATERIALS.

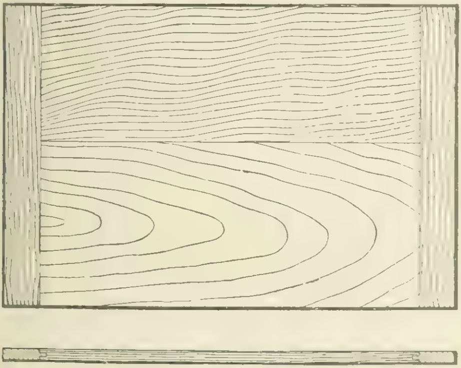
Drawing Paper. In selecting drawing paper, the first thing to be considered is the kind of paper most suitable for the proposed work. For shop drawings, a manilla paper is frequently used, on account of its toughness and strength, because the drawing is likely to be subjected to considerable hard usage. If a finished drawing is to be made, the best white drawing paper should be obtained, so that the drawing will not fade or become discolored with age. A good drawing paper should be strong, have uniform thickness and surface, should stretch evenly, and should neither repel nor absorb liquids. It should also allow considerable erasing without spoiling the surface, and it should lie smooth when stretched or when ink or colors are used. It is, of course, impossible to find all of these qualities in any one paper, as for instance great strength cannot be combined with fine surface.

In selecting a drawing paper the kind should be chosen which combines the greatest number of these qualities for the given work. Of the better class Whatman's are considered by far the best. This paper is made in three grades; the *hot pressed* has a smooth surface and is especially adapted for pencil and very fine line drawing, the *cold pressed* is rougher than the hot pressed, has a finely grained surface and is more suitable for water color drawing; the *rough* is used for tinting. The cold pressed does not take ink as well as the hot pressed, but erasures do not show as much on it, and it is better for general work. There is but little difference in the two sides of Whatman's paper, and either can be used. This paper comes in sheets of standard sizes as follows:—

Cap,	13 × 17 inches.	Elephant,	23 × 28 inches.
Demy,	15 × 20 "	Columbia,	23 × 34 "
Medium,	17 × 22 "	Atlas,	26 × 34 "
Royal	19 × 24 "	Double Elephant,	27 × 40 "
Super Royal,	19 × 27 "	Antiquarian,	31 × 53 "
Imperial,	22 × 30 "	Emperor,	48 × 68 "

The usual method of fastening paper to a drawing board is by means of thumb tacks or small one-ounce copper or iron tacks. In fastening the paper by this method first fasten the upper left hand corner and then the lower right pulling the paper taut. The other two corners are then fastened, and sufficient number of tacks are placed along the edges to make the paper lie smoothly. For very fine work the paper is usually stretched and glued to the board. To do this the edges of the paper are first turned up all the way round, the margin being at least one inch. The whole surface of the paper included between these turned up edges is then moistened by means of a sponge or soft cloth and paste or glue is spread on the turned up edges. After removing all the surplus water on the paper, the edges are pressed down on the board, commencing at one corner. During this process of laying down the edges, the paper should be stretched slightly by pulling the edges towards the edges of the drawing board. The drawing board is then placed horizontally and left to dry. After the paper has become dry it will be found to be as smooth and tight as a drum head. If, in stretching, the paper is stretched too much it is likely to split in drying. A slight stretch is sufficient.

Drawing Board. The size of the drawing board depends upon the size of paper. Many draftsmen, however, have several boards of various sizes, as they are very convenient. The drawing board is usually made of soft pine, which should be well seasoned and straight grained. The grain should run lengthwise of the board, and at the two ends there should be pieces about 1½ or 2 inches wide fastened to the board by nails or screws. These end pieces should be perfectly straight for accuracy in using the T-square. Frequently the end pieces are fastened by a glued matched joint, nails and screws being also used. Two cleats on the bottom extending the whole width of the board, will reduce the tendency to warp, and make the board easier to move as they raise it from the table.



DRAWING BOARD

Thumb Tacks. Thumb tacks are used for fastening the paper to the drawing board. They are usually made of steel either pressed into shape, as in the cheaper grades, or made with a head of German silver with the point screwed and riveted to it. They are made in various sizes and are very convenient as they can be easily removed from the board. For most work however, draftsmen use small one-ounce copper or iron tacks, as they can be forced flush with the drawing paper, thus offering no obstruction to the T-square. They also possess the advantage of cheapness.

Pencils. In pencilling a drawing the lines should be very fine and light. To obtain these light lines a hard lead pencil must be used. Lead pencils are graded according to their hardness, and are numbered by using the letter H. In general a lead pencil of 5H or HHHHHH or 6H should be used. A softer pencil, 4H, is better for making letters, figures and points. A hard lead pencil should be sharpened as shown in Fig. 1. The wood is cut away so that about $\frac{1}{4}$ or $\frac{1}{2}$ inch of lead projects. The lead can then be sharpened to a chisel edge by rubbing it against a bit of sand paper or a fine file. It should be ground to a chisel edge and the corners slightly rounded. In making the straight lines the chisel edge should be used by placing it against the T-square or triangle, and because of the chisel edge the lead will remain sharp much longer than if sharpened to a point. This chisel edge enables the draftsman to draw a fine line exactly through a given point. If the drawing is not to be inked, but is made for tracing or for rough usage in the shop, a softer pencil, 3H or 4H, may be used, as the lines will then be somewhat thicker and heavier. The lead for compasses may also be sharpened to a point although some draftsmen prefer to use a chisel edge in the compasses as well as for the pencil.

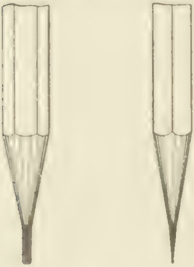


Fig. 1.

In using a very hard lead pencil, the chisel edge will make a deep depression in the paper if much pressure is put on the pencil. As this depression cannot be erased it is much better to press lightly on the pencil.

Erasers. In making drawings, but little erasing should be necessary. However, in case this is necessary, a soft rubber should be used. In erasing a line or letter, great care must be exercised or the surrounding work will also become erased. To prevent this, some draftsmen cut a slit about 3 inches long and $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch wide in a card as shown in Fig. 2. The card is then placed over the work and the line erased without erasing the rest of the drawing. An erasing shield of a form similar to that shown in Fig. 3 is very convenient, especially in erasing letters. It is made of thin sheet metal and is clean and durable.

For cleaning drawings, a sponge rubber may be used. Bread crumbs are also used for this purpose. To clean the drawing scatter *dry* bread crumbs over it and rub them on the surface with the hand.

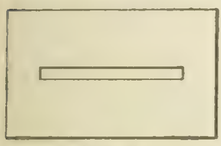


Fig. 2.

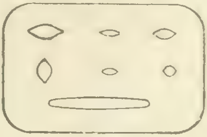


Fig. 3.

T-Square. The T-square consists of a thin straight edge called the blade, fastened to a head at right angles to it. It gets its name from the general shape. T-squares are made of various materials, wood being the most commonly used. Fig. 4 shows an ordinary form of T-square which is adapted to most work. In Fig. 5 is shown a T-square with edges made of ebony or mahogany, as these woods are much harder than pear wood or maple, which is generally used. The head is formed so as to fit against the left-hand edge of the drawing board, while the blade extends over the surface. It is desirable to have the blade of the T-square form a right angle with the head, so that the lines drawn with the T-square will be at right angles to the left-hand edge of the board. This, however, is not absolutely necessary, because the lines drawn with the T-square are always with reference to one edge of the

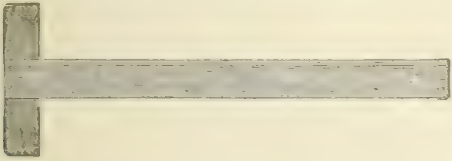


Fig. 4.

board only, and if this edge of the board is straight, the lines drawn with the T-square will be parallel to each other. The T-square should never be used except with the left-hand edge of the board, as it is almost impossible to find a drawing board with the edges parallel or at right angles to each other.

The T-square with an adjustable head is frequently very convenient, as it is sometimes necessary to draw lines parallel to each other which are not at right angles to the left-hand edge of the board. This form of T-square is similar to the ordinary T-square already described, but the head is swiveled so that it may be clamped at any desired angle. The ordinary T-square as shown in Figs. 4 and 5 is, however, adapted to almost any class of drawing.

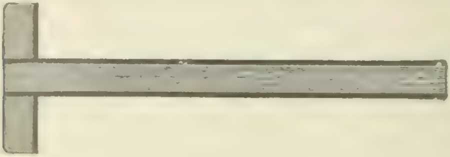


Fig. 5.

Fig. 6 shows the method of drawing parallel horizontal lines with the T-square. With the head of the T-square in contact with the left-hand edge of the board, the lines may be drawn by moving the T-square to the desired position. In using the T-square the upper edge should always be used for drawing as the two edges may not be exactly parallel and straight, and also it is more convenient to use this edge with the triangles. If it is necessary to use a straight edge for trimming drawings or cutting the paper from the board, the lower edge of the T-square should be used so that the upper edge may not be marred.

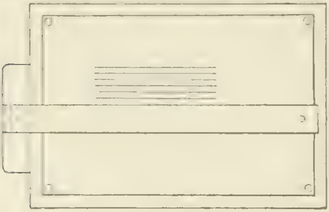


Fig. 6.

For accurate work it is absolutely necessary that the working edge of the T-square should be exactly straight. To test the straightness of the edge of the T-square, two T-squares may be placed together as shown in Fig. 7. This figure shows plainly that the edge of one of the T-squares is crooked. This fact, however, does not prove that either one is straight, and for this determination a third blade must be used and tried with the two given T-squares successively.

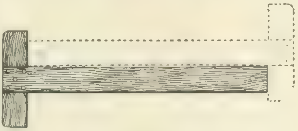
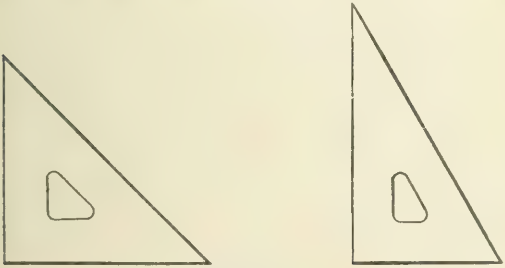


Fig. 7.

Triangles. Triangles are made of various substances such as wood, rubber, celluloid and steel. Wooden triangles are cheap but are likely to warp and get out of shape. The rubber triangles are frequently used, and are in general satisfactory. The transparent celluloid triangle is, however, extensively used on account of its transparency, which enables the draftsmen to see the work already done even when covered with the triangle. In using a rubber or celluloid triangle take care that it lies perfectly flat or is hung up when not in use; when allowed to lie on the drawing board with a pencil or an eraser under one corner it will become warped in a short time, especially if the room is hot or the sun happens to strike the triangle.



TRIANGLES.

Triangles are made in various sizes, and many draftsmen have several constantly on hand. A triangle from 6 to 8 inches on a side will be found convenient for most work, although there are many cases where a small triangle measuring about 4 inches on a side will be found useful. Two triangles are necessary for every draftsman, one having two angles of 45 degrees each and one a right angle; and the other having one angle of 60 degrees, one of 30 degrees and one of 90 degrees.

The value of the triangle depends upon the accuracy of the angles and the straightness of the edges. To test the accuracy of the right angle of a triangle, place the triangle with the lower edge resting on the edge of the T-square, as shown in Fig. 8. Now draw the line C D, which should be perpendicular to the edge of the T-square. The same triangle should then be placed in the position shown at B. If the right angle of the triangle is exactly 90 degrees the left-hand edge of the triangle should exactly coincide with the line C D.

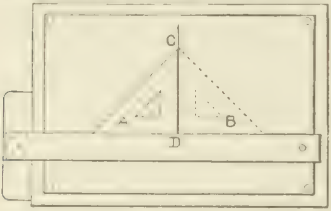


Fig. 8.

To test the accuracy of the 45-degree triangles, first test the right angle then place the triangle with the lower edge resting on the working edge of the T-square, and draw the line E F as shown in Fig. 9. Now without moving the T-square place the triangle so that the other 45-degree angle is in the position occupied by the first. If the two 45-degree angles coincide they are accurate.

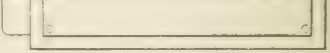


Fig. 9.

Triangles are very convenient in drawing lines at right angles to the T-square. The method of doing this is shown in Fig. 10. Triangles are also used in drawing lines at an angle with the horizontal, by placing them on the board as shown in Fig. 11. Suppose the line E F (Fig. 12) is drawn at any angle, and we wish to draw a line through the point P parallel to it.

MEDIUM PRICED DRAWING OUTFIT SHOWING THE INSTRUMENTS NECESSARY FOR PURSUING A COURSE IN MECHANICAL DRAWING.

First place one of the triangles as shown at A, having one edge coinciding with the given line. Now take the other triangle and place one of its edges in contact with the bottom edge of triangle A. Holding the triangle B firmly with the left hand the triangle A may be slipped along to the right or to the left until the edge of the triangle reaches the point P. The line M N may then be drawn along the edge of the triangle passing through the point P. In place of the triangle B any straight edge such as a T-square may be used.

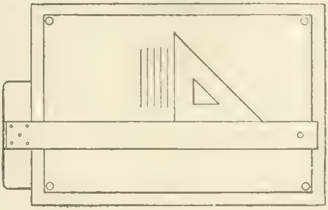


Fig. 10.

A line can be drawn perpendicular to another by means of the triangles as follows. Let E F (Fig. 13) be the given line, and suppose we wish to draw a line perpendicular to E F through the point D. Place the longest side of one of the triangles so that it coincides with the line E F, as the triangle is shown in position at A. Place the other triangle (or any straight edge) in the position of the triangle as shown at B, one edge resting against the edge of the triangle A. Then holding B with the left hand, place the triangle A in the position shown at C, so that the longest side passes through the point D. A line can then be drawn through the point D perpendicular to E F.

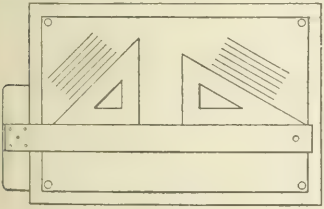


Fig. 11.

In previous figures we have seen how lines may be drawn making angles of 30, 45, 60 and 90 degrees with the horizontal. If it is desired to draw lines forming angles of 15 and 75 degrees the triangles may be placed as shown in Fig. 14.

In using the triangles and T-square almost any line may be drawn. Suppose we wish to draw a rectangle having one side horizontal. First place the T-square as shown in Fig. 15. By moving the T-square up or down, the sides A B and D C may be drawn, because they are horizontal and parallel. Now place one of the triangles resting on the T-square as shown at E, and having the left-hand edge passing through the point D. The vertical

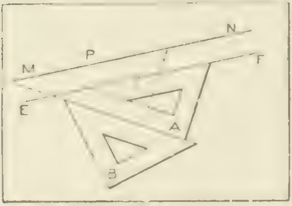


Fig. 12.

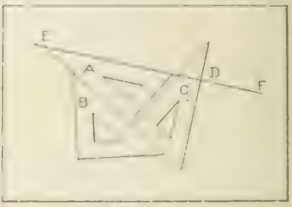


Fig. 13.

line D A may be drawn, and by sliding the triangle along the edge of the T-square to the position F the line B C may be drawn by using the same edge. These positions are shown dotted in Fig. 15.

If the rectangle is to be placed in some other position on the drawing board, as shown in Fig. 16, place the 45-degree triangle F so that one edge is parallel to or coincides with the side D C. Now holding the triangle F in position place the triangle H so that its upper edge coincides with the lower edge of the triangle F. By holding H in position and sliding the triangle F along its upper edge, the sides A B and D C may be drawn. To draw the sides A D and B C the triangle should be used as shown at E.

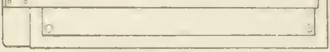


Fig. 14.

Compasses. Compasses are used for drawing circles and arcs of circles. They are made of various materials and in various sizes. The cheaper class of instruments are made of brass, but they are unsatisfactory on account of the odor and the tendency to tarnish. The best material is German silver. It does not soil readily, it has no odor, and is easy to keep clean. Aluminum instruments possess the advantage of lightness, but on account of the soft metal they do not wear well.

The compasses are made in the form shown in Figs. 17 and 18. Pencil and pen points are provided, as shown in Fig. 17. Either pen or pencil may be inserted in one leg by means of a shank and socket. The other leg is fitted with a needle point which is placed at the center of the circle. In most instruments the needle point is separate, and is made of a piece of round steel wire having a square shoulder at one or both ends. Below this shoulder the needle point projects. The needle is made in this form so that the hole in the paper may be very minute.

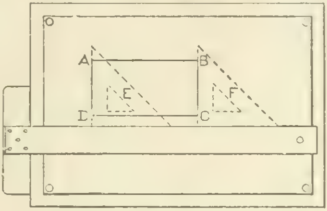


Fig. 15.

In some instruments lock nuts are used to hold the joint firmly in position. These lock nuts are thin discs of steel, with notches for using a wrench or forked key. Fig. 19 shows the detail of the joint of high grade instruments. Both legs are alike at the joint, and two pivoted screws are inserted in the yoke. This permits ample movement of the legs, and at the same time gives the proper stiffness. The flat surface of one of the legs is faced with steel, the other being of German silver, in order that the rubbing parts may be of different metals. Small set screws are used to prevent the pivoted screws from turning in the yoke. The contact surfaces of this joint are made circular to exclude dust and dirt and to prevent rusting of the steel face.

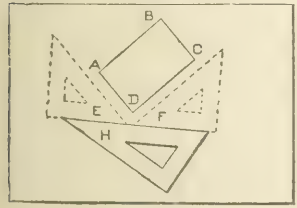


Fig. 16.

Figs. 20, 21 and 22 show the detail of the socket; in some instruments the shank and socket are pentagonal, as shown in Fig. 20. The shank enters the socket loosely, and is held in place by means of the screw. Unless used very carefully this arrangement is not durable because the sharp corners soon wear, and the pressure on the set screw is not sufficient to hold the shank firmly in place.

In Fig. 21 is shown another form of shank. This is round, having a flat top. A set screw is also used to hold this in position. A still better form of socket is shown in Fig. 22; the hole is made tapered and is circular. The shank fits accurately, and is held in perfect alignment by a small steel key. The clamping screw is placed upon the side, and keeps the two portions of the split socket together.

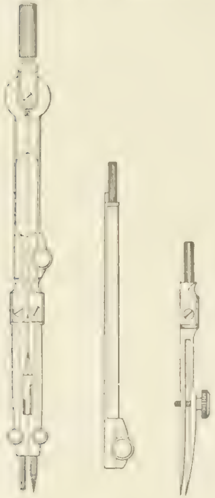


Fig. 17.

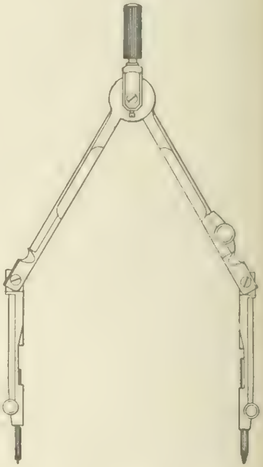


Fig. 18.

Figs. 17 and 18 show that both legs of the compasses are jointed in order that the lower part of the legs may be perpendicular to the paper while drawing circles. In this way the needle point makes but a small hole in the paper, and both nibs of the pen will press equally on the paper. In pencilling circles it is not as necessary that the pencil should be kept vertical; it is a good plan, however, to learn to use them in this way both in pencilling and inking. The compasses should be held loosely between the thumb and forefinger. If the needle point is sharp, as it should be, only a slight pressure will be required to keep it in place. While drawing the circle, incline the compasses slightly in the direction of revolution and press lightly on the pencil or pen.

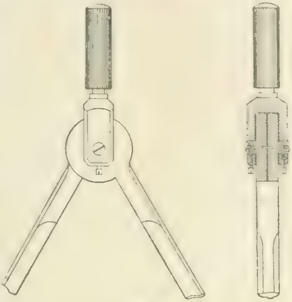


Fig. 19.

In removing the pencil or pen, it should be pulled out straight. If bent from side to side the socket will become enlarged and the shank worn; this will render the instrument inaccurate. For drawing large circles the lengthening bar shown in Fig. 17 should be used. When using the lengthening bar the needle point should be steadied with one hand and the circle described with the other.

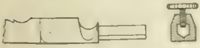


Fig. 20.

Fig. 21.

Dividers. Dividers, shown in Fig. 23, are made similar to the compasses. They are used for laying off distances on the drawing, either from scales or from other parts of the drawing. They may also be used for dividing a line into equal parts. When dividing a line into equal parts the dividers should be turned in the opposite direction each time, so that the moving point passes alternately to the right and to the left. The instrument can then be operated readily with one hand. The points of the dividers should be very sharp so that the holes made in the paper will be small. If large holes are made in the paper, and the distances between

Fig. 22.

the points are not exact, accurate spacing cannot be done. Sometimes the compasses are furnished with steel divider points in addition to the pen and pencil points. The compasses may then be used either as dividers or as compasses. Many draftsmen use a *needle point* in place of dividers for making measurements from a scale. The eye end of a needle is first broken off and the needle then forced into a small handle made of a round piece of soft pine. This instrument is very convenient for indicating the intersection of lines and marking off distances.

Fig. 23.

Bow Pen and Bow Pencil. Ordinary large compasses are too heavy to use in making small circles, fillets, etc. The leverage of the long leg is so great that it is very difficult to draw small circles accurately. For this reason the bow compasses shown in Figs. 24 and 25 should be used on all arcs and circles having a radius of less than three-quarters inch. The bow compasses are also convenient for duplicating small circles such as those which represent boiler tubes, bolt holes, etc., since there is no tendency to slip.

The needle point must be adjusted to the same length as the pen or pencil point if very small circles are to be drawn. The adjustment for altering the radius of the circle can be made by turning the nut. If the change in radius is considerable the points should be pressed together to remove the pressure from the nut which can then be turned in either direction with but little wear on the threads.

Fig. 26 shows another bow instrument which is frequently used in small work in place of the dividers. It has the advantage of retaining the adjustment.

Drawing Pen. For drawing straight lines and curves that are not arcs of circles, the line pen (sometimes called the ruling pen) is used. It consists of two blades of steel fastened to a handle as shown in Fig. 27. The distance between the pen points can be adjusted by the thumb screw, thus regulating the width of line to be drawn. The blades are given a slight curvature so that there will be a cavity for ink when the points are close together.

The pen may be filled by means of a common steel pen or with the quill which is provided with some liquid inks. The pen should not be dipped in the ink because it will then be necessary to wipe the outside of the blades before use. The ink should fill the pen to a height of about $\frac{1}{4}$ or $\frac{3}{8}$ inch; if too much ink is placed in the pen it is likely to drop out and spoil the drawing. Upon finishing the work the pen should be carefully wiped with chamois or a soft cloth, because most liquid inks corrode the steel.

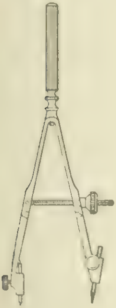


Fig. 24.

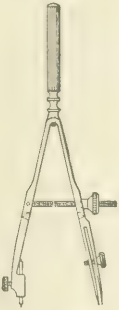


Fig. 25.

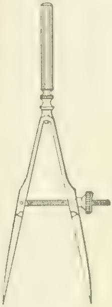


Fig. 26.

In using the pen, care should be taken that both blades bear equally on the paper. If the points do not bear equally the line will be ragged. If both points touch, and the pen is in good condition the line will be smooth. The pen is usually inclined slightly in the direction in which the line is drawn. The pen should *touch* the triangle or T-square which serve as guides, but it should not be pressed against them because the lines will then be uneven. The points of the pen should be close to the edge of the triangle or T-square, but should not touch it.

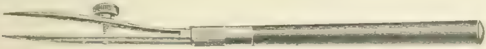


Fig. 27.

To Sharpen the Drawing Pen. After the pen has been used for some time the points become worn, and it is impossible to make smooth lines. This is especially true if rough paper is used. The pen can be put in proper condition by sharpening it. To do this take a small, flat, close-grained oil-stone. The blades should first be screwed together, and the points of the pen can be given the proper shape by drawing the pen back and forth over the stone changing the inclination so that the shape of the ends will be parabolic. This process dulls the points but gives them the proper shape, and makes them of the same length.

To sharpen the pen, separate the points slightly and rub one of them on the oil-stone. While doing this keep the pen at an angle of from 10 to 15 degrees with the face of the stone, and give it a slight twisting movement. This part of the operation requires great care as the shape of the ends must not be altered. After the pen point has become fairly sharp the other point should be ground in the same manner. All the grinding should be done on the *outside* of the blades. The burr should be removed from the inside of the blades by using a piece of leather or a piece of pine wood.

Ink should now be placed between the blades and the pen tried. The pen should make a smooth line whether fine or heavy, but if it does not the grinding must be continued and the pen tried frequently.

Ink. India ink is always used for drawing as it makes a permanent black line. It may be purchased in solid stick form or as a liquid. The liquid form is very convenient as much time is saved, and all the lines will be of the same color; the acid in the ink, however, corrodes steel and makes it necessary to keep the pen perfectly clean.

Some draftsmen prefer to use the India ink which comes in stick form. To prepare it for use, a little water should be placed in a saucer and one end of the stick placed in it. The ink is ground by giving it a twisting movement. When the water has become black and slightly thickened, it should be tried. A heavy line should be made on a sheet of paper and allowed to dry. If the line has a grayish appearance, more grinding is necessary. After the ink is thick enough to make a good black line, the grinding should cease, because very thick ink will not flow freely from the pen. If, however, the ink has become too thick, it may be diluted with water. After using, the stick should be wiped dry to prevent crumbling. It is well to grind the ink in small quantities as it does not dissolve readily if it has once become dry. If the ink is kept covered it will keep for two or three days.

Scales. Scales are used for obtaining the various measurements on drawings. They are made in several forms, the most convenient being the flat with beveled edges and the triangular. The scale is usually a little over 12 inches long and is graduated for a distance of 12 inches. The triangular scale shown in Fig. 28 has six surfaces for graduations, thus allowing many graduations on the same scale.

The graduations on the scales are arranged so that the drawings may be made in any proportion to the actual size. For mechanical work, the common divisions are multiples of two.

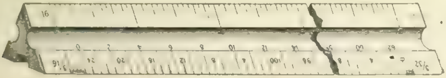


Fig. 28.

Thus we make drawings full size, half size, $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{8}$, $\frac{1}{16}$, $\frac{1}{32}$, $\frac{1}{64}$, etc. If a drawing is $\frac{1}{4}$ size, 3 inches equals 1 foot, hence 3 inches is divided into 12 equal parts and each division represents one inch. If the smallest division on a scale represents $\frac{1}{16}$ inch, the scale is said to read to $\frac{1}{16}$ inch.

Scales are often divided into $\frac{1}{10}$, $\frac{1}{20}$, $\frac{1}{30}$, $\frac{1}{40}$, etc., for architects, civil engineers, and for measuring on indicator cards.

The scale should never be used for drawing lines in place of triangles or T-square.

Protractor. The protractor is an instrument used for laying off and measuring angles. It is made of steel, brass, horn and paper. If made of metal the central portion is cut out as shown in Fig. 29, so that the draftsman can see the drawing. The outer edge is divided into degrees and tenths of degrees. Sometimes the graduations are very fine. In using a protractor a very sharp hard pencil should be used so that the lines will be fine and accurate.

The protractor should be placed so that the given line (produced if necessary) coincides with the two 0 marks. The center of the circle being placed at the point through which the desired line is to be drawn. The division can then be marked with the pencil point or needle point.

Irregular Curve. One of the conveniences of a draftsman's

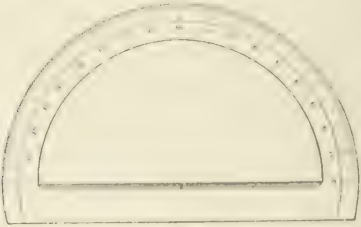


Fig. 29.

outfit is the French or irregular curve. It is made of wood, hard rubber or celluloid, the last named material being the best. It is made in various shapes, two of the most common being

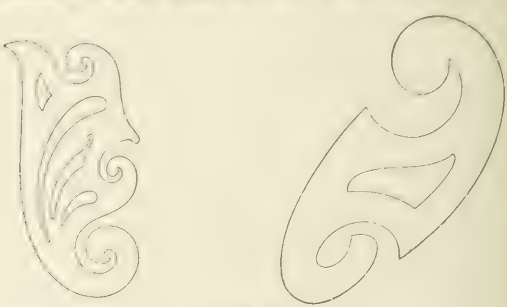


Fig. 30.

shown in Fig. 30. This instrument is used for drawing curves other than arcs of circles, and both pencil and line pen can be used.

To draw the curve, a series of points is first located and then the curve drawn passing through them by using the part of the irregular curve that passes through several of them. The curve is shifted for this work from one position to another. It frequently facilitates the work and improves its appearance to draw a free hand pencil curve through the points and then use the irregular curve, taking care that it always fits at least *three* points.

In inking the curve, the blades of the pen must be kept tangent to the curve, thus necessitating a continual change of direction.

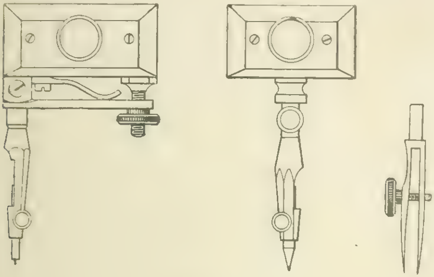


Fig. 31.

Beam Compasses. The ordinary compasses are not large enough to draw circles having a diameter greater than about 8 or 10 inches. A convenient instrument for larger circles is found in the beam compasses shown in Fig. 31. The two parts called channels carrying the pen or pencil and the needle point are clamped to a wooden beam; the distance between them being equal to the radius of the circle. Accurate adjustment is obtained by means of a thumb nut underneath one of the channel pieces.

PLATES.

Plates I, II and III are provided to give practice in the use of the drawing instruments. Drawing paper at least 11 inches by 15 inches should be used to allow border lines 10 inches by 14 inches. First, draw carefully in pencil and then ink in. Especial care should be taken as to quality and width of line, intersections, and the joining of curved and straight lines.

These are followed by examples for lettering. Plate IV should be drawn first in pencil and then in ink.

PLATE I

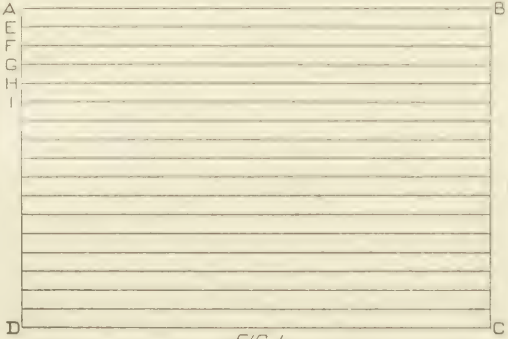


FIG. 1

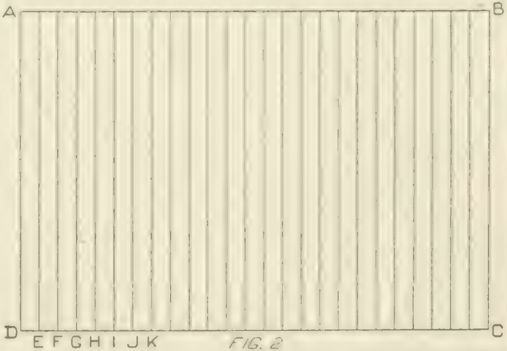


FIG. 2

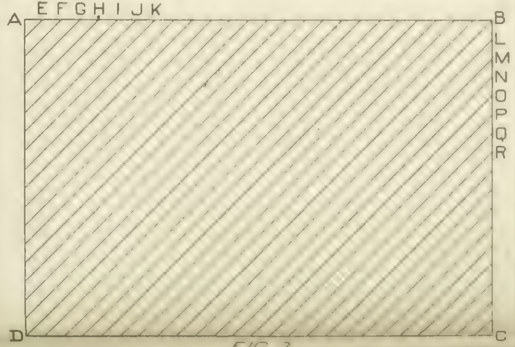
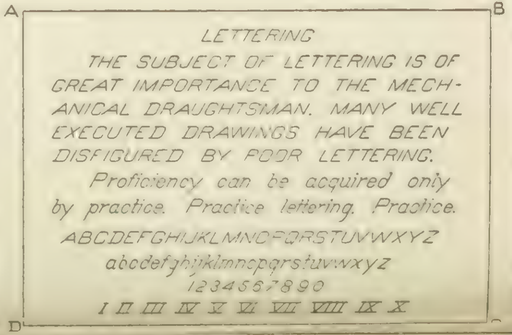


FIG. 3



LETTERING

THE SUBJECT OF LETTERING IS OF GREAT IMPORTANCE TO THE MECHANICAL DRAUGHTSMAN. MANY WELL EXECUTED DRAWINGS HAVE BEEN DISFIGURED BY POOR LETTERING.

Proficiency can be acquired only by practice. Practice lettering. Practice.

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz

1234567890

I II III IV V VI VII VIII IX X

PLATE 5

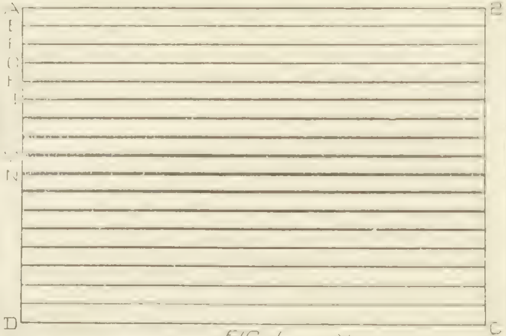


FIG. 1

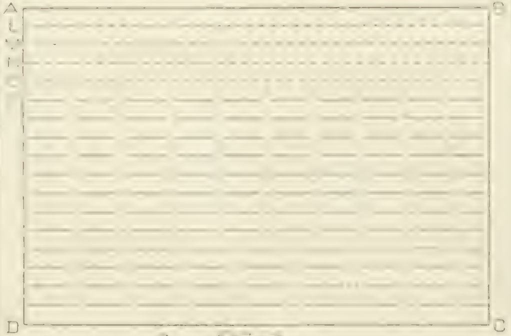


FIG. 2

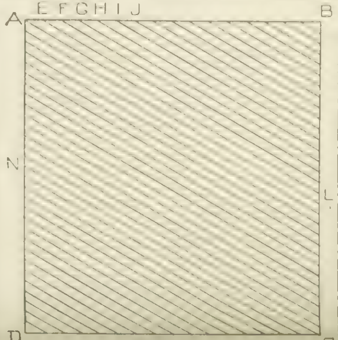


FIG. 3

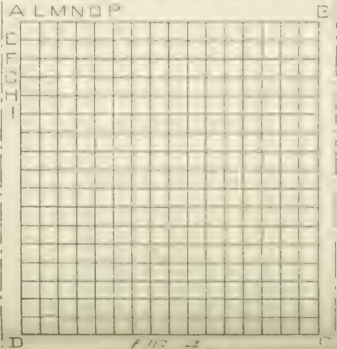


FIG. 4

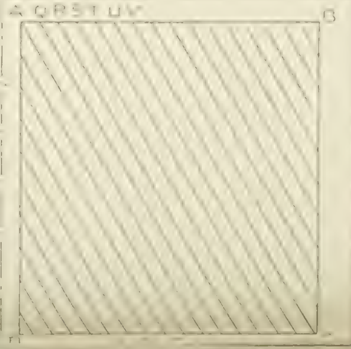


PLATE [illegible]

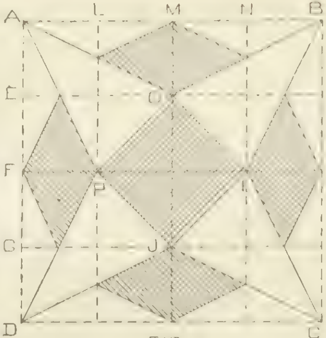


FIG 1

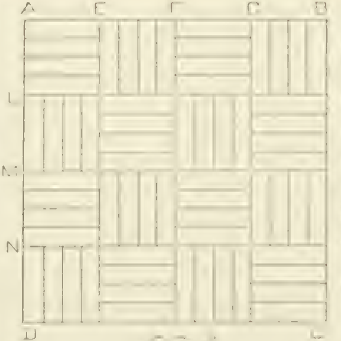


FIG 2

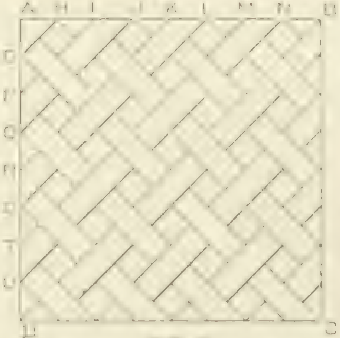


FIG 3

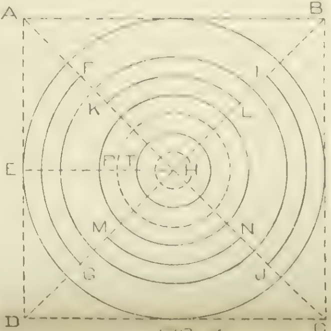


FIG 4

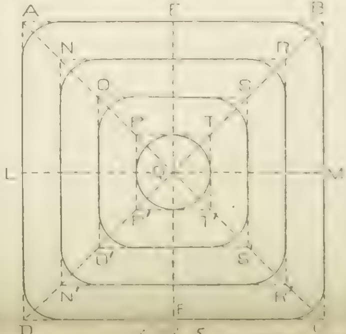


FIG 5

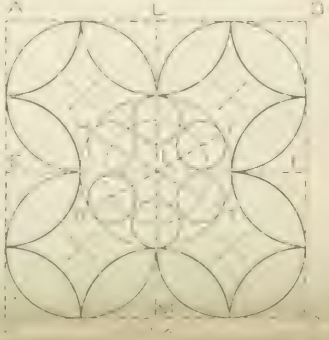


PLATE II

COURSE

IN

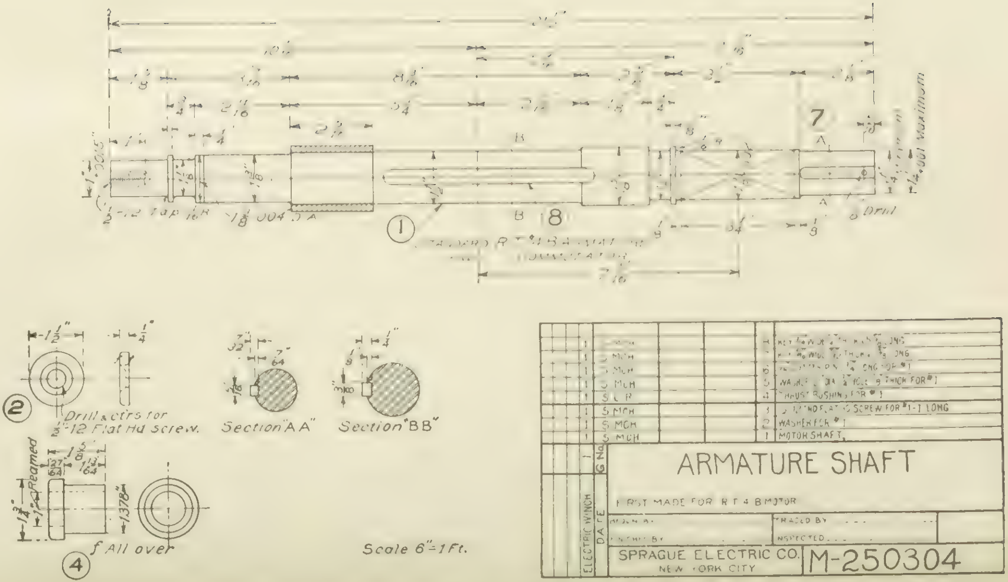
MECHANICAL DRAWING

MACHINE DRAWINGS

AND

PROJECTIONS

BOSTON, MASS., U.S.A.



TYPICAL WORKING DRAWING OF ARMATURE-SHAFT MADE IN THE DRAFTING ROOM OF THE SPRAGUE ELECTRIC CO.

MECHANICAL DRAWING.

PART II.

PROJECTIONS.

Orthographic Projection is the art of representing an object upon two planes, at right angles to each other, by lines drawn from all points on the edges or contour perpendicular to these planes. The intersections of the perpendiculars with the planes give figures which are called projections of the object.

The two planes are called *planes of projection*, or *coördinate planes*, one being vertical and the other horizontal, as shown in Fig. 1. These planes are sometimes designated V and H respectively. The intersection of V and H is known as the ground line, or G L. If a in Fig. 1 is a point in space, and a perpendicular is drawn to the vertical plane, the point a^v will be the projection of the point on the vertical plane, and in a similar way a^h will be the projection of a on the horizontal plane. The line B has its vertical projection at B^v, and its horizontal projection at B^h. Instead of *horizontal* projection and *vertical* projection, the terms **plan** and **elevation** are commonly used. It will be seen from the figure that the plan of a point or line is directly underneath on the H plane, and the elevation directly behind on the V plane.

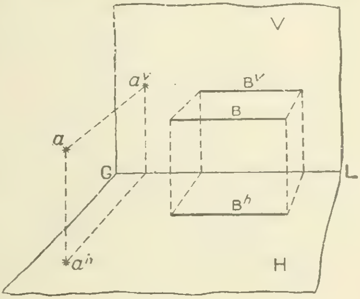


Fig. 1.

Suppose in Fig. 2 a cube one inch on a side be placed with the top horizontal and the front face parallel to the vertical plane. Then the plan will be a one-inch square, and the elevation also a one-inch square. In general the plan is a representation of the *top* of the object, and the elevation a view of the *front*. The plan then is a top view, and the elevation a front view. Since the plan is directly below the object, and the elevation directly behind, it follows that in actual drawing the plan must be vertically below the elevation, point for point. This is one of the fundamental principles of projection, and should be thoroughly understood.

The projection of a point can never be anything but a point. By referring to Fig. 1 it is clear that the height of a above the horizontal plane is equal to the distance of a^v above the ground line, and the distance of a in front of the vertical plane is equal to the distance of a^h in front of the ground line. Applying this principle to Fig. 3, the point represented by a^v and a^h must be a point $\frac{3}{4}$inch above H and 1 inch in front of V.

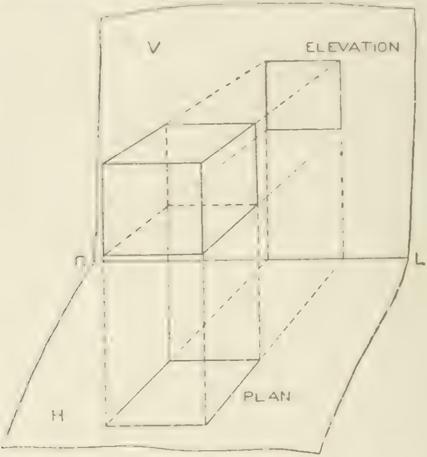


Fig. 2.

All points on an object at the same height must appear in elevation at the same distance above the ground line. If numbers 1, 2, 3 and 4 on the plan indicate the top corners of the cube, then these four points, being at the same height, must be shown in elevation at the same height and at the top, $\frac{4}{1}$ and $\frac{3}{2}$. The top of the cube, 1, 2, 3, 4, is shown in elevation as the straight line

$\frac{4}{1}$ — $\frac{3}{2}$. This illustrates the fact that *if a surface is perpendicular to either plane of projection, its projection on that plane is simply a line; a straight line if the surface is plane, a curved line if the surface is curved.* From the same figure it is seen that the top edge of the cube, 1 4, has for its projection on the vertical plane

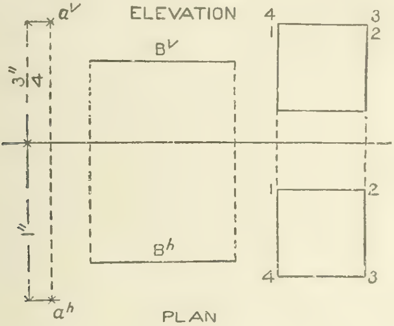


Fig. 3.

the point $\frac{4}{1}$, the principle of which is stated in this way: If a straight line is perpendicular to either V or H, its projection on that plane is a point, and on the other plane is a line equal in length to the line itself, and perpendicular to the ground line.

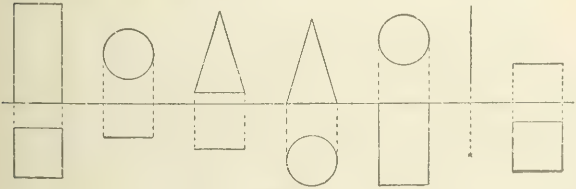


Fig. 4.

Fig. 4 is given as an exercise to help to show clearly the idea of plan and elevation. The student should answer the following question for himself: What does each of these projections represent?

Suppose in Fig. 5, that it is desired to construct the projections of a prism $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. square, and 2 in. long, standing on one end on the horizontal plane, two of its faces being parallel to the vertical plane. In the first place, as the top end of the prism is a square, the top view or plan will be a square of the same size, that is, $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. Then since the prism is placed parallel to and in front of the vertical plane the plan, $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. square, will have two edges parallel to the ground line. As the front face of the prism is parallel to the vertical plane its projection on V will be a rectangle, equal in length and width to the length and width respectively of the prism, and as the prism stands with its base on H, the elevation, showing height above H, must have its base on the ground line. Observe carefully that points in elevation are vertically over corresponding points in plan.

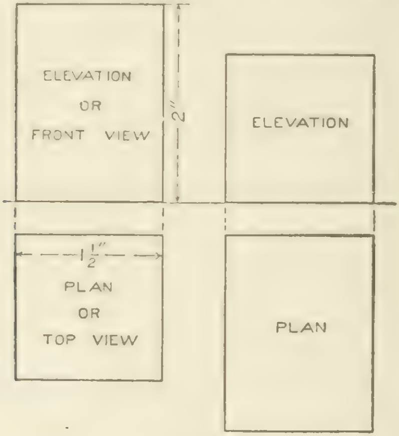


Fig. 5.

The second drawing in Fig. 5 represents a prism of the same size lying on one side on the horizontal plane, and with the ends parallel to V.

The principles which have been used thus far may be stated as follows, —

1. If a line or point is on either plane, its other projection must be in the ground line.

2. Height above H is shown in elevation as height above the ground line, and distance in front of the vertical plane is shown in plan as distance from the ground line.

3. If a line is parallel to either plane, its actual length is shown on that plane, and its other projection is parallel to the ground line. A line oblique to either plane has its projection on that plane shorter than the line itself, and its other projection oblique to the ground line. No projection can be longer than the line itself.

4. A plane surface if parallel to either plane, is shown on that plane in its true size and shape; if oblique it is shown smaller than the true size, and if perpendicular it is shown as a straight line. Lines parallel in space must have their V projections parallel to each other and also their H projections.

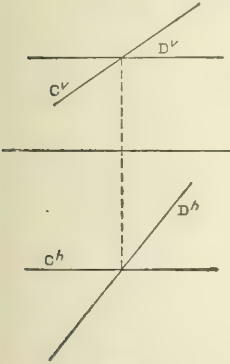


Fig. 6.

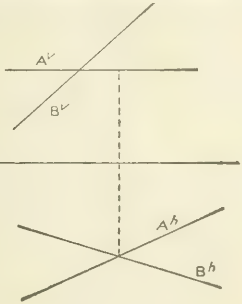


Fig. 7.

If two lines intersect, their projections must cross, since the point of intersection of the lines is a point on both lines, and therefore the projections of this point must be on the projections of both lines, or at their intersection. In order that intersecting lines may be represented, the vertical projections must intersect in a point vertically above the intersection of the horizontal projections. Thus Fig. 6 represents two lines which do intersect as C^v crosses D^v at a point vertically above the intersection of C^h and D^h. In Fig. 7, however, the lines do not intersect since the intersections of their projections do not lie in the same vertical line.

In Fig. 8 is given the plan and elevation of a square pyramid standing on the horizontal plane The height of the pyramid is the distance A B. The slanting edges of the pyramid, A C, A D, etc., must be all of the same length, since A is directly above the center of the base. What this length is, however, does not appear in either projection, as these edges are not parallel to either V or H.

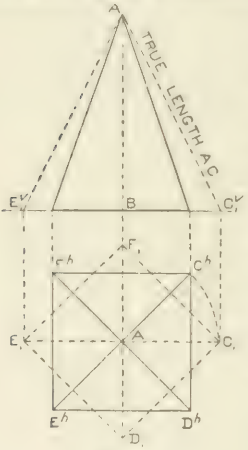
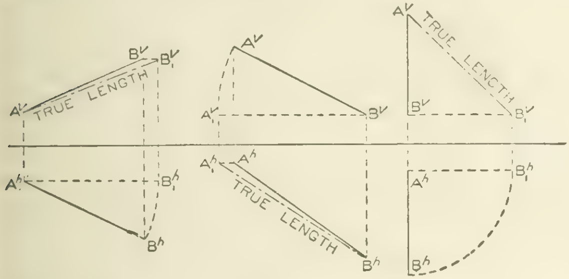


Fig. 8.

Suppose that the pyramid be turned around into the dotted position C_1 D_1 E_1 F_1 where the horizontal projections of two of the slanting edges, A C_1 and A E_1 are parallel to the ground line. These two edges, having their horizontal projections parallel to the ground line, are now parallel to V, and therefore their new vertical projections will show their true lengths. The base of the pyramid is still on H, and therefore is projected on V in the ground line. The apex is in the same place as before, hence the vertical projection of the pyramid in its new position is shown by the dotted lines. The vertical projection A C_1^v is the true length of edge A C. Now if we wish to find simply the true length of A C, it is unnecessary to turn the whole pyramid around, as the one line A C will be sufficient.

The principle of finding the true length of lines is this, and can be applied to any case: Swing one projection of the line parallel to the ground line, using one end as center. On the other projection the moving end remains at the same distance from the ground line, and of course vertically above or below the same end in its parallel position. This new projection of the line shows its true length. See the three Figures at the top of page 9.

Third plane of projection or profile plane. A plane perpendicular to both co-ordinate planes, and hence to the ground line, is called a *profile plane.* This plane is vertical in position, and may be used as a plane of projection. A projection on the profile plane is called a profile view, or *end view*, or sometimes edge view, and is often required in machine or other drawing when the plan and elevation do not sufficiently give the shape and dimensions.



A projection on this plane is found in the same way as on the V plane, that is, by perpendiculars drawn from points on the object.

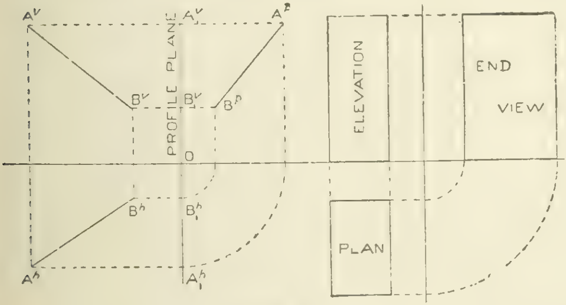


Fig. 9.

Since, however, the profile plane is perpendicular to the ground line, it will be seen from the front and top simply as a straight line; in order that the size and shape of the profile view may be shown, the profile plane is revolved into V using its intersection with the vertical plane as the axis.

Given in Fig. 9, the line A B by its two projections $A^v B^v$ and $A^h B^h$, and given also the profile plane. Now by projecting the line on the profile by perpendiculars, the points $A_1^v B_1^v$ and $B_1^h A_1^h$ are found. Revolving the profile plane like a door on its hinges, all points in the plane will move in horizontal circles, so the horizontal projections A^h and B^h will move in arcs of circles with O as center to the ground line, and the vertical projections B_1^v and A_1^v will move in lines parallel to the ground line to positions directly above the revolved points in the ground line, giving the profile view of the line $A^p B^p$. Heights, it will be seen, are the same in profile view as in elevation. By referring to the rectangular prism in the same figure, we see that the elevation gives vertical dimensions and those parallel to V, while the end view shows vertical dimensions and those perpendicular to V. The profile view of any object may be found as shown for the line A B by taking one point at a time.

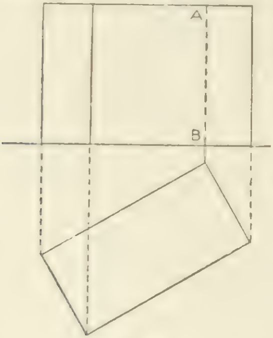


Fig. 10.

In Fig. 10 there is represented a rectangular prism or block, whose length is twice the width. The elevation shows its height. As the prism is placed at an angle, three of the vertical edges will be visible, the fourth one being invisible.

In mechanical drawing lines or edges which are invisible are drawn *dotted*. The edges which in projection form a part of the outline or contour of the figure must always be visible, hence always *full lines*. The plan shows what lines are visible in elevation, and the elevation determines what are visible in plan. In Fig. 10, the plan shows that the dotted edge A B is the back edge, and in Fig. 11, the dotted edge C D is found, by looking at the elevation, to be the lower edge of the triangular prism. In general, if in elevation an edge projected *within* the figure is a back edge, it must be dotted, and in plan if an edge projected within the outline is a lower edge it is dotted.

Fig. 12 is a circular cylinder with the length vertical and

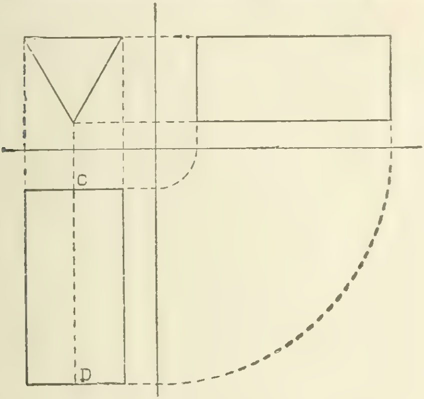


Fig. 11.

with a hole part way through as shown in elevation. Fig. 13 is plan, elevation and end view of a triangular prism with a square hole from end to end. The plan and elevation alone would be insufficient to determine positively the shape of the hole, but the end view shows at a glance that it is square.

In Fig. 14 is shown plan and elevation of the frustum of a square pyramid, placed with its base on the horizontal plane. If the frustum is turned through 30°, as shown in the plan of Fig. 15, the top view or plan must still be the same shape and size, and as the frustum has not been raised or lowered, the heights of all points must appear the same in elevation as before in Fig. 14. The elevation is easily found by projecting points up from the plan, and projecting the height of the top horizontally across from the first elevation, because the height does not change.

The same principle is further illustrated in Figs. 16 and 17. The elevation of Fig. 16 shows a square prism resting on one edge, and raised up at an angle of 30° on the right-hand side. The plan gives the width or thickness, $\frac{5}{8}$ in. Notice that the length of the plan is greater than 2 in. and that varying the angle at which the prism is slanted would change the length of the plan. Now if the prism be turned around through any angle with the vertical plane, the lower edge still being on H, and the inclination of 30° with H remaining the same, the plan must remain the same size and shape.

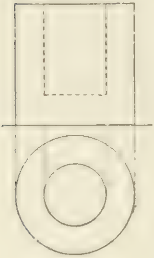


Fig. 12.

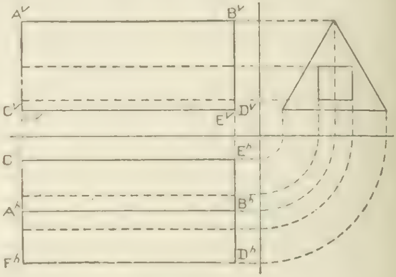


Fig. 13.

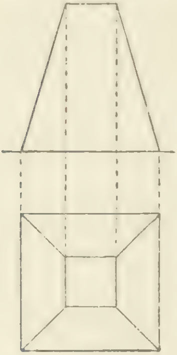


Fig. 14.

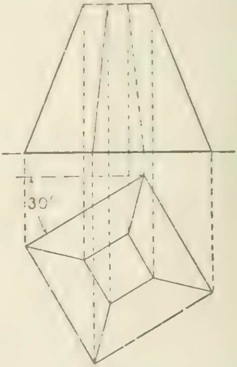


Fig. 15.

If the angle through which the prism be turned is 45°, we have the second plan, exactly the same shape and size as the first. The elevation is found by projecting the corners of the prism vertically up to the heights of the same points in the first elevation. All the other points are found in the same way as point No. 1.

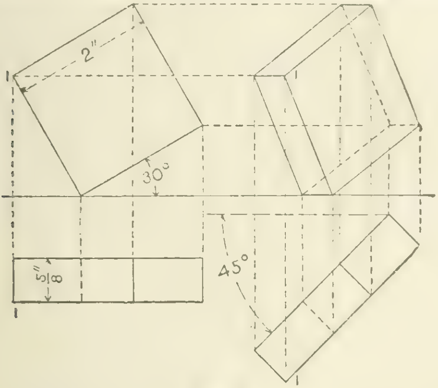


Fig. 16.

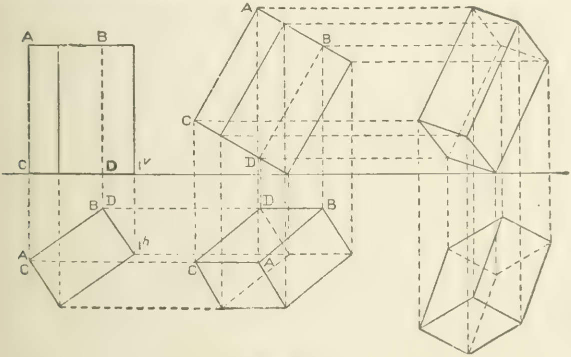


Fig. 17.

Three positions of a rectangular prism are shown in Fig. 17. In the first view, the prism stands on its base, its axis therefore is parallel to the vertical plane. In the second position, the axis is still parallel to V and one corner of the base is on the horizontal plane. The prism has been turned as if on the line 1^h 1^v as an axis, so that the inclination of all the faces of the prism to the vertical plane remains the same as before. That is, if in the first figure the side A B C D makes an angle of 30° with the vertical, the same side in the second position still makes 30° with the vertical plane. Hence the elevation of No. 2 is the same shape and size as in the first case. The plan is found by projecting the corners down from the elevation to meet horizontal lines projected across from the corresponding points in the first plan. The third position shows the prism with all its faces and edges making the same angles with the horizontal as in the second position, but with the plan at a different angle with the ground line. The plan then is the same shape and size as in No. 2, and the elevation is found by projecting up to the same heights as shown in the preceeding elevation. This principle may be applied to any solid, whether bounded by plane surfaces or curved.

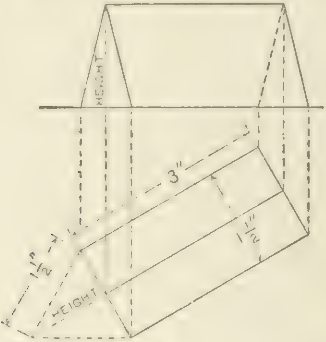


Fig. 18.

This principle as far as it relates to heights, is the same that was used for profile views. An end view is sometimes necessary before the plan or elevation of an object can be drawn. Suppose that in Fig. 18 we wish to draw the plan and elevation of a triangular prism 3″ long, the end of which is an equilateral triangle

1½″ on each side. The prism is lying on one of its three faces on H. and inclined toward the vertical plane at an angle of 30°. We are able to draw the plan at once, because the width will be 1½ inches, and the top edge will be projected half way between the other two. The length of the prism will also be shown. Before we can draw the elevation, we must find the height of the top edge. This height, however, must be equal to the altitude of the triangle forming the end of the prism. All that is necessary, then, is to construct an equilateral triangle 1½″ on each side, and measure its altitude.

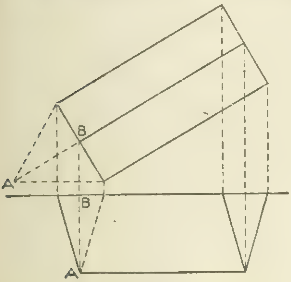


Fig. 19.

A very convenient way to do this is shown in the figure by laying one end of the prism down on H. A similar construction is shown in Fig. 19, but with one face of the prism on V instead of on H.

In all the work thus far the plan has been drawn below and the elevation above. This order is sometimes inverted and the plan put above the elevation.

PLATES.

PLATE V.

The plates of this paper should be laid out the same size as the plates in Part I. The center lines and border lines should also be drawn as shown.

First draw two ground lines across the sheet, 3 inches below the upper border line and 3 inches above the lower border line. The first problem on each ground line is to be placed 1 inch from the left border line and spaces of about 1 inch should be left between the figures.

Isolated points are indicated by a small cross ×, and projections of lines are to be drawn full unless invisible. All construction lines should be fine dotted lines. Given and required lines should be drawn full.

Problems on upper ground line;

PROBLEM 1. Locate both projections of a point on the horizontal plane 1 inch from the vertical plane.

PROBLEM 2. Draw the projections of a line 2 inches long which is parallel to the vertical plane and makes an angle of 45 degrees with the horizontal and slants upward to the right.

The line should be 1 inch from the vertical plane and the lower end ½ inch above the horizontal.

PROBLEM 3. Draw the projections of a line 1½ inches long, which is parallel to both planes 1 inch above the horizontal and ¼ inch from the vertical.

PROBLEM 4. Draw the plan and elevation of a line 2 inches long which is parallel to H and makes an angle of 30 degrees with V. Let the right-hand end of the line be the end nearer V, ½ inch from V. The line to be 1 inch above H.

PROBLEM 5. Draw the plan and elevation of a line 1½ inches long which is perpendicular to the horizontal plane and 1 inch from the vertical. The lower end of line is ½ inch above H.

PROBLEM 6. Draw the projections of a line 1 inch long which is perpendicular to the vertical plane and 1½ inch above the horizontal. The end of the line nearer V, or the back end, is ½ inch from V.

PROBLEM 7. Draw two projections which shall represent a line oblique to both planes.

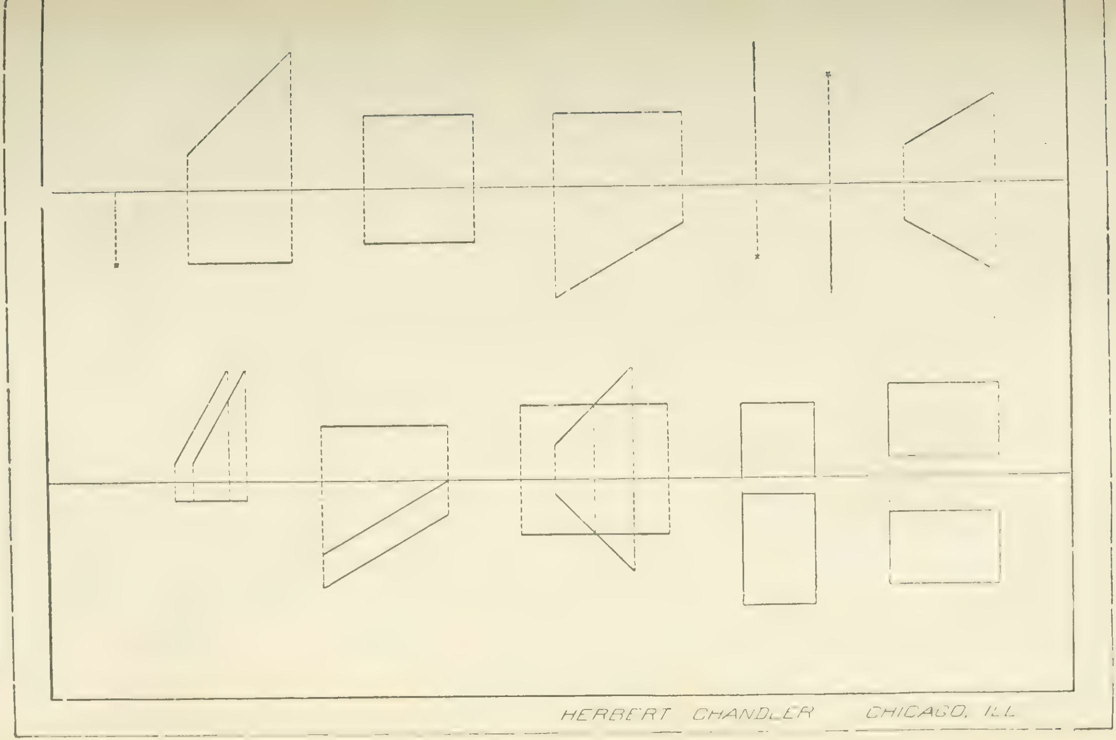
NOTE: Leave 1 inch between this figure and the right-hand border line.

Problems on lower ground line.

PROBLEM 8. Draw the projections of two parallel lines each 1½ inches long. The lines are to be parallel to the vertical plane and make angles of 60 degrees with the horizontal. The lower end of each line is ¼ inch above H. The right-hand end of the right-hand line is to be 2¾ inches from the left-hand margin.

PROBLEM 9. Draw the projections of two parallel lines each 2 inches long. Both lines to be parallel to the horizontal and make an angle of 30 degrees with the vertical. The lower line to be ¾ inch above H and one end of one line to be against V.

PROBLEM 10. Draw the projections of two intersecting lines. One 2 inches long to be parallel to both planes 1 inch


HERBERT CHANDLER CHICAGO, ILL.

above H and $\frac{3}{4}$ inch from the vertical, and the other to be oblique to both planes and of any desired length.

PROBLEM 11. Draw plan and elevation of a prism 1 inch square and $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches long. The prism to have one side on the horizontal plane and the long edges perpendicular to V. The back end of the prism is $\frac{1}{4}$ inch from the vertical plane.

PROBLEM 12. Draw plan and elevation of a prism the same size as given above, but with the long edges parallel to both planes, the lower face of prism parallel to H and $\frac{1}{4}$ inch above it. The back face to be $\frac{1}{2}$ inch from V.

PLATE VI.

The ground line is to be in the middle of the sheet, and the location and dimensions of the figures are to be as given. The first figure shows a rectangular block with a rectangular hole cut through from front to back. The other two figures represent the same block in different positions. The second figure is the end or profile projection of the block. The same face is on H in all three positions. Be careful not to omit the shade lines, and try to see why each one is put on.

PLATE VII.

Three ground lines are to be used on this plate, two at the left, $4\frac{1}{2}''$ long and $3''$ from top and bottom margin lines, and one at the right, half way between the top and bottom margins, $9\frac{1}{2}''$ long.

The figures 1, 2, 3 and 4 are examples for finding the true lengths of the lines. Begin No. 1 $\frac{3}{4}''$ from the border, the vertical projection $1\frac{3}{4}''$ long, one end on the ground line, and inclined at 30°. The horizontal projection has one end $\frac{1}{2}''$ from V and the other $1\frac{1}{2}''$ from V. Find the true length of the line by completing the construction commenced by swinging the arc, as shown in the figure.

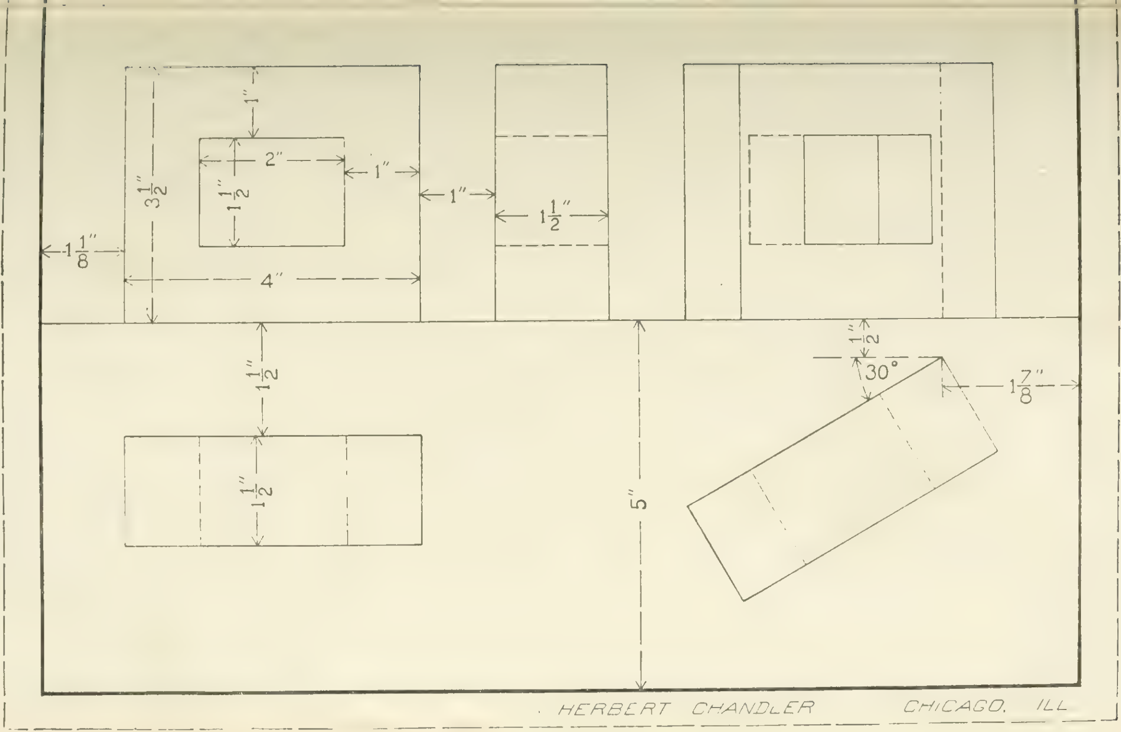
Locate the left-hand end of No. 2 $3''$ from the border, $1''$ above H and $\frac{5}{8}''$ from V. Extend the vertical projection to the ground line at an angle of 45°, and make the horizontal projection at 30°. Complete the construction for true length as commenced in the figure.

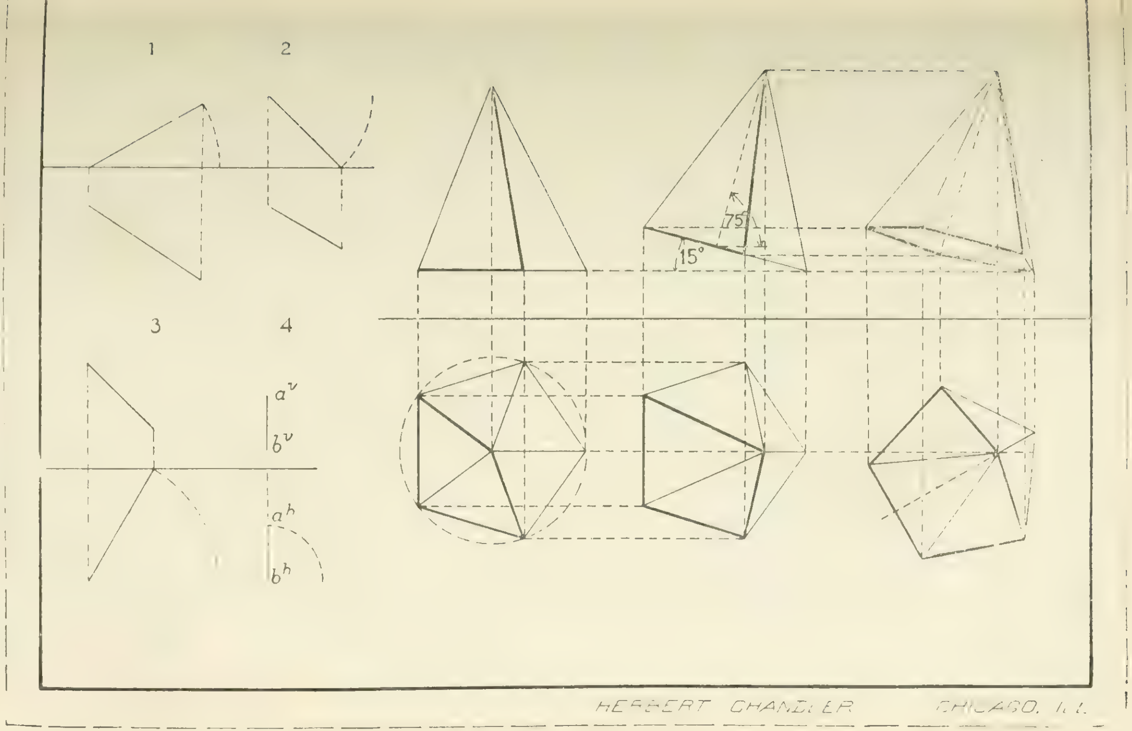
In figures 3 and 4 the true lengths are to be found by completing the revolutions indicated. The left-hand end of Fig. 3 is ¾″ from the margin, 1½″ from V and 1¾″ above H. The horizontal projection makes an angle of 60° and extends to the ground line, and the vertical projection is inclined at 45°.

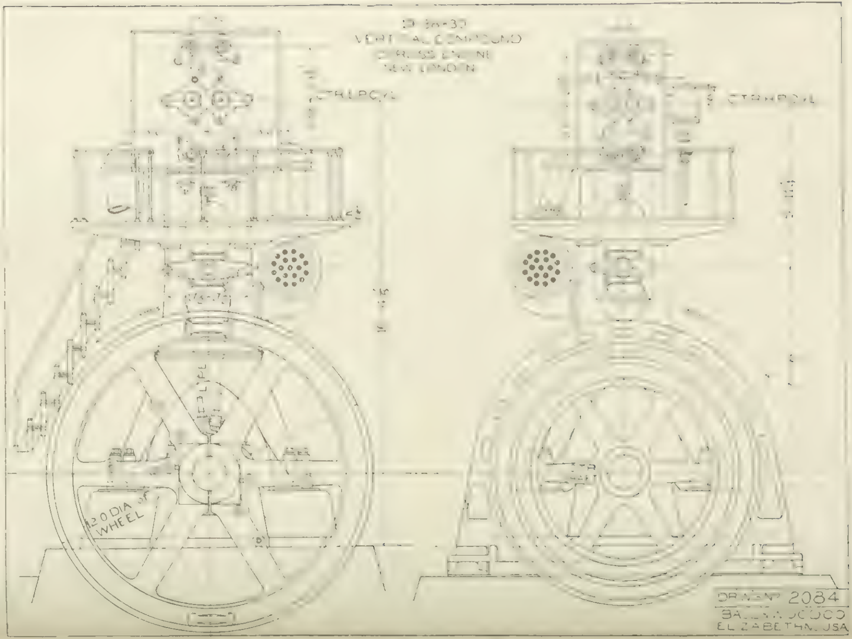
The fourth figure is 3″ from the border and represents a line in a profile plane connecting points *a* and *b*. *a* is 1¼″ above H and ¾″ from V, and *b* is ¼″ above H and 1½″ from V.

The figures for the middle ground line represent a pentagonal pyramid in three positions. The first position is the pyramid with the axis vertical and base ⅝″ above the horizontal. The height of pyramid is 2½″ and the diameter of the circle circumscribed about the base is 2½″. The center of the circle is 6″ from the left margin and 1¼″ from V. Spaces between figures to be ¾″.

In the second figure the pyramid has been revolved about the right-hand corner of the base as an axis through an angle of 15°. The axis of the pyramid, shown dotted, is therefore at 75°. The method of obtaining 75° and 15° with the triangles was shown in Part I. From the way in which the pyramid has been revolved, all angles with V must remain the same as in the first position, hence the vertical projection will be the same shape and size as before. The points on the plan are found on T-square lines through the corners of the first plan and directly beneath the points in elevation. In the third position the pyramid has been swung around about a vertical line through the apex as axis through 30°. The angle with the horizontal plane remains the same, consequently the plan is the same size and shape as in the second position, but at a different angle with the ground line. Heights of all points of the pyramid have not changed this time, and hence are projected across from the second elevation. Shade lines are to be put on between the light and dark surfaces as determined by the 45° triangle.


1"
2"
1"
1"
$3\frac{1}{2}$"
$1\frac{1}{2}$"
$1\frac{1}{2}$"
$1\frac{1}{8}$"
4"
$1\frac{1}{2}$"
$1\frac{1}{2}$"
5"
$\frac{1}{2}$"
30°
$1\frac{7}{8}$"
HERBERT CHANDLER CHICAGO, ILL


1
2
3
4
a^v
b^v
a^h
b^h
75°
15°
h
HERBERT CHANDLER
CHICAGO, ILL.



DRAWING OF VERTICAL COMPOUND CORLISS ENGINE

MECHANICAL DRAWING.

PART III.

WORKING DRAWINGS.

In Mechanical Drawing Parts I and II, instruments and materials are described and some hints given regarding the use of compasses, line pen, triangles, T-square, etc. In addition, the general principles upon which all Mechanical Drawing depends, are explained. After completing this work the student should be able to draw neatly and accurately and apply the fundamental principles.

Let us now take up the subject of working drawings and see how the principles of orthographic projection are made of practical use. We shall see, as we go on, that to a great extent the theoretical principles already learned in the study of projections are used in practical working shop drawings. Nevertheless, there are certain instances in which actual practice differs slightly from the theory.

We shall also find that all draftsmen do not follow the same customs in the matter of minor details, but that in many cases there are several ways of representing objects, all of which may be equally correct, one draftsman using one method either because he prefers it or because it best serves the purpose for which his particular work is being done, while another draftsman uses a different method. The more important principles and customs, however, are pretty well established.

A study of the subject of working drawings should, first, teach us the methods of the best drafting rooms; second, should train our judgment to decide how best to represent the particular object which we have to draw; third, should train our hand and eye to make a clear, neat and well-executed drawing, without unnecessary expenditure of time.

Definition of Working Drawing. A working drawing of any object is a drawing which completely describes the object in every particular, showing its form, size, material, finish, and all other details, so that a workman may take the drawing and without any further instructions make the object exactly as the draftsman intended it to be made. The drawing is, therefore, a sort of language, by which the man who designs the object describes it to the man who is to make it. Fig. 1 shows the working drawing of a bell crank lever. The drawing itself shows the shape and the dimensions show the size.

Aside from drawings of buildings, etc., that is Architectural drawings, the greater part of the working drawings which are made are for machines, and we will consider chiefly the latter, or, as they are called, machine drawings. These drawings are almost always orthographic projections, as this is by far the easiest and best way to represent a machine or a part of a machine. Sometimes, when it is desired to give a sort of bird's-eye view of a machine, an isometric or an oblique projection is made, but this method involves so much labor that it is seldom used.

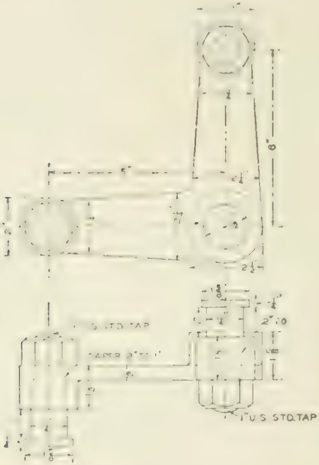


Fig. 1.

Lines. In order to make a drawing perfectly clear, and to avoid confusing one line with another, different kinds of lines are used for different purposes. Fig. 2 shows the six most common kinds used. The ordinary *full lines* are used to represent visible lines of the object which is being drawn.

The *invisible lines* are used to represent lines of the object which would be hidden from sight if a person looked in the direction in which he imagines himself to be looking while he is drawing it.

The use of the *shade lines* will be explained later.

Center lines are used to connect different views of an object, the line being drawn through the center of the piece and extending through both views. Locations of holes are usually shown by having two center lines drawn at right angles to each other through their centers, and the position of these center lines located. Wherever a dimension is to be given to the center of a piece a center line is drawn through the piece and the dimension given to this line.

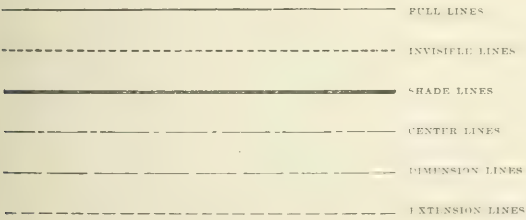


Fig. 2.

Extension lines are sometimes used to connect two views of a piece, but, wherever it is possible to use a center line, instead, the latter is preferable. The principal use of extension lines is, as the name implies, to extend the lines of the object so as to give dimensions between them.

Dimension lines are used in giving dimensions from one line or point to another.

The ordinary lines and the invisible lines should be made of the same width; the shade lines should be made considerably heavier, and the center lines, extension lines and dimension lines should be lighter.

Location of Views. In our preceding study of projections we imagined our object to be held in the angle formed by two planes which intersect at right angles, the planes and the object being supposed to be in the position represented in Fig. 3, the horizontal plane H being below the object, and the vertical plane V being beside the object. We then projected down to the horizontal plane and represented there the object as it would appear if seen squarely in the direction indicated by arrow A. We next projected into the vertical plane, and represented the object as it would appear if the line of vision took the direction of the arrow B. Our planes, with the horizontal and vertical projections of the object on them, when laid out flat, as a sheet of paper is when we actually draw on it, would appear as in Fig. 4, the horizontal projection, or top view, being *underneath* the vertical projection, or side view. This is the practice followed by some draftsmen in making working drawings. Many of the best draftsmen, however, think that it is not as clear and convenient to have the top view of the object underneath the side view, but that it is better to have the view of the top above the other view. Consequently, it is becoming more and more a general custom to suppose the planes to be transparent and to be located with respect to the piece which is being drawn as shown in Fig. 5, the H plane being above the object and the V plane in front of the object. They then draw on the H plane the object as it appears when looking at it

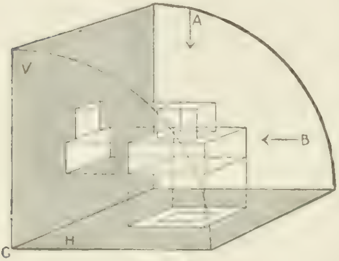


Fig. 3.

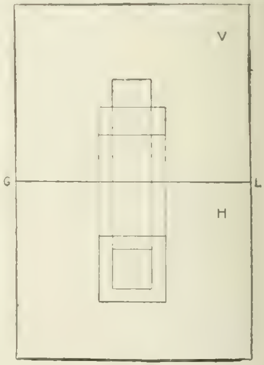
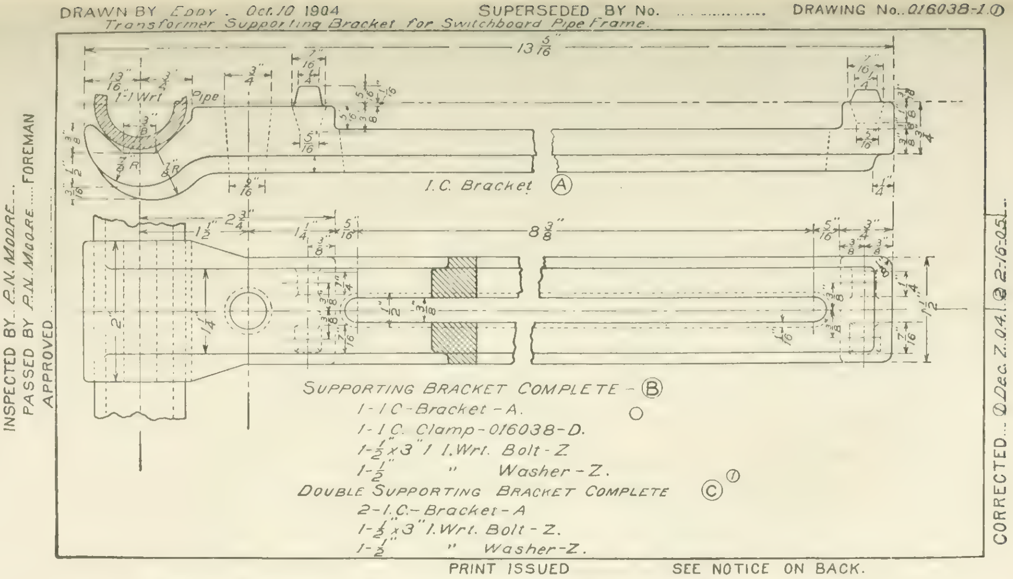


Fig. 4.


DRAWN BY Eddy . Oct.10 1904
SUPERSEDED BY No. ....
DRAWING No..016038-1.①
Transformer Supporting Bracket for Switchboard Pipe Frame.
13 5/16"
1"-1 Wrt Pipe
I.C. Bracket Ⓐ
8 3/8"
2 3/4"
1 1/2"
1 1/4"
SUPPORTING BRACKET COMPLETE - Ⓑ
1-1C-Bracket-A.
1-1C. Clamp-016038-D.
1-1/2"x3" 1 I.Wrt. Bolt-Z
1-1/2" " Washer-Z.
DOUBLE SUPPORTING BRACKET COMPLETE Ⓒ ①
2-I.C.-Bracket-A
1-1/2"x3" I.Wrt. Bolt-Z.
1-1/2" " Washer-Z.
PRINT ISSUED
SEE NOTICE ON BACK.
INSPECTED BY.. P.N. Moore...
PASSED BY P.N. Moore..... FOREMAN
APPROVED
CORRECTED... ① Dec. 7. 04. ② 2-16-05.

TYPICAL SHOP DRAWING MADE IN THE DRAFTING ROOM OF THE STANLEY ELECTRIC MFG. CO.

through the transparent plane in the direction indicated by arrow C, and on the V plane the object as it appears when looking in direction of arrow D. Now, when the two planes are laid out flat, the top view is above the side view, as in Fig. 6.

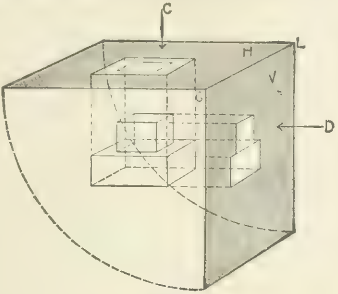


Fig. 5.

Another way of showing this is to suppose the object to be located in a transparent box, and that we look at it from the top and the various sides of the box, and draw on these sides the object as it appears from that side. Then, if the sides of the box are laid out flat, the side view will come in the middle, with the top view above, the view of the bottom underneath, the view of the right-hand side on the right, and the view of the left-hand side on the left.

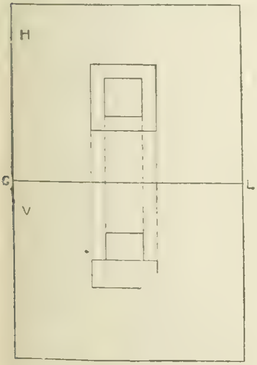


Fig. 6.

From now on, in our work on drawing, we shall follow this rule.

Cross-sections. Very often it occurs that a piece is hollow and the inside construction is more or less complicated, so that if in the drawing the outside view is shown, with the invisible interior drawn in dotted lines, the latter are so confused that the drawing is not easily understood. For this reason it is often convenient to imagine the piece to be cut open, and to draw it as if we were looking directly at the inside. Such a drawing of a piece is called a cross-section of the piece. The material which must be cut if the object were actually split open is then crosshatched, different kinds of crosshatching being used for different materials. Fig. 7 shows the kinds of cross-hatching in ordinary use.

Fig. 8 shows a plan and elevation of a simple piece with a hole through it, the hole being shown in the elevation by dotted lines. Fig. 9 shows a plan and a cross-section of the same piece, the cross-section being drawn as if we were looking in the same direction as in the elevation of Fig. 8, but in Fig. 9 the front half is supposed to be cut away and we are looking at the inside of the back half. It will be observed that even on a piece as simple as the one here shown, the shape of the interior is much clearer from the cross-section than from the elevation, and on a more complicated piece the same will be true to a greater extent.

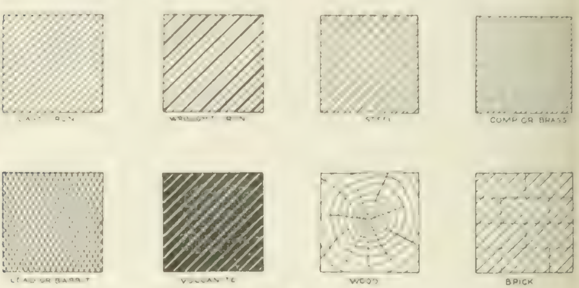


Fig. 7.

It should be borne in mind that ordinarily in making a cross-section we show not only those parts of the object which lie in the plane in which it is supposed to be cut, but also all which lie back of that plane.

Sometimes it is desirable to show the inside and the outside of a piece on the same view. Fig. 10 shows the same piece as in Fig. 8, but in Fig 10 the left-hand half of the lower view is an elevation and the right-hand half is a cross-section, the section and the elevation each extending to the center and being separated by a center line. This is as if one-quarter of it were cut away, the cuts being made along the lines C A and C B of the plan view.

Of course this combination of an elevation and cross-section can be used only when the right-hand and left-hand halves of the piece are alike.

Shade Lines. In order to make drawings easier to read, and to make the parts of the object stand out more clearly, shade lines are often put on the drawing. The general principle which determines what lines shall be shade lines is the same as that which governs shade lines already studied under the subject of projections. If, however, this theoretical principle were to be followed out exactly on drawings of machines, and other complicated drawings, it would involve a great deal of time and labor.

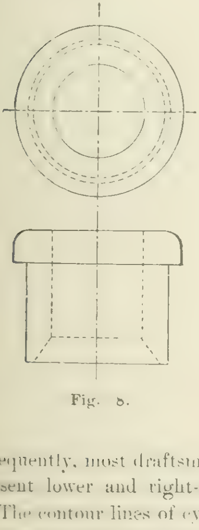


Fig. 8.

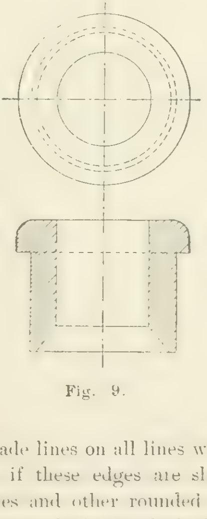


Fig. 9.

Consequently, most draftsmen place shade lines on all lines which represent lower and right-hand edges if these edges are sharp.

The contour lines of cylinders, cones and other rounded surfaces should not be shade lines, although some draftsmen shade them. If the cylinder is drawn in cross-section, however, the edge should be shaded, as the intersection of the plane and cylindrical surface is a sharp edge.

All views are shaded alike, and both are shaded as though they were elevations. The ray of light is supposed to come over the left shoulder of the draftsman, as he faces the paper, at such an angle that the projection of the ray of light on the drawing paper is in the direction of the arrow in Fig. 11.

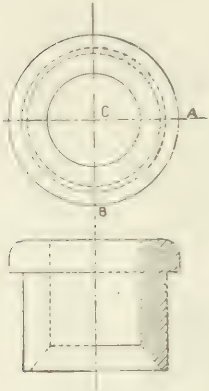


Fig. 10.

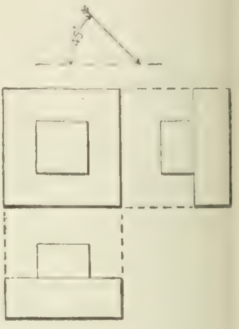


Fig. 11.

Figs. 11 to 18 show some of the most common shapes met with in drawings, and illustrate how the shade lines are placed on each. Fig. 11 is an elevation, plan, and side view of a rectangular prism with a smaller one resting on top of it. Fig. 12 is a plan and side view of a rectangular prism with a rectangular hole through it. It is to be noticed that the shade lines come on the upper and left-hand sides of the hole, since these lines are the

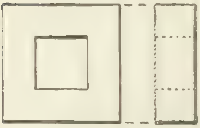


Fig 12.

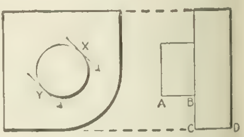


Fig. 13.

lower and right-hand edges of the material which surrounds the hole. Fig. 13 is a plan and side view of a rectangular prism with one corner rounded, and with a cylinder resting on it. Here the lines A B and C D are not shaded, since they are the contour lines of curved surfaces. In the plan view, the lower right-hand part of the circle, between X and Y, is shaded. To find these points X and Y, draw two lines tangent to the circle and making an angle of 45° with the T-square line as shown by the arrows; X and Y are the points where the arrows are tangent to the circle. Fig. 14 is a plan, elevation and cross-section of a cylinder. Here, in the plan, the larger circle is shaded on the lower side, and the circle which represents the hole is shaded on the upper side. The points where the shade begins are determined as explained for Fig. 13. The lines M N and O P are shaded since,

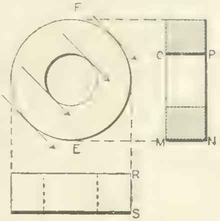


Fig. 14.

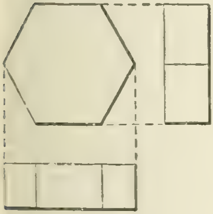


Fig. 15.

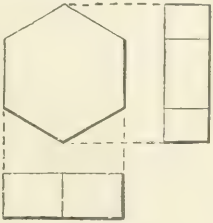


Fig. 16.

as the cylinder is supposed to be cut open, these lines now represent sharp edges. Fig. 15 is a plan, elevation and side view of a hexagonal prism with its long diameter parallel to the bottom of the paper. Fig. 16 is the same except that here the short diameter of the prism is parallel to the bottom of the paper. Fig. 17 is a plan and end view of a rectangular block with a wide slot of the shape H I J K M L O N, cut through it lengthwise. The main point to which attention should be called here is that the line

C D is shaded, although the slot might be so deep that the light might not strike in there because of the shadow of the projecting lip marked in the side view G H I. Fig. 18 is a cross-section and end view of a circular cylinder with a large hole extending part way through and a smaller hole extending the rest of the way. The small circle in the end view is shaded, although it is so far in that no light could strike it.

The student should study these figures carefully, and before leaving them should understand what each figure means and how the shade lines are determined, so that when he meets similar forms in machine drawings he may know where the shade lines should be placed.

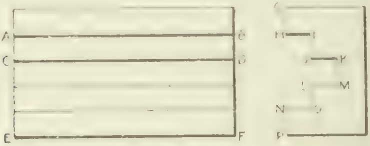


Fig. 17.

Dimensions. In giving the distance from one line to another, a dimension line is drawn between the two lines and arrowheads

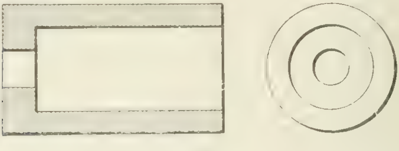


Fig. 18.

are placed at each end of the dimension line; the points of the arrowheads being *exactly on* the lines to which the measurement is being given. At a convenient place between the arrowheads a space is left in the dimension line for the figure.

Fig. 19 is a plan and elevation of a rectangular piece with a cylinder on the center of its upper surface, and with four holes through it; the holes being symmetrically located with respect to the center line of the piece; that is, the holes A and B are just as far above the center line E F as C and D are below it, and the holes B and D are just as far to the right of the center line G H as A and C are to the left of it. The fact that the cylinder is on the center of the rectangular piece is shown by the lines E F and G H being drawn through the center of the circle in the plan view, these lines being the center lines both of the cylinder and of the rectangular piece. If the cylinder were not on the center, two other center lines would be drawn through the circle and the dimensions given from each of these lines to the center lines of the rectangular piece, or to the edges of the piece. The fact that the holes are symmetrically located is shown by the dimensions being given between the center lines of the holes and no dimensions being given from these center lines to the center lines of the piece.

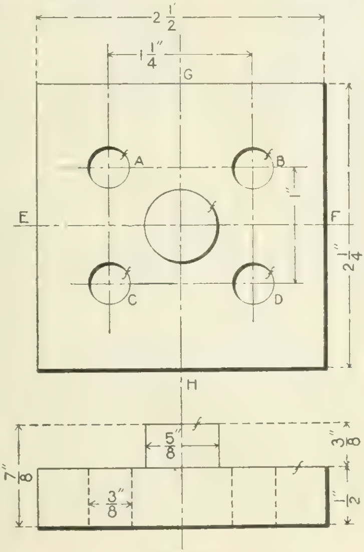


Fig. 19.

Fig. 20 shows how the piece might be dimensioned if the cylinder were not on the center of the rectangular piece and the holes were not symmetrically located with respect to the center of the rectangular piece.

If the centers of a set of holes are so located that a circle can be drawn through them, we always locate the holes by drawing a center line circle through their centers and giving the diameter of this circle, and if no other dimension than this is given for the location of the holes, it is understood that they are equally spaced around this circle. Fig. 21 illustrates this. If the holes are not equally spaced around the circle, they may be located as shown in Fig. 22.

Diameters of circles, and of arcs of circles which are greater than semicircles, should be given rather than radii, but if the arc of the circle is less than a semicircle, its radius should be given. Fig. 23 shows how this should be done when the radius is large enough to permit; but if the radius is small, or the dimensions would interfere with other parts of the drawing, it may be done as in Fig. 24.

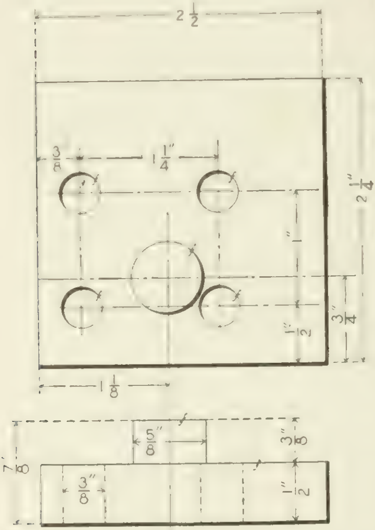


Fig. 20.

In Fig. 23 a small circle is drawn (free hand) around the center about which the arc is drawn, and a dimension line carried from the edge of this circle to the arc; an arrowhead being placed on the arc, and the figures placed in the dimension line in the usual way. In this case it is not necessary to put the letter R (abbreviation for radius) after the dimension. In the two methods shown in Fig. 24 the R should be placed after the figures.

In putting dimensions on a drawing, the figures should be placed to read from only two sides of the paper, usually from the bottom for dimension lines which are horizontal, as the $2\frac{1}{2}''$ dimension in Fig. 20, and from the right hand for dimension lines which are vertical, as the $2\frac{1}{4}''$ dimension in the same figure. Dimensions should never be placed on center lines if it can be avoided.

If a dimension is given in one view of an object, the same dimension need not be repeated in the other views.

In putting on fractions it is better to have the line which divides the numerator and denominator of the fraction extend in the same direction as the dimension line rather than at an angle; that is, the fraction would appear thus, $\frac{1}{2}$, rather than $^1/_2$.

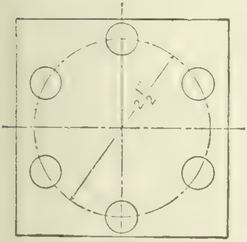


Fig. 21.

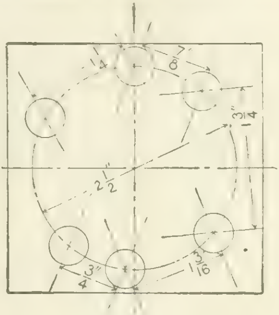


Fig. 22.

Finished Surfaces. Since a working drawing is not only to show the shape and size of the object which it represents, but is to describe it completely, it is essential that there should be some means of distinguishing between the surfaces of the object which are to be left rough as they come from the forge or from the foundry, and the surfaces which are to be finished. Any surface

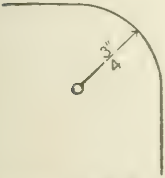


Fig. 23.

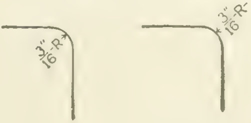


Fig. 24.

which has been smoothed off in a lathe, planer, or any machine tool, or has been filed or scraped, is called a finished surface, and is indicated on a drawing by a letter placed on the *edge view* of this surface. In Fig. 19 the whole of the cylindrical part is finished, also the top of the rectangular part. The holes are also finished. The student should notice carefully how the finish marks are used to indicate this fact.

If a piece is to be finished all over, it should be marked "*f* all over." If it is desired to specify what kind of finish is to be put on a surface, that is, whether rough turned, smooth turned, filed, scraped, etc., a note may be made to that effect.

On some conspicuous place on the drawing the words "*f* means finish" should be printed, so that there may be no misunderstanding on the part of a person examining the drawing.

Material. The material of which the piece is to be made should be indicated plainly. If any part of the drawing is a cross-section, the cross-hatching might show the material, provided that in some conspicuous part of the drawing a sample of the cross-hatching is shown and the material which it represents is stated. It is better, however, to mark on or near each piece, in plain letters, the material of which it is to be made.

Conventional Methods. In drafting, as in many other kinds of work, all unnecessary labor should be avoided. The drawing should give the instructions clearly, but need not be so elaborate as to require unnecessary time in the execution. It frequently happens that if an exact drawing were made representing every line of the object, a great deal of time would be required. Accordingly, if there is any way of representing an object by a few lines only, without sacrificing clearness, it should be used. There are many details such as screw threads, springs, bolts, etc., which occur so frequently on nearly all drawings that easy methods of representation have been universally adopted. In some cases, these ways of representing objects are approximations of the exact drawings and in other cases they are not. Such methods are called conventional methods, or conventions. For some details there is more than one convention, but the same convention should not be used for two different things, nor should several objects of the same kind on the same drawing be represented conventionally by two different methods.

Screw Threads. The exact drawing of screw threads is a difficult part of mechanical drawing, but enough attention will be given it here to enable the student to make a simple working drawing which includes threads. The common conventional way of drawing a thread is shown in Figs. 25, 26 and 27, Fig. 25 being a single right-hand thread, and Fig. 26 a double right-hand thread.

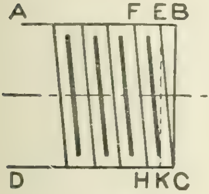


Fig. 25.

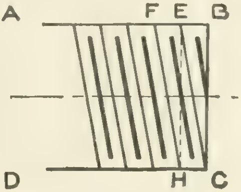


Fig. 26.

First, the plain cylindrical piece ABCD is drawn as if there were no threads upon it. The thread is then indicated by the lines EC, FH, etc., with the shorter and heavier lines between. The lighter lines are all parallel and the same distance apart. This distance is not necessarily the same as the actual pitch of the thread on the screw itself, but is usually $\frac{3}{32}$ inch or $\frac{1}{8}$ inch on drawings of common sizes of bolts. The heavy lines are parallel to the lighter ones and midway between them. The angle which the lines make with the center line of the screw depends on the distance apart of the lines, the slant being such that for a single thread, Fig. 25, a line perpendicular to the center line through one end of one of the lighter lines, as E, will strike the opposite contour of the screw DC, at a point K, which is half way between C and H. To draw the lines so that they will have this slant, choose the distance FE, which is to represent the pitch, and space it off on either of the contour lines, as AB, starting anywhere (in the figure the starting point E is one-half of the distance FE away from B). Next, draw EK per-

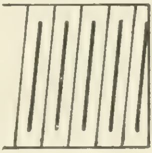


Fig. 27.

pendicular to the center line, thus finding point K, and start the spacing on the contour CD at a distance either side of K equal to ½ FE.

The lighter lines can thus be drawn and the heavy lines put in parallel and half way between. The heavy lines should be a little shorter than the others, and, for the sake of neatness, all should be of the same length. The double thread, Fig. 26, is drawn similarly to the single thread, except that the slant is such that the perpendicular through E will pass through H.

After a little practice the student can draw the threads in this way with his triangles, getting the proper slant and the angle spacing by eye, without the necessity of measuring; he should practice with this end in view, for threads occur so frequently on drawings that the draftsman must be able to draw them rapidly.

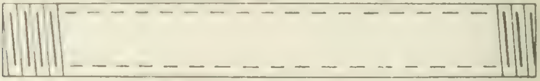


Fig. 28.

Notice should be taken of the fact that if the page be held so that the center lines of the screws in Figs. 25 and 26 are vertical, the lines which represent the threads slant downward from right to left. If the thread is left-handed the lines slant from left to right, as in Fig. 27.

In case of a long screw a few threads may be represented at each end and dotted lines carried the rest of the way, as in Fig. 28.

On any drawing of a screw which is intended for a working drawing, the pitch of the thread, or more commonly the number of threads for an inch of length should be specified; when the thread be standard, it is not always necessary to specify. Even in that case it is well to state the fact that the thread is standard. In giving the number of threads per inch it may be abbreviated, thus 12 THDS. or 12 TH. Examples of this will occur in what follows.

Threaded Holes and Invisible Threads. Fig. 29 shows a piece with a threaded hole in it. The hole is represented in the side view by the four parallel dotted lines. The distance apart of the two outer lines is equal to the diameter of the piece which is to be screwed into the hole. The inner lines are at a distance from the outer approximately equal to the depth of the thread. In the plan view of the piece (that is, the view looking at the end of the hole) the hole is shown by a full circle of a diameter equal to the distance apart of the inner dotted lines of the other view, and around this full circle a dotted circle whose diameter is equal to the diameter of the bolt; or, in other words, equal to the distance apart of the outer dotted straight lines. The dimension might be given on either view. In the figure it is given on the side view. In giving the diameter of a threaded hole, the diameter of the piece which is to be screwed into the hole is always given. In Fig. 29, the number of threads per inch is not stated, and in this case it would be understood to be standard. Fig. 30 shows another way of dimensioning a tapped hole, which is satisfactory and convenient.

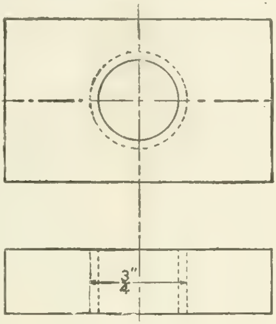


Fig. 29.

Fig. 31 shows the side view of the same piece as Fig. 29, with a part of the screw inserted in the hole. Attention is called to the fact that where the screw is hidden as it goes through the hole the thread is not shown, the parallel dotted lines representing the thread in the same manner as when the hole had no screw in it. Another point to be noted is that the cross-hatching of the broken ends for wrought iron is similar to the representation of the screw thread and one must learn to judge when the light and heavy lines mean a thread and when they are cross-hatching.

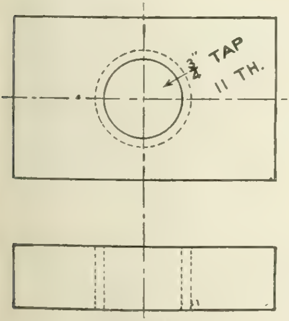


Fig. 30.

Threads in Sectional Pieces. Figs. 32, 33 and 34 illustrate the common method of representing threads when they occur on pieces which are drawn in cross-section. Fig. 32 is the same piece as Fig. 29, shown cross-sectioned. The front half of the piece is supposed to be removed and we are looking at the back half. Now the thread on the back side of a screw slants the opposite way from what it does on the front side, and of course the same is true of the thread in a tapped hole. Consequently, since it is the back side of the hole which is seen, the slant of the lines which represent the thread is opposite to the direction they would have were we looking at the front side of the screw which goes into the hole. We have just learned that for a right-handed thread on a screw the lines slant downward from right to left, and therefore for a right-handed thread seen on the back side of a tapped hole, the lines will slant downward from left to right. In other words, for a right-handed thread in a hole which comes in a cross-section, the lines slant the same as they would on the front of a left-hand thread on a bolt; and for a left-hand thread in a sectioned hole, he slant is the same as for a right-hand thread on a bolt.

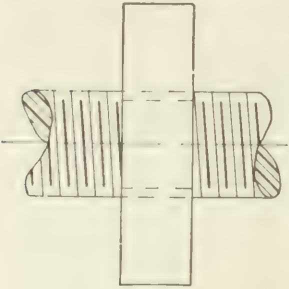


Fig. 31.

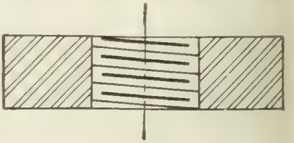


Fig. 32.

Fig. 33 is a piece which has a smooth hole through it and a thread on the outside. Here the entire thread is invisible, except at the contour of the cylinder, and must be indicated by the notches. These are drawn by spacing off the distance which is used for the pitch and from the points thus found drawing lines with the triangle which make an angle of 60 degrees with the axis of the cylinder. For a single thread the notches on one side have their outer points opposite the inner points of the notches on the other side. For a double thread the notches are directly opposite each other.

Fig. 34 shows two ways of quarter-sectioning a threaded piece, the only difference being that on one the contour of the sectional part is drawn a straight line, while on the other the contour is notched. Either one may be used. The straight contour can, of course, be drawn much more quickly and in places where there is no danger of sacrificing clearness it should be used for that reason. If the drawing is somewhat complicated, so that without the notches it might not be quite clear that the piece was threaded, the notches should be used.

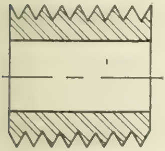


Fig. 33.

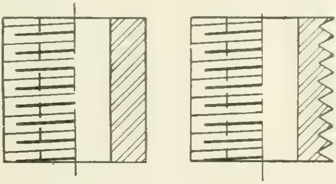


Fig. 34.

As has already been suggested, the student will doubtless find many other customs in the matter of drawing threads which are quite as good as the above. These have been given as ones which are common, and easily drawn. As a matter of convenience the following tables are given, which show the number of threads per inch on some of the most common sizes of bolts, according to the standard adopted by the United States Government, and the Whitworth or English standard.

UNITED STATES STANDARD SCREW THREADS.

Diameter of Bolt.	Threads per Inch.	Diameter of Bolt.	Threads per Inch.	Diameter of Bolt.	Threads per Inch.
$\frac{1}{4}$	20	$\frac{5}{8}$	11	$1\frac{3}{8}$	6
$\frac{5}{16}$	18	$\frac{3}{4}$	10	$1\frac{1}{2}$	6
$\frac{3}{8}$	16	$\frac{7}{8}$	9	$1\frac{5}{8}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{7}{16}$	14	1	8	$1\frac{3}{4}$	5
$\frac{1}{2}$	13	$1\frac{1}{8}$	7	$1\frac{7}{8}$	5
$\frac{9}{16}$	12	$1\frac{1}{4}$	7	2	$4\frac{1}{2}$

WHITWORTH STANDARD SCREW THREADS.

Diameter of Bolt.	Threads per Inch.	Diameter of Bolt.	Threads per Inch.	Diameter of Bolt.	Threads per Inch.
$\frac{1}{4}$	20	$\frac{5}{8}$	11	$1\frac{3}{8}$	6
$\frac{5}{16}$	18	$\frac{3}{4}$	10	$1\frac{1}{2}$	6
$\frac{3}{8}$	16	$\frac{7}{8}$	9	$1\frac{5}{8}$	5
$\frac{7}{16}$	14	1	8	$1\frac{3}{4}$	5
$\frac{1}{2}$	12	$1\frac{1}{8}$	7	$1\frac{7}{8}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{9}{16}$	12	$1\frac{1}{4}$	7	2	$4\frac{1}{2}$

Bolts and Nuts. Among the most common pieces of machinery are bolts and nuts, and the draftsman has frequent occasion to draw them. Fig. 35 is a conventional drawing of a $\frac{1}{2}$ inch bolt with a hexagonal head and nut. This figure shows the dimensions necessary to be given in order that a workman shall be able to make the bolt from the drawing.

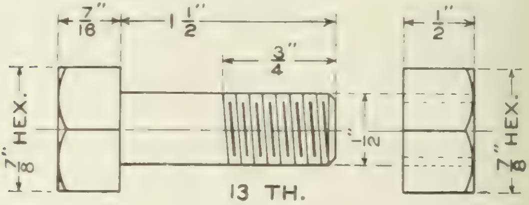


Fig. 35.

Beginning with the head of the bolt, let us study the various parts of this drawing in detail. The head is a hexagonal prism the end of which has been chamfered. We might expect that two views of the head would be necessary to completely define its shape, but the letters HEX printed after the dimension for the diameter of the head indicates that it is hexagonal. In like manner, if the head were square the letters SQ would be placed after the dimension. If two views were drawn, they would appear as in Fig. 36 The head is drawn as if the tool which cut the chamfer, cut off just the corners of the top, so as to make the top a circle tangent to the sides of the hexagon at B, E, G, etc.; the parts BCE, EFG, etc., being portions of a cone or sphere according to the manner of chamfering. The curves ABC and CEF are tangent to the line

GK in the side view, and the lines AJ, CD, and FH are all equal in length. The curves ABC and CEF are properly the lines of intersection of a cone or sphere, as the case may be, with the hexagonal prism, but a convenient and sufficiently accurate way of drawing them is by arcs of circles with the center on the line HJ, half way between HD and DJ, as indicated. The chamfer is represented in the end view by a circle inscribed in the hexagon.

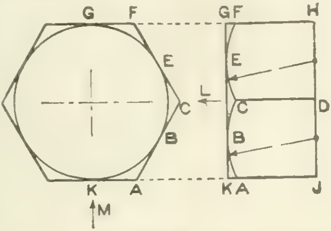


Fig. 36.

It will be noticed that in Fig. 35 that view of the head is given which shows two faces of the prism, so that the shortest dimension of the hexagon is given. That is, the view is taken in the direction of the arrow L, Fig. 36, instead of in the direction of the arrow M.

This rule should be followed on all detail drawings. The case when it is desirable to give a view in the direction of the arrow M will be discussed later.

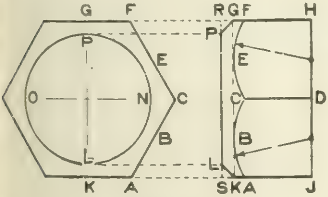


Fig. 37.

Sometimes it is desired to represent the chamfer as being greater, as in Fig. 37. To do this, draw the end view of the hexagon and inside it, of a diameter as much smaller as desired, draw the circle PNLO. Next draw the side view of the hexagonal prism as if there were no chamfer, as shown at the right (partly in dotted lines). Then from P and L, the upper and lower points of the circle in the other view, draw lines perpendicular to RS and meeting it at P and L. From P and L draw PG and LK, either at an angle of 45 degrees or 30 degrees (the latter being preferable) with RS, and meeting the lines RH and SJ at G and K. Join G and K by a construction line GK (shown dotted but not to be left in the finished drawing). Draw the arcs ABC and CEF with center on line HJ as shown, and tangent to GK.

Fig. 38 shows the proper way of representing the head which was shown in Fig. 36 if the view is taken in the direction of the arrow M. The dotted construction lines show how the widths are obtained. Fig. 39 shows the corresponding view of the head shown in Fig. 37. The radius with which the middle arc representing the chamfer is drawn in these two figures is apparent. Various rules are given for finding a radius for small arcs, but they can be found near enough by trial, after a little experience. The line TV, Fig. 39, to which the tops of the arcs are tangent, is drawn parallel to RS and at a distance from it equal to RG in Fig. 37.

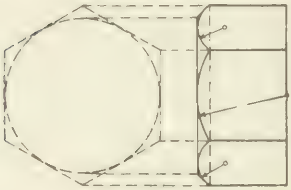


Fig. 38.

The nut, Fig. 35, is drawn in exactly the same way as the head, so that what has just been said will apply equally well to the nut. The hole in the nut is indicated by the four parallel dotted lines as explained for Fig. 29.

The shank of the bolt is represented with the thread upon it as explained above for conventional threads. The point is drawn chamfered a little in the figure, so that it appears as the frustum of a cone. Bolts often have round points, in which case they would be shown as in Fig. 40. The lines which represent the thread should not cross the line which is drawn square across the bolt to indicate where the chamfer or the rounding of the point begins.

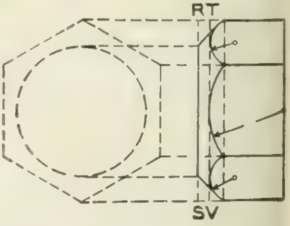


Fig. 39

Fig. 41 shows three views of a square head or nut with chamfer corresponding to that on the hexagonal head in Fig. 36; and Fig. 42 shows the square head or nut chamfered to correspond to

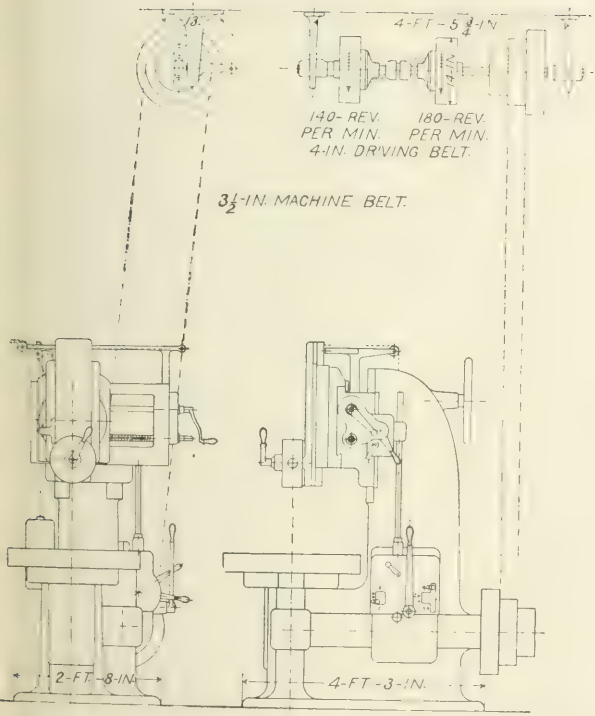


DIAGRAM FOR INSTALLING A 30-INCH VERTICAL TURRET MACHINE

Warner and Swasey.

Fig. 37. Referring first to Fig. 41 the arc on the side view which shows the short diameter of the nut is drawn with a radius A, equal to two and one-quarter times the diameter of the bolt on which the head or nut belongs. The arcs on the other side view are drawn with a radius B, equal to one-half of A. The lines EF are drawn from points E tangent to the arcs, and it will be found that the points of tangency will come almost at the points where the arcs cut the lines CD. Points E are found by projecting from the plan view as indicated by the dotted lines. In Fig. 42, the construction is similar. The points N are first found by projecting from the top and bottom of the circle in the plan view; then the lines NL are drawn making angles of 30 degrees with line NN. (The proportions for the radii which are given, hold good only when the angle of 30 degrees is used). Next draw the construction line LL and draw the arc tangent to it with a radius A equal to two and one-quarter times the diameter of the bolt, the same as in Fig. 41. To draw the chamfer in the other side view, draw the construction line parallel to and at a distance from CC equal to the distance LL from NN and draw the arcs

Fig. 40

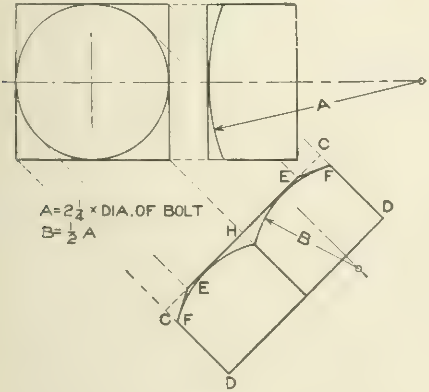


Fig. 41.

tangent to this line with radius B equal to one-half of A. The lines EF are then drawn as explained for Fig. 41.

Referring again to Fig. 35, the dimension which shows the length of the bolt under the head should be given to the extreme point of the bolt, as should also the dimension which shows how much of the bolt is threaded.

Most of the bolts in common use are made of standard sizes, that is, for a certain diameter of bolt there is a corresponding standard diameter and thickness for the head and the nut, and a standard number of threads per inch, so that if the bolt which the draftsman wishes to use has these standard dimensions they may be omitted from the drawing and a note made that the bolt is standard. Then the only dimensions necessary to be given are the diameter, the length under the head, and the length of the threaded part.

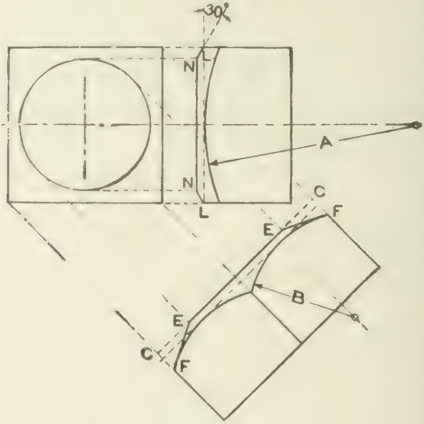


Fig. 42

The following tables give the United States standard sizes of square and hexagonal heads and nuts for bolts. The columns headed "Width of Nut" and "Width of Head" give the shortest dimension of the square or hexagon, that is, the diameter of the inscribed circle. The standard number of threads per inch can be found from the table already given.

SQUARE BOLT HEADS. U. S. STANDARD (Franklin Institute).

Dia. of Bolt.	Width of Head.	Thickness of Head.	Dia. of Bolt.	Width of Head.	Thickness af Head.
$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	1	$1\frac{5}{8}$	$\frac{13}{16}$
$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{19}{32}$	$\frac{19}{64}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{13}{16}$	$\frac{29}{32}$
$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{11}{16}$	$\frac{11}{32}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	2	1
$\frac{7}{16}$	$\frac{25}{32}$	$\frac{25}{64}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$2\frac{3}{16}$	$1\frac{3}{32}$
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{7}{8}$	$\frac{7}{16}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{16}$
$\frac{9}{16}$	$\frac{31}{32}$	$\frac{31}{64}$	$1\frac{5}{8}$	$2\frac{9}{16}$	$1\frac{9}{32}$
$\frac{5}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{17}{32}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$2\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$
$\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{8}$	$1\frac{7}{8}$	$2\frac{15}{16}$	$1\frac{15}{32}$
$\frac{7}{8}$	$1\frac{7}{16}$	$\frac{23}{32}$	2	$3\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{9}{16}$

HEXAGON BOLT HEADS. U. S. STANDARD (Franklin Institute).

Dia. of Bolt.	Width of Head.	Thickness of Head.	Dia. of Bolt.	Width of Head.	Thickness of Head.
$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	1	$1\frac{5}{8}$	$\frac{13}{16}$
$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{19}{32}$	$\frac{19}{64}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{13}{16}$	$\frac{29}{64}$
$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{11}{16}$	$\frac{11}{32}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	2	1
$\frac{7}{16}$	$\frac{25}{32}$	$\frac{25}{64}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$2\frac{3}{16}$	$1\frac{3}{32}$
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{7}{8}$	$\frac{7}{16}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{16}$
$\frac{9}{16}$	$\frac{31}{32}$	$\frac{31}{64}$	$1\frac{5}{8}$	$2\frac{9}{16}$	$1\frac{9}{32}$
$\frac{5}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{17}{32}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$2\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$
$\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{8}$	$1\frac{7}{8}$	$2\frac{15}{16}$	$1\frac{15}{32}$
$\frac{7}{8}$	$1\frac{7}{16}$	$\frac{23}{32}$	2	$3\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{9}{16}$

SQUARE AND HEXAGON NUTS. U. S. STANDARD (Franklin Institute).

Dia. of Bolt.	Width of of Nut.	Thickness of Nut.	Dia. of Bolt.	Width of Nut.	Thickness of Nut.
$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	1	$1\frac{5}{8}$	1
$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{19}{32}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{13}{16}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$
$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{11}{16}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	2	$1\frac{1}{4}$
$\frac{7}{16}$	$\frac{25}{32}$	$\frac{7}{16}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$2\frac{3}{16}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{7}{8}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{9}{16}$	$\frac{31}{32}$	$\frac{9}{16}$	$1\frac{5}{8}$	$2\frac{9}{16}$	$1\frac{5}{8}$
$\frac{5}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{5}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$2\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$
$\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{7}{8}$	$2\frac{15}{16}$	$1\frac{7}{8}$
$\frac{7}{8}$	$1\frac{7}{16}$	$\frac{7}{8}$	2	$3\frac{1}{8}$	2

Pipes and Pipe Threads. The various kinds of pipe in common use are made to standard sizes, and as the draftsman very often comes in contact with piping we will consider it briefly. The kinds most often used are wrought-iron or steel pipe, brass pipe made to the size of wrought-iron pipe, and cast-iron pipe. The cast-iron pipe is made of different weights and form, according to the purpose for which it is to be used. Standard weight iron pipe is rated by its nominal inside diameter, although the actual diameter does not in most cases quite agree with the nominal diameter. A $\frac{1}{4}$-inch pipe is a pipe, the hole in which is supposed to be $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in diameter, but if carefully measured it will be found to be a few hundredths of an inch larger.

The threads on pipes and pipe fittings are also made to standard; taps and dies are made for various sizes of pipe. These taps and dies are spoken of or described by stating the size of the pipe for which they are intended For example, a $\frac{1}{4}$-inch pipe-tap is a tap of the proper size, shape, and number of threads per inch to cut the thread in a hole to receive a $\frac{1}{4}$-inch pipe.

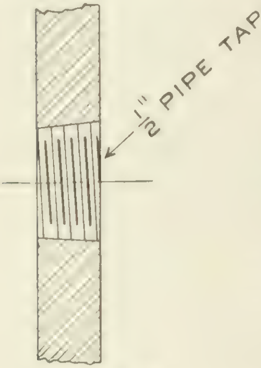


Fig. 43.

Threaded holes are made tapering for pipes, the standard taper being $\frac{3}{4}$ inch per foot, that is, the diameter of the hole decreases at the rate of $\frac{3}{4}$ inch per foot. In representing a hole which is threaded with a pipe tap, the hole is drawn of a diameter at its larger end about equal to the outside diameter of the pipe which is to be screwed into it, and is drawn tapering. It is well to make the taper considerably greater than the actual taper, so that the person looking at the drawing may see at a glance that the hole is for a pipe.

The thread is indicated in one of the conventional ways previously explained, but the number of threads per inch and the diameter of the hole need not be given; instead, a note is made that the hole is tapped for a certain size pipe. Fig. 43 illustrates this.

The following tables of standards for wrought-iron pipe may be found convenient:

STANDARD SIZES OF WROUGHT IRON PIPE.

Nominal Size.	⅛	¼	⅜	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
Actual Inside Diameter.	.27	.364	.494	.623	.824	1.048	1.38	1.610	2.067
Outside Diameter.	.405	.54	.675	.84	1.05	1.315	1.66	1.90	2.375
Nominal Size.	2½	3	3½	4	4½	5	6	7	8
Actual Inside Diameter.	2.468	3.067	3.548	4.026	4.508	5.045	6.065	7.023	7.982
Outside Diameter.	2.875	3.50	4.00	4.50	5.00	5.563	6.625	7.625	8.625

STANDARD THREADS FOR WROUGHT IRON PIPE.

Nominal Size of Pipe.	⅛	¼	⅜	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
Threads per Inch.	27	18	18	14	14	11½	11½	11½	11½
Nominal Size of Pipe.	2½	3	3½	4	4½	5	6	7	8
Threads per Inch.	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8

Scale Drawings. When the object which is to be drawn is not so large but that it can be easily actual size, or full size as it is called, on a sheet of paper which is of convenient dimensions, it is well, usually, to draw the piece full size. In most cases, however, the machine, or the building, or whatever is to be drawn is so large that it would be impossible to draw it full size. Then the drawing is made to some reduced scale, that is, all the dimensions are drawn smaller than the actual dimensions of the object itself; all dimensions being reduced in the same proportion. For example, if a piece is to be drawn half size, the distance from one point to another on the drawing would be one-half what it is on the piece itself; if the drawing is one-fourth size, the distance on the drawing would be one-fourth what it is on the piece itself.

and so on. In dimensioning such a drawing the dimension which is written on the drawing is the *actual dimension* of the piece, and not the distance which is measured on the drawing. This fact must be very clearly understood by the student.

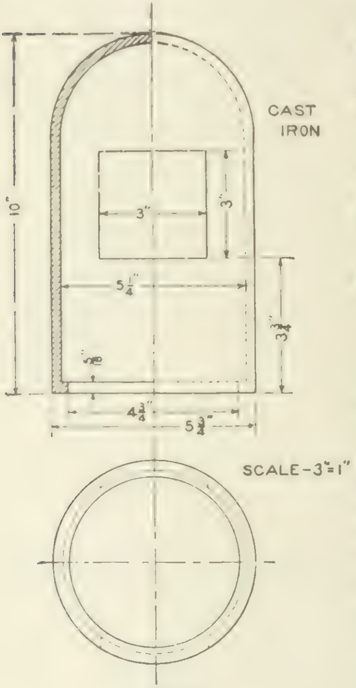


Fig. 44.

The common method of reducing all the dimensions in the same proportion is to choose a certain distance and let that distance represent one foot, this distance is then divided into twelve parts and each one of these parts represents an inch; then if half and quarter inches are required these twelfths are subdivided into halves, quarters, etc., until the subdivisions become so small that they cannot be used. We now have a scale which represents the common foot rule with its subdivisions into inches and fractions; but our new foot is smaller than the ordinary distance which we call a foot, and of course its subdivisions are proportionately smaller. When we make a measurement on the drawing we make it with our reduced foot rule and when we make a measurement on the machine itself we make it with the common foot rule.

Draftsmen's scales can be bought which have different distances thus divided, so that if the draftsman wishes to draw a piece one-fourth size he looks over his scale until he finds a distance of three inches (which is of course one-fourth of a foot) divided as explained above, and he uses this to measure with on his drawing. His drawing would then be made to a scale of three inches to the foot. In the same way, if he wishes to make his drawing one-twelfth size he finds on his scale one inch divided into twelfths and fractions of twelfths and uses this as his standard of measurement; if he wishes to make his drawing one forty-eighth size he uses a quarter inch with its subdivisions. Sometimes if the piece to be drawn is very small, the drawing is made at an enlarged scale, such as twice size, three times size, etc.

The mistake of choosing the wrong distance to use on a scale is often made. For example, if he wishes to draw a piece $\frac{1}{4}$ size, he will look over his scale for a place marked $\frac{1}{4}$, and use this for his standard for $\frac{1}{4}$ size, which is wrong. The figure on the scale indicates the distance which is divided up to represent one foot, so that the part of the scale which has $\frac{1}{4}$ marked on it means that $\frac{1}{4}$ of an inch is divided up into twelfths, or in other words, if a drawing is made according to that scale it will be $\frac{1}{48}$th size.

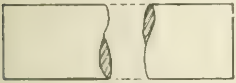


Fig. 45.

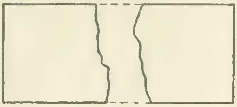


Fig. 46.

Every drawing which is made at any other scale than full size should have the scale marked on it plainly.

Fig. 44 shows a piece drawn to a scale of 3 inches per foot, that is, $\frac{1}{4}$ size.

Long Pieces. A piece which is very long in proportion to its diameter or width is often difficult to draw complete, especially if there is much detail to any part of it, for if the scale is made so small that the length will go on a sheet of paper of convenient size the small part is so reduced that it is very small. If such a piece is plain the whole or part of its length, a portion of the plain part may be broken out on the drawing thus shortening the drawing of the piece so that a larger scale may be used. Of course in giving the dimension for the length, the *actual* length must be given. Fig. 45 shows a round piece thus broken out and Fig. 46 a rectangular piece.

It is a good idea to connect by dotted lines the two parts thus broken, although this is not essential.

"Turning Up" a Section. Sometimes a second view of a piece may be avoided by drawing on the first view a partial view showing the shape of the cross-section at the place where drawn. This partial view or "turned-up section" may be drawn in either full or dotted lines and should be cross hatched. If it comes where there are other lines of the original view, as is usually the case, the original lines would be drawn in regardless of the fact that they conflicted with the auxiliary view. Fig. 47 is an illustration.

In General. A working drawing will usually belong to one of the three following classes: *first*, a design of an entirely new machine; *second*, a drawing of a machine which is already built; *third*, a drawing of a new part to fit a machine which is already built, or a drawing of an old machine remodelled.

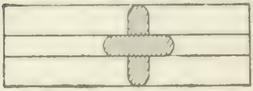


Fig. 47.

In order to design a new machine or a part of a machine, the draftsman must understand the principles of drawing and must also have a clear understanding of the work which the machine is to perform, and must know something of the principles of machine design and the strength of materials. A study of the general manner of proceeding with the drawing, when these things are known, will come later in this course. The draftsman may make a drawing of a machine which is already built, even if he has no understanding of the working of the machine, although under such conditions he works at a great disadvantage. In any case, he must know the principles of drawing.

If the student has learned thoroughly what has preceded in this course, he should be ready to take up the drawing from a machine, and we will now consider the general system to be followed in making such a drawing.

Sketches. In most cases it would be inconvenient for the draftsman to take his drawing board and instruments to the machine and make his careful drawing with the machine close at hand; preferably, he makes what are called sketches, carries his sketches to the drafting room and makes his drawing from them. In making the sketches, each piece of the machine should be taken separately and a complete working drawing made of it, the only difference between these sketches and the finished drawing being that they are made largely without the use of instruments, triangles, etc.; that is, they are made free hand. The experienced draftsman will draw some lines and circles free hand, and use his instruments on some, according as he may think that he will save time by doing the one or the other; but it is well for the beginner to gain practice by making the sketches, almost wholly free hand, except large circles, and long lines.

The sketches should be neat and perfectly clear, so that if they are laid aside for a long time they can be clearly understood without depending at all upon memory. There is a strong tendency for the beginner to make his sketches hurriedly, thinking that when he comes to finish his drawing he can supply the details from memory. This is a bad plan and will lead to many mistakes. The sketches must be so clear and complete that anyone can read them who has never seen the machine. No attempt need be made to draw them to scale, but **all dimensions**, carefully measured from the machine, should be placed on the sketch.

After every piece of the machine has been thus sketched separately, it is well to make a rough, general sketch of the whole machine, to show how the various pieces fit together, a few of the most important over-all dimensions, distances between centers, etc.

All sketching should be done as rapidly as possible without sacrificing clearness. Before starting to sketch a piece, the draftsman must decide what views are necessary to describe the piece clearly. All sketches should be made large to avoid confusion.

Detail Drawing. After the sketches are made, the next step is the making of the pencil drawing from the sketches, accurately to scale. The size of the plate on which the drawing is to be made is usually fixed by some standard. Where many drawings are made and kept in an office, it is desirable to keep the plates of uniform size, as far as possible. It is good practice to have two or three standard sizes of plates, one for small drawings, one for ordinary-sized work, and one for large drawings; then, whenever a drawing is made, make it on one of these standard plates.

Assuming, then, that we have our paper stretched on the drawing board and the plate laid out, the next step will be to arrange the drawings of the various pieces on the plate so that there will be room for all and so that they may be properly placed with relation to each other. It may happen that there will not be room on one plate for all the pieces, but that two or more plates will be required. When the parts must be thus arranged on different plates, an effort should be made to keep on the same plate those parts which belong together. For example, if we were drawing a lathe, the details of the parts of the head stock might form one plate, the apron another, and so on.

In locating the various pieces on a plate, they should be placed as nearly as possible in the same relative position to each other that they bear in the machine, except that they are separated. For example: if a nut belongs on the end of a screw, it is desirable to draw it on the same center line with the screw and at the end where it belongs. If a piece is vertical in the machine it should be vertical on the plate, and if horizontal in the machine, it should be horizontal on the plate.

The approximate location of the pieces on the plate may be easily decided by taking a small sheet of paper of about the same proportion as the plate, but perhaps one-fourth or one-half size, and sketching on it roughly the outline of the various pieces. The arranging of the plate should not be allowed to take much time, but should be done as rapidly as possible. After the location of each view of each piece is determined, the pencil drawing should begin (to scale) with one of the principal pieces. In almost all cases a center line is first drawn. It is better to carry along all the views of a piece at once, instead of completing one view at a time. The piece started should have all its views finished and completely dimensioned before another piece is begun; exceptions to this are sometimes necessary for special reasons. The lines should be drawn accurately, but no attempt need be made to obtain finish; that is, in order to save time, the lines may be run past the point where they should properly stop, etc. Nothing should be omitted, however.

Each plate of details should have a title, stating of what machine it is a drawing, and, if there are several plates, it is well to state also of what part of the machine the plate in question is a drawing. It is also a good idea to print its name beside each of the principal pieces.

Tracing. Having finished the pencil drawing, the next step is the inking. In some offices the pencil drawing is made on a thin, tough paper, called board paper, and the inking is done over the pencil drawing, in the manner with which the student is already familiar. It is more common to do the inking on thin, transparent cloth, called tracing cloth, which is prepared for the purpose. This tracing cloth is made of various kinds, the kind in ordinary use being what is known as "dull back," that is, one side is finished and the other side is left dull. Either side may be used to draw upon, but most draftsmen prefer the dull side. If a drawing is to be traced it is a good plan to use a 3H or 4H pencil, so that the lines may be easily seen through the cloth.

The tracing cloth is stretched smoothly over the pencil drawing and a little powdered chalk rubbed over it with a dry cloth, to remove the slight amount of grease or oil from the surface and make it take the ink better. The dust must be carefully brushed or wiped off with a soft cloth, after the rubbing, or it will interfere with the inking.

The drawing is then made in ink on the tracing cloth, after the same general rules as for inking the paper, but care must be taken to draw the ink lines exactly over the pencil lines which are on the paper underneath, and which should be just heavy enough to be easily seen through the tracing cloth. The ink lines should be firm and fully as heavy as for ordinary work. In tracing, it is better to complete one view at a time, because if parts of several views are traced and the drawing left for a day or two, the cloth is liable to stretch and warp so that it will be difficult to complete the views and make the new lines fit those already drawn and at the same time conform to the pencil lines underneath. For this reason it is well, when possible, to complete a view before leaving the drawing for any length of time, although of course on views in which there is a good deal of work this cannot always be done. In this case the draftsman must manipulate his tracing cloth and instruments to make the lines fit as best he can. A skillful draftsman will have no trouble from this source, but the beginner may at first find difficulty.

Inking on tracing cloth will be found by the beginner to be quite different from inking on the paper to which he has been accustomed, and he will doubtless make many blots and think at first that it is hard to make a tracing. After a little practice, however, he will find that the tracing cloth is very satisfactory and that a good drawing can be made on it quite as easily as on paper.

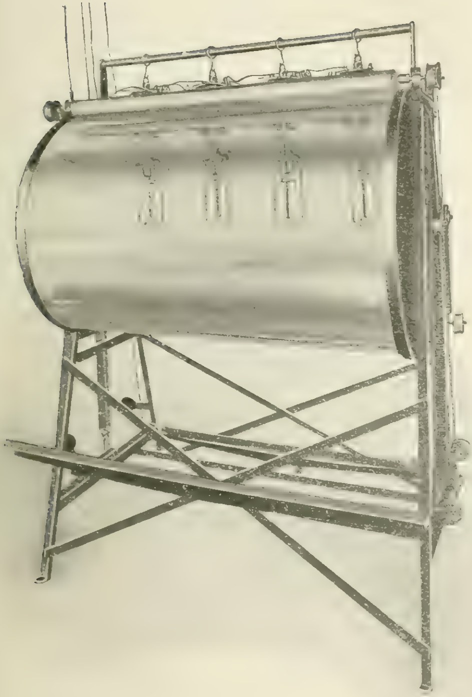
The necessity for making erasures should be avoided, as far as possible, but when an erasure must be made a good ink rubber or typewriter eraser may be used. If the erased line is to have ink placed on it, such as a line crossing, it is better to use a soft rubber eraser. All moisture should be kept from the cloth.

Blue Printing. The tracing, of course, cannot be sent into the shop for the workmen to use, as it would soon become soiled and in time destroyed, so that it is necessary to have some cheap and rapid means of making copies from it. These copies are made by the process of blue printing in which the tracing is used in a manner similar to the use made of a negative in photography.

Almost all drafting rooms have a frame for the purpose of making blue prints. These frames are made in many styles, some simple, some elaborate. A simple and efficient form is a flat surface usually of wood, covered with padding of soft material, such as felting. To this is hinged the cover, which consists of a frame similar to a picture frame, in which is set a piece of clear glass. The whole is either mounted on a track or on some sort of a swinging arm, so that it may readily be run in and out of a window.

The print is made on paper prepared for the purpose by having one of its surfaces coated with chemicals which are sensitive to sunlight. This coated paper, or blue-print paper, as it is called, is laid on the padded surface of the frame with its coated side uppermost; the tracing laid over it right side up, and the glass pressed down firmly and fastened in place. Springs are frequently used to keep the paper, tracing, etc., against the glass With some frames it is more convenient to turn them over and remove the backs. In such cases the tracing is laid against the glass, face down; the coated paper is then placed on it with the coated side against the tracing cloth.

The sun is allowed to shine upon the drawing for a few minutes, then the blue-print paper is taken out and thoroughly washed in clean water for several minutes and hung up to dry.



CIRCULAR BLUE PRINTING MACHINE, GENERAL ELECTRIC CO.

If the paper has been recently prepared and the exposure properly timed, the coated surface of the paper will now be of a clear, deep blue color, except where it was covered by the ink lines, where it will be perfectly white.

The action has been this: Before the paper was exposed to the light the coating was of a pale yellow color, and if it had then been put in water the coating would have all washed off, leaving the paper white. In other words, before being exposed to the sunlight the coating was soluble. The light penetrated the transparent tracing cloth and acted upon the chemicals of the coating, changing their nature so that they became insoluble; that is, when put in water, the coating, instead of being washed off, merely turned blue. The light could not penetrate the ink with which the lines, figures, etc., were drawn, consequently the coating under these was not acted upon and it washed off when put in water, leaving a white copy of the ink drawing on a blue background. If running water cannot be used, the paper must be washed in a sufficient number of changes until the water is clear. It is a good plan to arrange a tank having an overflow, so that the water may remain at a depth of about 6 or 8 inches.

The length of time to which a print should be exposed to the light depends upon the quality and freshness of the paper, the chemicals used and the brightness of the light. Some paper is prepared so that an exposure of one minute, or even less, in bright sunlight, will give a good print and the time ranges from this to twenty minutes or more, according to the proportions of the various chemicals in the coating. If the full strength of the sunlight does not strike the paper, as, for instance, if clouds partly cover the sun, the time of exposure must be lengthened.

Assembly Drawing. We have followed through the process of making a detail drawing from the sketches to the blue print ready for the workmen. Such a detail drawing or set of drawings shows the form and size of each piece, but does not show how the pieces go together and gives no idea of the machine as a whole. Consequently, a general drawing or assembly drawing must be made, which will show these things. Usually two or more views are necessary, the number depending upon the complexity of the machine. Very often a cross-section through some part of the machine, chosen so as to give the best general idea with the least amount of work, will make the drawing clearer.

The number of dimensions required on an assembly drawing depends largely upon the kind of machine. It is usually best to give the important over-all dimensions and the distance between the principal center lines. Care must be taken that the over-all dimensions agree with the sum of the dimensions of the various details. For example, suppose three pieces are bolted together, the thickness of the pieces according to the detail drawing, being one inch, two inches, and five and one-half inches respectively; the sum of these three dimensions is eight and one-half inches and the dimensions from outside on the assembly drawing, if given at all, must agree with this. It is a good plan to add these over-all dimensions, as it serves as a check and relieves the mechanic of the necessity of adding fractions.

FORMULA FOR BLUE-PRINT SOLUTION.

Dissolve thoroughly and filter.

A.	Red Prussiate of potash	$2\frac{1}{2}$ ounces,
	Water	1 pint.
B.	Ammonio-Citrate of iron	4 ounces,
	Water	1 pint.

Use equal parts of A and B.

FORMULA FOR BLACK PRINTS

Negatives. **White lines on blue ground;** prepare the paper with

Ammonic-Citrate of iron	40 grains,
Water	1 ounce.

After printing wash in water.

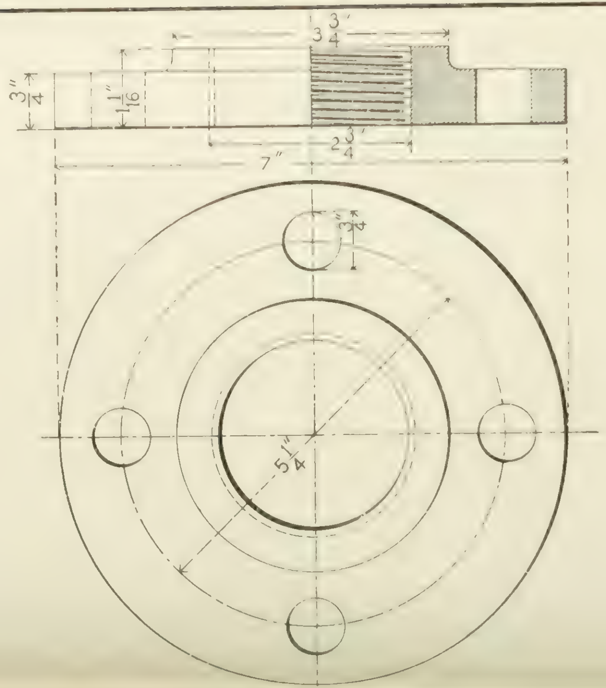
Positives. **Black lines on white ground;** prepare the paper with:

Iron perchloride	616 grains,
Oxalic Acid	308 grains,
Water	14 ounces.

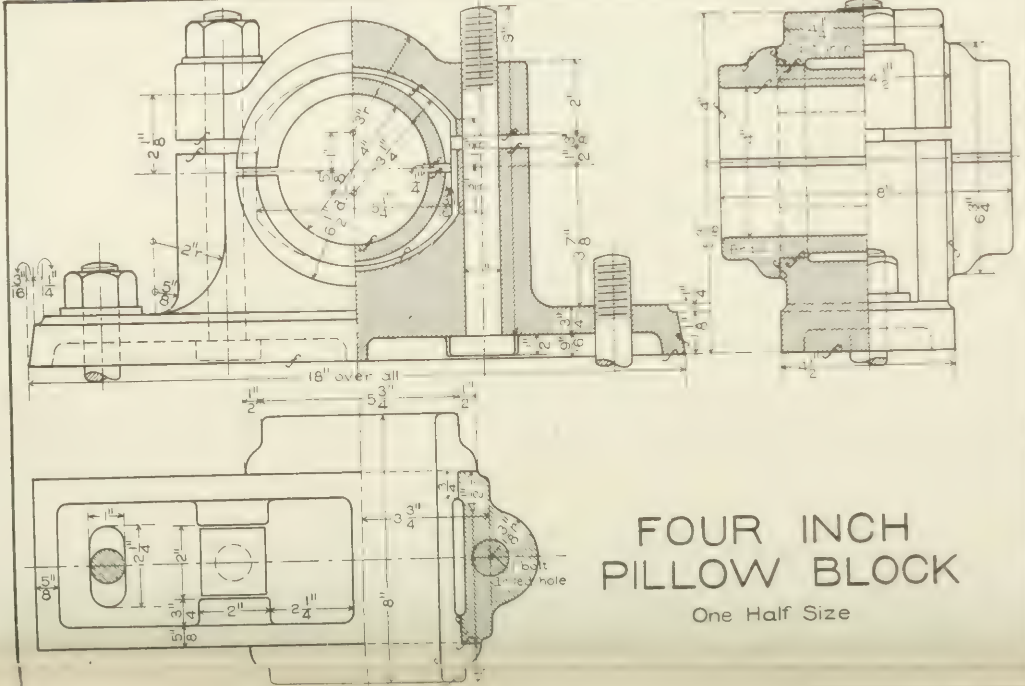
Develop in	Gallic Acid	1 ounce,
	Citric Acid	1 ounce,
	Alum	8 ounces.

Use $1\frac{1}{4}$ ounces of developer to one gallon of water. Paper is fully exposed when it has changed from yellow to white.

PLATE VIII



PIPE COUPLING



FOUR INCH PILLOW BLOCK

One Half Size

PLATES.

PLATE VIII.

Pipe Coupling. The drawing represents one of a pair of cast-iron couplings used for connecting two lengths of pipe. It is threaded for a right-handed thread, but appears left handed because the back part of the thread is visible in the section.

The vertical center line of the coupling is in the center of the plate; the center of the plan is $3\frac{7}{8}$ inches from the lower border and the bottom of the elevation $1\frac{7}{8}$ inches from the top border line. The elevation is made in half section, that is, the right-hand half. It is made by imagining that the front right quarter of the coupling is cut away by vertical planes. If the cutting plane passes through a hole or opening the cross-hatching is omitted. The dotted lines at the left of the hole show that it is threaded. The distance between these lines is $\frac{3}{32}$ inch, the depth of the thread. The threaded or tapped portion is shown in plan by the two circles, the dotted circle representing the outside and the full circle the inside or root of the thread.

The boss or hub adds to the strength and allows more threads. The shade lines should be placed on the drawing following the custom for shop drawings. The title "Pipe Coupling" should be placed as shown and made with letters $\frac{1}{4}$ inch high. The letters may be either vertical or inclined Gothic capitals.

PLATE IX.

Pillow Block. The drawings for this plate are three views—side, plan and end—of a 4 inch-pillow block. Each view is half in section. The drawing should be one-half size. Make the vertical center line of the side and plan views $4\frac{3}{4}$ inches from the left-hand border. The horizontal center line of the side view should be $2\frac{3}{4}$ inches from the top border line and the horizontal center line of the plan $2\frac{1}{4}$ inches from the bottom border line. Locate the vertical center line of the end view $2\frac{1}{4}$ inches from the right-hand border line; the horizontal center line will of course be a continuation of that of the side view. Note that the left-hand half of the plan represents what is seen by looking up from below. The cutting plane for the right-hand half passes horizontally through the center of the shaft.

The student should put on shade lines and finish marks; also the notes and dimensions. Make the letters of the title vertical Gothic capitals $\frac{3}{16}$ inch high.

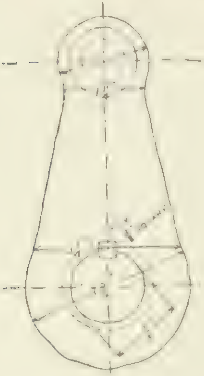


Fig. 48.

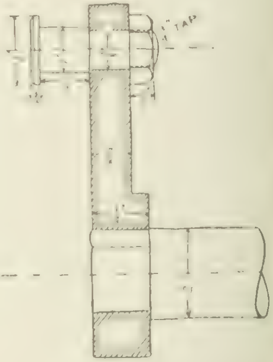


Fig. 49.

PLATE X.

Overhung Crank. The two drawings on this plate are to be made full size from the free-hand sketches Figs. 48 and 49. These are such as would be given the draftsman or such he would make for his own work. Place the two views so that they will look well on the plate. Put on shade lines and dimensions.

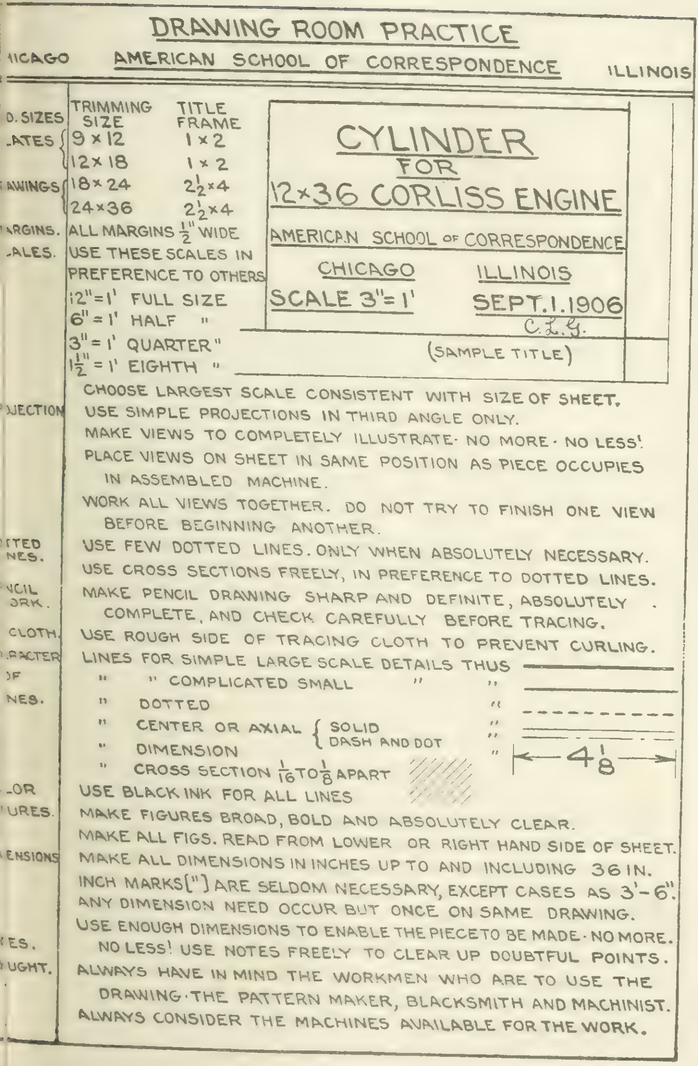
PLATE XI.

Cylinder Head. This plate consists of a plan view and a cross-section of the cylinder head of a small engine. The center line for the two views is drawn half way between the upper and lower border lines. Always allow sufficient space for dimensions.

The shade lines should be placed on the drawing, following the methods described for machine drawing. Locate the title and explanatory notes to make the plate appear well balanced.

PLATE XI A.

Blue Print. Make a tracing on tracing cloth and (optional) a blue print of one of these plates.



DRAWING ROOM PRACTICE

ICAGO — AMERICAN SCHOOL OF CORRESPONDENCE — ILLINOIS

		TRIMMING SIZE	TITLE FRAME
D. SIZES			
LATES		9 × 12	1 × 2
		12 × 18	1 × 2
AWINGS		18 × 24	$2\frac{1}{2}$ × 4
		24 × 36	$2\frac{1}{2}$ × 4

ARGINS. ALL MARGINS $\frac{1}{2}''$ WIDE

ALES. USE THESE SCALES IN PREFERENCE TO OTHERS

12" = 1' FULL SIZE

6" = 1' HALF "

3" = 1' QUARTER "

$1\frac{1}{2}''$ = 1' EIGHTH "

CYLINDER
FOR
12×36 CORLISS ENGINE
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF CORRESPONDENCE
CHICAGO ILLINOIS
SCALE 3" = 1' SEPT. 1. 1906
C. L. G.

(SAMPLE TITLE)

CHOOSE LARGEST SCALE CONSISTENT WITH SIZE OF SHEET.

JECTION USE SIMPLE PROJECTIONS IN THIRD ANGLE ONLY.

MAKE VIEWS TO COMPLETELY ILLUSTRATE · NO MORE · NO LESS!

PLACE VIEWS ON SHEET IN SAME POSITION AS PIECE OCCUPIES IN ASSEMBLED MACHINE.

WORK ALL VIEWS TOGETHER. DO NOT TRY TO FINISH ONE VIEW BEFORE BEGINNING ANOTHER.

TTED NES. USE FEW DOTTED LINES. ONLY WHEN ABSOLUTELY NECESSARY.

USE CROSS SECTIONS FREELY, IN PREFERENCE TO DOTTED LINES.

NCIL ORK. MAKE PENCIL DRAWING SHARP AND DEFINITE, ABSOLUTELY COMPLETE, AND CHECK CAREFULLY BEFORE TRACING.

CLOTH. USE ROUGH SIDE OF TRACING CLOTH TO PREVENT CURLING.

RACTER F NES.

LINES FOR SIMPLE LARGE SCALE DETAILS THUS ————

" " COMPLICATED SMALL " " ————

" DOTTED " - - - - - - - -

" CENTER OR AXIAL { SOLID / DASH AND DOT " ————

" DIMENSION " ← $4\frac{1}{8}$ →

" CROSS SECTION $\frac{1}{16}$ TO $\frac{1}{8}$ APART ▨

OR URES. USE BLACK INK FOR ALL LINES

MAKE FIGURES BROAD, BOLD AND ABSOLUTELY CLEAR.

ENSIONS MAKE ALL FIGS. READ FROM LOWER OR RIGHT HAND SIDE OF SHEET.

MAKE ALL DIMENSIONS IN INCHES UP TO AND INCLUDING 36 IN.

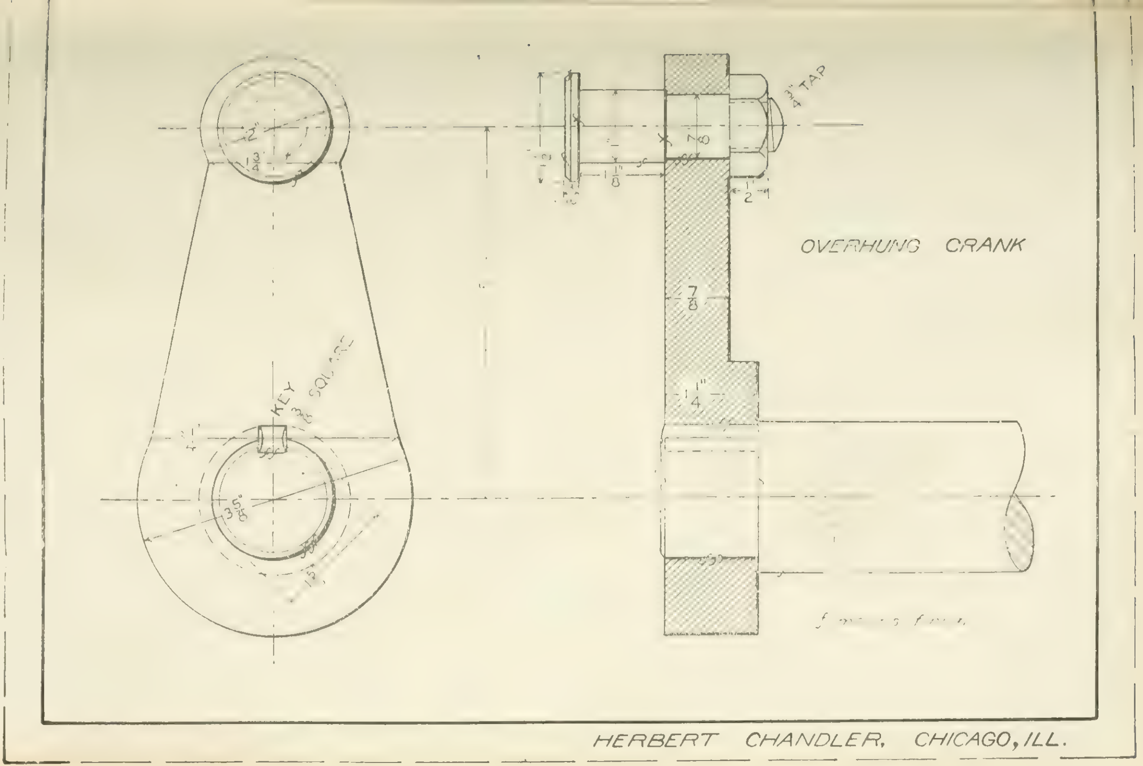
INCH MARKS (") ARE SELDOM NECESSARY, EXCEPT CASES AS 3'-6".

ANY DIMENSION NEED OCCUR BUT ONCE ON SAME DRAWING.

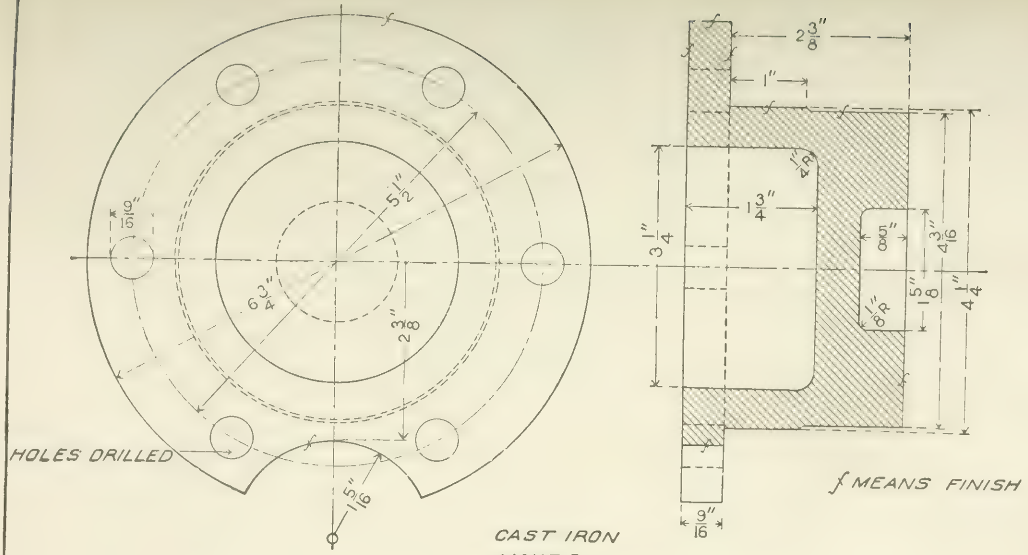
ES. USE ENOUGH DIMENSIONS TO ENABLE THE PIECE TO BE MADE · NO MORE. NO LESS! USE NOTES FREELY TO CLEAR UP DOUBTFUL POINTS.

UGHT. ALWAYS HAVE IN MIND THE WORKMEN WHO ARE TO USE THE DRAWING · THE PATTERN MAKER, BLACKSMITH AND MACHINIST.

ALWAYS CONSIDER THE MACHINES AVAILABLE FOR THE WORK.

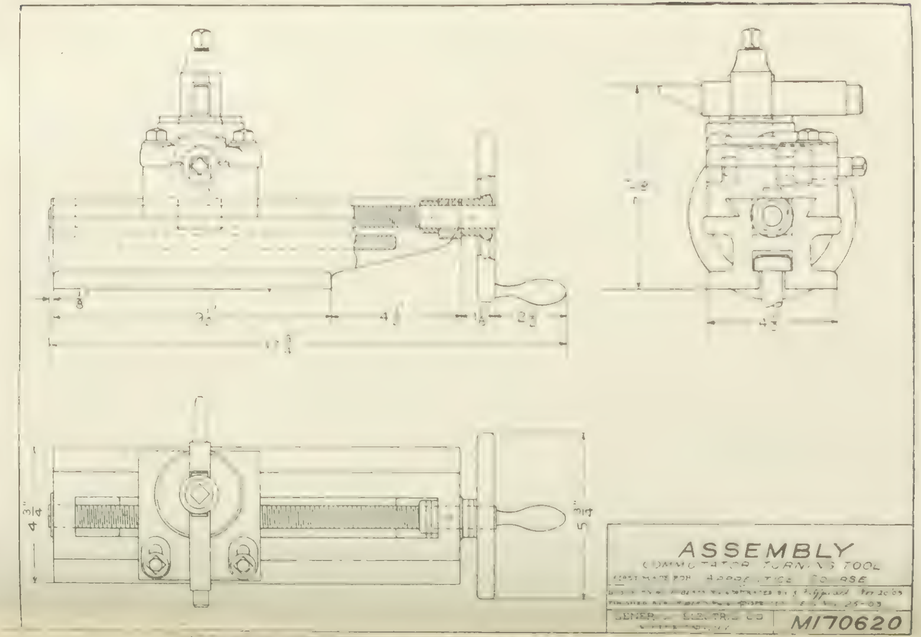

OVERHUNG CRANK
3/4" TAP
7/8
1/2
1 1/8"
7/8
1 1/4"
2"
1 3/4
KEY 3/8 SQUARE
3 5/8"
15
HERBERT CHANDLER, CHICAGO, ILL.

CYLINDER HEAD



CAST IRON
MAKE 2

HERBERT CHANDLER CHICAGO, ILL

9½
4¾"
5¾"
ASSEMBLY
COMMUTATOR TURNING TOOL
FIRST MADE FOR APPRENTICE COURSE
GENERAL ELECTRIC CO
M170620

MECHANICAL DRAWING.

PART IV.

WORKING SHOP DRAWINGS.

In Parts I to III, inclusive, the fundamental principles of Mechanical Drawing were explained and illustrated. The production of working drawings has also been discussed to some extent, and the usual characters and symbols explained and applied. The elementary work already outlined has been treated chiefly from the standpoint of correctness of line representation considered by itself, without a detailed study of the use to which the drawings so produced are to be applied.

Evidently this is the proper method, for the student should gain a thorough understanding of the principles which underlie line representation before attempting to apply them to any extended practical use. In all of this preceding work it is intended that the theoretical principles shall overshadow any incidental references made to practical application, however true and pertinent the latter may be for purposes of illustration. Hence, before taking up any advanced work, the student should fully realize the importance, in fact, the absolute necessity, of thoroughly understanding the fundamental principles which have been outlined in the books which have preceded Part IV.

At this point the student must realize that a lack of proper elementary and fundamental training will make him "go lame" at every point of his course, and probably prevent the attainment of proficiency which otherwise would naturally and almost instinctively come with advanced study. It is the thorough and ready knowledge, always at his fingers' ends, of *all* the principles of Mechanical Drawing, which makes the expert draftsman.

Plan and Scope of Advanced Work. It is now intended to throw an entirely different light on the matter, and view the subject of Mechanical Drawing from a purely practical standpoint; viz., that of Utility. It is assumed that the student understands and can use the principles which have been previously discussed.

If in a working shop drawing we choose to modify any of these theoretical principles, it will be because of increased value in *Utility* of the drawing. For example, we may desire to omit some portions of an elevation or plan or side view of a complicated casting, because certain details will thus be more clearly brought out. We may make a "zigzag" section to show construction which, by absolute fidelity to theoretical principle, would be confused, or hidden in a maze of dotted lines. We may find it convenient to place in some unoccupied corner of a drawing a layout which could not be in the least justified by any rule of projection. A multitude of transgressions like these occur on good drawings, and they are certainly justifiable from the standpoint of *Utility*, which is the true ultimate end sought for in a practical shop drawing.

These variations from the theoretical are not strictly conventionalities, because they are not classified or established, so far as we know, but are the spontaneous outgrowth, as the occasion demands, of the draftsman's purpose to make his drawing one of greatest *Utility*. He can, however, safely transgress a principle only when he thoroughly knows the principle; otherwise a blind deviation from the theoretical path will inevitably lead to difficulty.

All of the above is intended to impress the student with the idea that theoretical principles are his best, in fact, his only tools to work with; but they are not "self-hardening," like "mushet" steel; they are like the finest grade of tool steel, which must be tempered and ground and used with the best judgment of the operator, to secure the most satisfactory results.

Student Drawings. A student's early drawings are usually unsatisfactory, even to himself. Somehow they do not look like those seen in shops, and as a rule he is unable to see why this is so. Of course the difference is to some extent due to the experience of the professional draftsman. However, the superior results of the latter's work are attained largely through his systematic and workmanlike habits of execution. It should encourage the student in his early attempts to know that these essentials to the infusion of life and shop spirit into a drawing can be analyzed, outlined and grasped at the outset by earnest, intelligent effort, and really good workmanlike results obtained. To discuss, and if possible to impart these essentials of a working shop drawing to the student, is the purpose of the present book.

Essentials. The two chief essentials of a shop drawing, under which general heads a multitude of detail requirements can be summed up, are:

(1.) Absolutely complete and definite instructions from designer to workman.

(2.) Least possible cost in dollars and cents of production of the drawing measured by the draftsman's time.

It makes no difference how much we may attempt to disguise these two elements, the fact will still be apparent that "*complete instructions furnished for the least money*" is what the manufacturing shop is after, and what will be assumed as a basis for judgment as to highest commercial utility.

Completeness of Drawings. As to the first point, that of completeness and definiteness of instruction, there must be no question of degree. If the information which the drawing furnishes is positive and complete, the drawing is good. If doubt arises in the workman's mind as to what the designer intended by a certain line or dimension, or if the dimension be omitted, the drawing is bad. There is no middle ground. The instructions are either present or absent, and the drawing good or bad accordingly.

The workman of to-day is not permitted to assume dimensions or shape. It is his business to execute the draftsman's orders; it is, however, often his privilege to choose his own way of doing it, but further than this modern practice does not allow him to go. He is held as rigidly to the orders specified by the drawing as the locomotive engineer is held to his bit of tissue telegraphic order to proceed, without which he dare not enter the next block. The drawing is supreme; it is official; it must be plain, direct and all-sufficient. It is the draftsman's business to make it thus, and he is not a draftsman until he does.

This idea of positiveness must be thoroughly absorbed by the student. Positive action must be a habit which controls his every move, which marks every dimension he prints, which directs every line he draws. Every line must mean something, must have a definite reason for existence, must be necessary to illustrate the idea which he wishes to convey to the workman, and every line must be a definite measurable distance from every other line, so that its location is fixed beyond a doubt. Lines which mean nothing, and cannot be measured, have no place on the drawing; they only confuse it.

A good picture of a machine could scarcely be called to the same service as a good drawing of it. The picture might give us an excellent idea of the machine, but for the purpose of the actual construction the picture is useless, while the drawing is of positive value. This value exists simply because of, and in proportion to, the completeness of detail which it shows. Hence in making a shop drawing the picture idea is entirely subordinate to the idea of *Utility*, the latter in fact being the measure of its value.

There are certain classes of drawings—of which the Patent Office drawing is a good example—in the making of which the picture idea is predominant. Here the purpose is to illustrate mechanisms, not construct them; hence the function of the drawing is in no wise that of the working shop drawing, and as such does not fall within our discussion.

Cost of Producing Drawings. The second general element involved in producing shop drawings is their cost, as measured by the draftsman's time. It is somewhat subordinate to the first element, for the drawing must be a good one, judged by an absolute standard, whatever the time or cost necessary to produce it. Cost, however, is an important item, and cannot well be overlooked. It is inevitable that in any enterprise economy will ultimately be sought, whatever extravagance an imperative original demand may have permitted. This is as true in the production of drawings as in the case of manufactured articles of trade. Drafting-room labor is a relatively high-priced service, and the salary list easily assumes considerable proportions, so that wasteful excesses count up rapidly. One of the qualifications of proficiency invariably required for this department of shop organization is rapidity of execution. This is not as dependent upon personal traits as at first might be supposed. A man may so husband his time and direct his efforts that he will easily distance his neighbor of more rapid motion. The latter may have less ability to make his energies count, and lack of judgment as to when just enough, and no more than enough, energy has been expended on his drawings. From the standpoint of *Utility*, the function of a drawing is fulfilled when it has reached the stage that it *completely* instructs; more time spent in elaboration is wasted, and is an unnecessary and therefore extravagant expenditure. The student must fully realize this. In his earnestness to produce finished and complete work he must constantly strive to accomplish results in the least possible time. This does not mean careless haste; far from it. A complete shop drawing cannot be made by short cuts, but through a systematic building of line on line, dimension on dimension. This is in sharp contrast to a haphazard habit of developing a drawing, first a line here and then a figure there, with no definite purpose in mind, and no hint as to when the drawing is actually completed.

The one method constitutes the efficient draftsman who works easily, receives a high salary, and is worth it, because he wastes no time in unnecessary labor. The other marks his unfortunate brother, plodding laboriously far behind, receiving a small pittance per hour, and worth less, because he does uncalled-for labor, and loses his definiteness of purpose in a maze of unexplainable lines and figures.

A working shop drawing, commercially considered, may well be defined as being "*Complete instruction from designer to workman issued at minimum expense.*"

This definition should be memorized by the student, and constantly kept in mind while making a drawing. The preceding pages should be re-read with this in view until the full spirit is appreciated.

The maxim as given above, if faithfully adhered to without modification, answers nearly every question that can be raised as to the excellence of a drawing. It can be used as a standard of judgment, whatever system of lines or symbols may be in vogue. It permits a draftsman to adjust himself to the rules of any shop or drawing-room, and yet produce a good drawing and satisfy his employer.

A drawing which is cheaply produced and at the same time does perfectly that for which it was made, that is, convey complete instruction, is beyond commercial criticism.

Method of Procedure. As the general objects to be attained in a working shop drawing have now been presented, it is necessary to indicate in detail how the work may be properly accomplished. In order to do this, it is proposed to produce systematically a full set of working drawings of a familiar and comparatively simple machine. The methods used will be those of a designing detail draftsman, producing commercial work fit for shop use. In the progress of the work, from its beginning in the rough, though accurate, pencil layout, to the completion of the tracings and the order sheets, the same bold style, clearness, directness and businesslike spirit which the shop atmosphere and surroundings would naturally supply, will be emphasized, and so far as possible imparted to the student. It is expected that the student will follow the text closely and study the plates carefully, endeavoring to familiarize himself with every detail illustrated. The more closely he is able to apply himself in this respect the more will he be able to partake of the life and spirit which is intended to be conveyed, and without which the true character of the work can be but poorly developed.

Incidentally, several purposes will be fulfilled by this treatment.

Ability to read drawings quickly and intelligently is almost as important as making them, and it is expected that the study of the plates, with a view to thoroughly understanding every line, will develop proficiency in the art of reading drawings.

The discussion in the text, of not only the form of the machine parts themselves, but also the tools and shop processes to produce them, affords considerable insight into the influences affecting good machine design. Without introducing any mathematical analysis or investigation, which is beyond the province of this book, much practical consideration as to the restrictions imposed by existing shop methods upon theoretical construction will be suggested, and the student encouraged to use his judgment thereon.

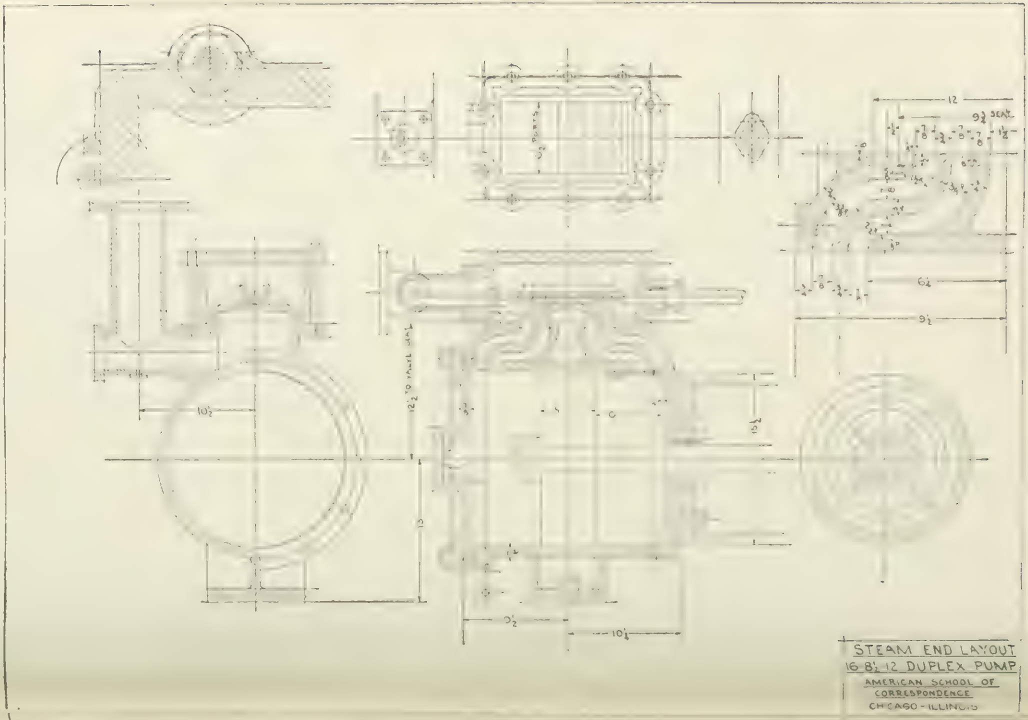
In the preliminary layouts the actual "sketchy" appearance of the pencil drawing will be imitated as far as possible, so that the student himself may imitate and catch the bold dash, yet fine accuracy, of the line-work, which is characteristic of the expert draftsman.

The completeness of a *set* of drawings is as important a lesson as the completeness of each drawing itself. In this is involved the proper arrangement and classification of details, the foundation layout, and the system of order sheets for getting work into and through the shops. This is a feature which very strongly affects some of the finishing touches to a drawing, for it is so easy to omit a "few last things" and turn in an uncompleted sheet. Every draftsman knows how many little things come up toward the close of a job involving complete drawings of a machine, and how strong the tendency is to omit them, and relieve himself of somewhat tedious details. The result is irritation and delay when the drawings get into the shop, and they return to the drawing room to be fixed up at a time probably inconvenient for all parties concerned. A good draftsman will turn in a *complete* set of *complete* drawings. It is highly important that the student grasp this idea, and study his work accordingly.

DUPLEX PUMP PLATES.

The typical set of plates chosen for this book in fulfillment of the above purposes, takes up the study of a simple, duplex steam pump. This particular type of machine represents the simplest and most elementary form of the steam engine in modern use in respect to valve gear and controlling devices. It is not an economical machine, yet its principles lie at the foundation of the economical high-speed engine, the latter being produced through a modification of the uneconomical valve gear such as is found on a pump of the type chosen, rather than through any radical change of construction as to the body of the machine. Hence the study of a steam pump may well precede that of higher forms of the steam engine. It is hoped that the study will so interest the student that he will be led to further investigation and development not only of the steam engine itself, but of that highly important division of modern engineering,—pumping machinery.

Thus we note another point of advantage in the study as out-



STEAM END LAYOUT
16 8½ 12 DUPLEX PUMP
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF
CORRESPONDENCE
CHICAGO - ILLINOIS

lined. The power end of the machine introduces us to the steam engine; the load end is the beginning of the engineering of pumping machinery.

Rating of Pump. A steam pump is rated by the bore of its cylinders and length of stroke, all being given in inches. A "16 × 8½ × 12 pump" means that the steam cylinder is 16 inches in diameter, the water plunger 8½ inches in diameter, and the nominal length of stroke 12 inches. These sizes are always given in the same order, beginning with the diameter of the smallest cylinder (in case there is more than one), then the diameter of water plunger, the common stroke of both being placed last. This expresses to the mechanic the rating of the pump in the clearest style and briefest language.

The pump illustrated here is designed for standard service, operating under a steam pressure not to exceed 100 pounds per square inch, water pressure not to exceed 150 pounds per square inch, and the rated capacity based on an average piston speed of 100 feet per minute being about 550 gallons. This requires that each side of the pump shall handle 275 gallons, and being double acting, shall make 100 reversals or 50 double strokes per minute.

Plate A. Steam End Layout. This plate illustrates, as nearly as reproduction can accomplish, the pencil layout of the steam end. It is the first work of the designing draftsman. The drawing as shown is exactly the type of layout which he would turn over to a detail draftsman, whose duty it would be to work up detail shop drawings therefrom.

The character of this drawing should be carefully studied. Remember that it is a layout, nothing more; also bear in mind that it is an exact, measurable working sketch. Attention is called to the sharpness of the lines, especially to the clean-cut intersections. Note the boldness, dash and businesslike style, the freehand cross-section lines roughly put in. There is no hesitation or worry as to where the end of a line shall be, or whether it crosses other lines which it theoretically should not. The intersections are allowed to indicate the termination of lines, and the rough section lines pick out the parts and separate them clearly to the eye. There is the spirit in this layout of confident, definite and rapid action, with no thought for absolute finish in line-work, but with every thought for absolute results as to measurable dimensions.

The data for the production of Plate A by the student are rather more complete than he would usually find in practice. Plates E, F and G show many details fully.

The steam cylinder and head, however, as shown in Plate G, are not dimensioned, and the student's problem is to produce this plate complete, with finish marks, dimensions and necessary data for a working drawing. In order to do this it is first necessary to work up Plate A with exactness, in pencil, and see that all parts go together properly. Then the detail of cylinder and head may be made separately by measurement of the layout drawing, and Plate G produced.

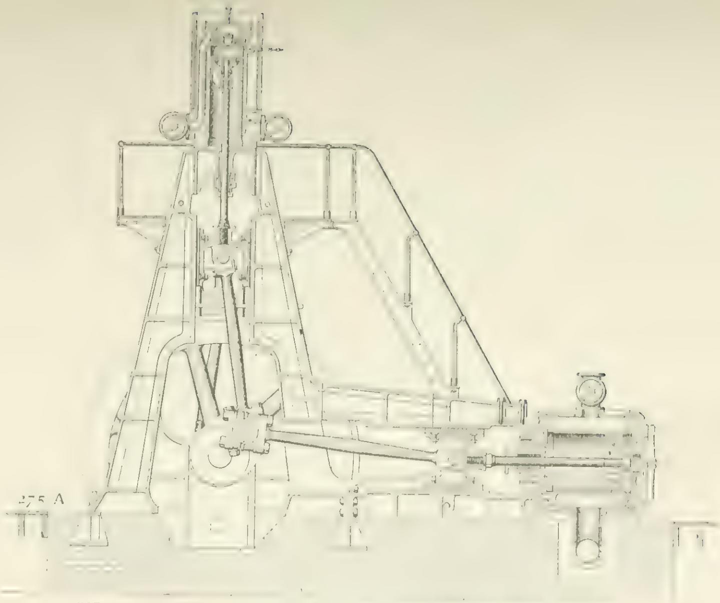
For this work the ordinary brown detail paper is very satisfactory. A hard lead pencil is necessary, as hard as 6H, and the point must be kept well sharpened.

There are two general rules of action in producing a drawing which give the answer to the question which oftenest confronts the beginner: "What is to be done first?" or "What is to be done next?" These rules are:

1. Draw everything that is positively known.
2. Work from the inside to the outside.

Every problem has some positive data, assumed or calculated, to start with. The first thing to do in every case is to get this data represented by lines on the paper. An expert designer has been heard to say that until he had spoiled the blankness of his sheet of paper by some lines, he could not design. There is something in this; and almost invariably the first line to draw is a horizontal center line somewhere near the middle of the sheet; draw it! Draw it at once without hesitation, and the layout is begun. We now have something about which to build.

In this case the designer would first calculate the size of the piston rod, and determine the fastening to the piston. He would then draw the rod and build a hub around it. He would next calculate the width or thickness of piston and size of packing rings, and draw the two vertical lines 5 inches apart, to indicate the piston faces. These lines would be limited by the cylinder bore, which he knows to be 16 inches; hence horizontal lines 16



DIRECT DRIVEN VERTICAL AMMONIA COMPRESSOR SINGLE ACTING.

inches apart, parallel to and symmetrical with the center line, are the next to be drawn. Short vertical lines indicate the location of the packing rings. As the nominal travel of the piston is to be 12 inches, the location of the piston and rings can be shown on both sides of the central vertical line at the limits of travel. A clearance must exist between the heads and the piston (in this case ¼ inch is allowed), hence the lines of the heads can be drawn, and the general inside outline of the cylinder barrel is complete.

This is all in direct application of the foregoing rules, and is so simple, natural and direct that it hardly requires such explicit statement. We have simply taken such data as we had and put it on paper, placing it where it can be seen from all sides, and where the mind is relieved of the labor of carrying it.

If the student will only appreciate this one rule and draw all he knows about the problem, he is well on his way to its solution. *Draw everything you know, and work for what you don't know*, is what these two rules say, and the first question to arise should be: "Have I drawn everything that is known about the problem?" before he asks himself or any one else: "What shall I do next?"

One other rule might be added to these two: *Keep dimensions in even figures, if possible.* This means that small fractions should be avoided. It is just as easy to bear this point in mind, and save the workman much annoyance and chance of error, as it is to disregard this matter. Even figures constitute one of the trade-marks of an expert draftsman. Of course a few small fractions, and sometimes decimals, will be necessary. Remember, however, that fractions must in every case be according to the common scale: that is, in sixteenths, thirty-seconds, sixty-fourths, etc.; never in thirds, fifths, sevenths, or such as do not occur on the common machinist's scale.

A systematic, definite mode of treatment on these lines must become a habit, so that all problems, however complicated, can be approached with confidence in the same way. It is the drawing of one line which makes clear the drawing of the next and subsequent lines; and the most serious obstacle which the student is likely to set for himself is trying to see the whole problem through from the beginning. Even an expert cannot do this, but allows the layout to develop results as he proceeds.

The details of the piston and rod being given in Plate E, the foregoing work is very easy for the student. The thickness of the barrel and heads being determined (⅞ inch in this case), the external outline may be partially drawn. The fixed head at the yoke end must be thicker than this, in order to receive the yoke and stuffing-box bolts without breaking through. The recesses or counterbores at either end of the cylinder should be so located that the packing rings run over the edge a little at the end of the stroke, thus preventing the wearing of a shoulder by the piston stopping in the same place every time. The counterbore should be deep enough to allow reboring the cylinder without the counterbore being touched by the tool. In this way the counterbore is retained to center the cylinder at its original location.

The size of steam ports having been calculated, they may be drawn in, the turns being made easy and as direct as possible. The height to valve seat must be kept at the lowest limit consistent with sufficient metal between and outside of the ports. As the detail of the ports might be somewhat troublesome, it is shown in an enlarged sketch for the student's benefit. Chipping or filing strips ⅛ inch high are left on the port edges, which must be true, in order to finish them up easily.

The three inner ports are for exhaust, the outer ones for admission of steam. This five-ported cylinder is peculiar to the direct-acting steam pump, it being a device to effect the cushioning of the piston at the end of the stroke, thus preventing the piston from striking the heads. This is necessary, since no positive limit of motion exists, as is the case in machines with crank and connecting rod.

When the edge of the piston has passed the outer edge of the exhaust port, as shown in Fig. 1, the steam, which has been exhausting through port A, is confined in space B and port C, and, being compressed by the piston, acts like a spring to retard its motion. If the point P is properly determined for a given speed, the piston will always compress the steam just enough to cause it to stop at the end of the nominal stroke; in this case, ¼ inch from the head. It is evident, however, that at different speeds the piston will have more or less power to compress the steam, and will not stop at the point desired. This causes the trouble of "short stroke," and consequent inability to make the pump work to its full capacity. Now if we connect ports A and C by a small opening shown dotted at D, and control this opening by a plug valve operated by hand from the outside, we can let a little steam leak by into port A, thus reducing the cushion and allowing full stroke.

In order to avoid complicating the drawing, no cushion valves are shown or required to be put on by the student. They are not customary in small pumps, but might advantageously be put on the present illustration.

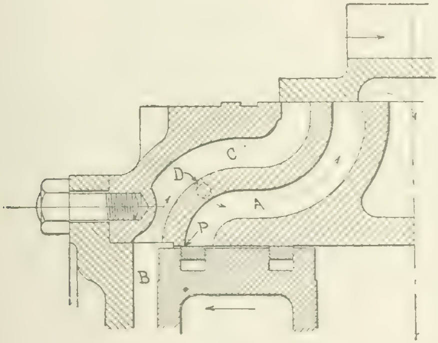


Fig. 1

The valve seat must be a scraped surface, while the chest face need not be; hence the latter is finished $\frac{1}{8}$ inch lower. This also gives a ledge against which the steam chest fits, thus securing positive location.

The bolting of the heads and the steam chest should allow a width of packing inside of the bolts of $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{5}{8}$ inch, otherwise there is danger of the steam blowing out the packing and causing leakage around the bolts. The bolts do not fill the holes, the latter being drilled large, from $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$ inch. The spacing, if wider than 5 or 6 inches, is likely to permit springing of the flanges between the bolts, and consequent leakage. Bolts less than $\frac{1}{2}$ inch diameter are not desirable, as they can be easily twisted off with an ordinary wrench. In this case the cylinder head takes $\frac{7}{8}$-inch bolts, the yoke, stuffing-box and gland, $\frac{3}{4}$-inch.

The flanges of heads and cylinders are usually from 25 per cent to 50 per cent thicker than the body of the casting.

Drips, [illegible]-inch pipe tap, to be fitted with cocks, are necessary at both ends of the cylinder to readily drain the cylinder of water.

Molding of Steam Cylinder. The design is often influenced by the way in which the piece is to be cast. It often takes but a slight change of design to save many dollars in pattern making and foundry work. Hence the habit should be formed of always judging the design of a piece from the foundry standpoint. In this case it is evident that the ports and cylinder bore must be cored out, and the most obvious position of molding is to lay the cylinder on its side, the parting line of the flask being along a vertical plane running lengthwise through the middle of the cylinder. This permits the chest flanges to draw nicely, likewise the ribs on the feet, and allows the thin curving port cores to stand edgewise in the mold.

Another method of molding would be with the valve seat down. This would involve loose pieces for the chest flanges, and setting of cores for the cylinder foot. It would, however, assure sound metal beyond question at the valve seat. Spongy metal at the important wearing surfaces, the valve seat and cylinder bore, is not permissible in any case, and care in molding, and good design, is necessary for good results.

All corners must be carefully filleted, and chunks of metal must be avoided, especially where several walls or ribs join. The metal must be kept of average uniform thickness, so that the whole casting will cool uniformly.

Machining of Steam Cylinder. The boring may be done on a vertical boring mill, the heavy arm carrying the tool being thrust down unsupported into the cylinder, the latter being rotated by the table to which it is clamped. If the horizontal boring machine be used, the hole through the inside head for the stuffing box must be large enough to permit a stiff boring bar to be passed through. This allows a support at each end of the bar, to take the strain of the cut.

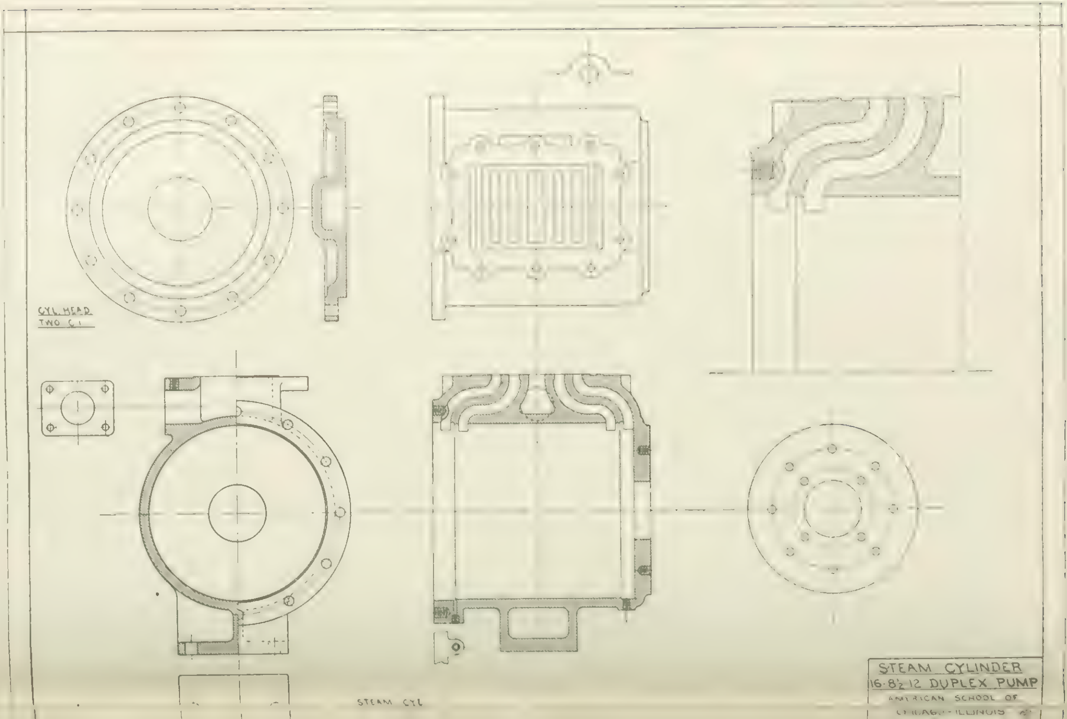
The plane surfaces may be finished on a reciprocating planer or a rotary planer. In the latter case it is desirable to keep all lugs or projections back from finished surfaces, to permit the large round head which carries the cutters to pass over them without interference.

The drilling of standard machine parts of this character is usually done through jigs, or plates carrying hardened steel bushings laid out to correspond with the holes required, and through which the drill is guided. These plates are located by some fixed line or lug on the casting, and then clamped fast, thus assuring exact duplication and rapid drilling, and avoiding the tedious laying out of the holes. In order to save changing the drill it is desirable, if possible, to maintain the same size of hole on any given surface. Of course it is not always admissible to do this.

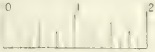
Plate G. Steam Cylinder. After the exact and complete development of the steam-end layout, the student should be pretty thoroughly acquainted with the details of the cylinder. All the work thus far has been entirely for *his own* information, to get his ideas in visible shape, so that he himself can have a permanent record of them. This layout, however, is not in suitable form to finish up into a detail drawing. Its sketchy nature and the confusion of parts, especially if attempt were made to add dimensions, would render it somewhat difficult to be read by a workman taking it up as an unfamiliar subject. Hence it is now necessary to separately detail the parts, with the object in view of transferring, in the simplest and most direct manner, specific information to the workman which will enable him to construct the several parts. It is not enough now that the drawing be clear to the man who makes it; it must be clear, *absolutely clear*, to the shop mechanic, who has no means of knowing the designer's plans except through the information which the drawing gives on its face.

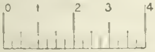
This requires that the draftsman should put himself in the workman's place, and forestall, by the explicit nature of his drawing, all possible questions which may arise in the shop. In this way only can he hope to avoid errors of construction and the continual annoyance of endless explanation of his orders.

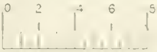
Plate G is to be a finished drawing, and the first thing to do is to lay out the sheet. The standard sheet for details which has


CYL. HEAD
TWO C.I.
STEAM CYL
STEAM CYLINDER
16·8½·12 DUPLEX PUMP
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF
CHICAGO - ILLINOIS

been adopted is 18 × 24 inches trimming size, with $\frac{1}{2}$ inch margin all round, so that the working space is 17 × 23 inches. The rectangle for the title is to be laid off $2\frac{1}{2} \times 4$ inches in the lower right-hand corner, and must never be altered, either in size or position. This does not mean that other sizes are wrong, but once a standard system is adopted it must be strictly adhered to, both for artistic and commercial reasons. The scale to which the drawing is to be made is indicated in the title corner on every plate.

The scales permissible for shop drawings in the United States are those readily derived from the common foot rule, such as full size, 6 inches = 1 foot, 3 inches = 1 foot, $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches = 1 foot. These are the most common, most easily read from an ordinary scale, and one of these can usually be adopted. The student should learn to read these from an ordinary scale without being confined to a special graduation. To do this it is not necessary to divide each dimension by 2, 4 and 8 to get half size, quarter size, or eighth size, and then lay down the result. For half size, or 6 inches = 1 foot, $\frac{1}{2}$ inch on an ordinary rule represents 1 inch. Hence, each half inch may be read as 1 inch, and its subdivisions accordingly, thus: 

For 3 inche = 1 foot, or quarter size, $\frac{1}{4}$ inch represents 1 inch, and looks thus: 

For $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches = 1 foot, or eighth size, $\frac{1}{8}$ inch represents 1 inch, and looks thus: 

It is very easy to get accustomed to this, and it saves much time and trouble hunting up a special scale every time.

The other allowable scales, less common, but sometimes necessary on large work, are 1 inch = 1 foot, $\frac{3}{4}$ inch = 1 foot, $\frac{1}{2}$ inch = 1 foot, $\frac{3}{8}$ inch = 1 foot, $\frac{1}{4}$ inch = 1 foot, and $\frac{1}{8}$ inch = 1 foot. To use these scales conveniently, special graduation is desirable.

The general arrangement of the sheet, number of views and approximate space occupied, should be blocked out first. This can easily be done from the original layout. In general, several cross-sections are preferable to a single view, which involves many dotted lines. Dotted lines are very convenient for showing invisible parts of an object, but they are often abused, and the drawing of a complicated piece made indefinite and confused thereby. As already stated, a working shop drawing is solely to convey information to the workman at the least possible cost. A careful consideration of this will settle the question of the number of views necessary, their character, and the amount of dotted line work desirable.

Never let the drawing become the master; always be master of the drawing. Do not draw an extra view if no use can be seen for it. Do not put in dotted lines if the detail is completely shown without them. Full lines, or lines which show visible portions must, of course, be shown completely.

The nature of the pencil work on Plate G should be the same as on the original layout: viz., sharp, definite lines and positive intersections. Above all things learn the habit of accurate workmanship, for it will save many errors and a vast amount of time. The draftsman must check himself at every line he draws. Slight errors in scaling will often throw parts out of proper relation to each other, and interferences, which the drawing does not show, will become apparent only when the parts get into the machinist's hands.

It is dangerous practice to project across from one view to the other. It only takes a slight irregularity or spring in the T-square to vary the location of lines very perceptibly from where they should be, and once out of scale from this reason it is almost impossible to work a view with any certainty. Rather than project across from view to view, the principal lines, at least, should be scaled off on each view, and it will be found that in the end time will be saved and greater accuracy secured.

It is not economical of time to finish one view before beginning another. It is better to take some single detail of the drawing and develop it in all views, in order to study it from all sides. What is completed in one view may be found to be totally wrong when developed from another side, and the time spent on the first view will be wholly wasted. For example, in the present case the steam ports should be drawn in side elevation, end elevation and plan, and when thus completed the mind can leave them and in a similar fashion take up the study of the flanges, then the cylinder foot, and so on. Thus again the draftsman is master of his drawing, for he is continually making it tell him whether he is right or wrong. If, on the contrary, he allows himself to look at but one side at a time, and works from that standpoint alone, it may lead him into many difficulties from which he cannot readily extricate himself.

Do not be afraid to use the eraser. The draftsman who hesitates to draw until he is positive that no change will be necessary, is likely to spend the greater portion of his time in unprofitable dreams, for he is attempting the impossible. A drawing is a means, not an end; and, as has been already pointed out, it greatly assists the draftsman in clearing up many doubtful questions which the imagination alone cannot do.

A bold attack of a problem shows the quickest path to its solution, even if lines must be erased again and again. It is a sign of serious lack of ability to hesitate in the use of pencil and eraser.

Attention is called to the simple, straightforward character of Plate G. Notice the almost entire absence of dotted lines; the enlarged section through the ports, giving ample opportunity for dimensions without confusion; the use of a half end elevation and a half cross-section,—the one to make clear the flange and bolt layout; the other to show the exhaust opening, the small auxiliary views (drawn at convenient points) of the exhaust flange layout, the cylinder foot and the drip boss.

A steam cylinder is a fairly complicated casting; and it would be an easy matter, by the use of elaborate views, the dotting in of parts already completely shown, and careless line work, to rob this drawing almost entirely of its clearness and directness of illustration. *Just what is necessary* (for clearness' sake) *and no more* (for cheapness' sake), is the whole matter in a nutshell, and is what determines its shop and commercial value.

Dimensions and Letters. A good line drawing can be spoiled by poorly arranged dimensions and hasty lettering. The five principal points to be kept in mind to develop excellence in this respect are:

(1) System.
(2) Accuracy.
(3) Clearness.
(4) Completeness.
(5) Character.

System. The habit of system in placing figures and letters on a drawing is the one element which, to a large extent, controls all the others. If the systematic habit is established early, the other requirements will be fulfilled more easily. A haphazard method will, on the contrary, just as surely prevent the successful cultivation of the ability to figure a drawing. In fact, if the haphazard habit is continued it will itself, by the dissatisfaction which it causes, soon compel the draftsman to change his occupation.

In the first place, whatever part of a machine detail is to be dimensioned, that particular part should receive attention until it has been completely figured. Do not jump from one point to another, putting in a figure here and another there. Stick to one thing until it is done.

For example, take Plate F and the simple detail of the steam pipe. Suppose we start with one of the square flanges. The first question is: "Where is this flange located?" This is answered by the dimensions 5 inches and 21-inch centers, which refer the face of the flange to the center of the pipe and the flanges to each other. The next question is: "What are the three dimensions of the flange,—length, breadth and thickness?" This is readily answered as shown on the drawing. The next question is: "What further description is necessary to completely specify the shape of the flange?" This is answered by the radius of the corners, $\frac{3}{4}$ inch R. Next, "What drilling or special feature exists in the flange?" This is answered by $\frac{11}{16}$-inch drill, $3\frac{1}{2}$-inch centers, and the letter *f* to denote that the face is to be finished.

The round flange of this pipe is approached and figured in the same way, except that the location of the face is preferably referred to the face of the square flange by the figure $8\frac{1}{4}$ inches, instead of to the center of the pipe, because the planer hand will more naturally use this figure.

These flanges are now to be connected by a pipe involving two sizes. The main pipe is 3 inches diameter inside, 4 inches outside, and $\frac{1}{2}$-inch thick, running into the two branches by fillets and radii, as figured. The two branches are really one pipe, $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches inside, $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches outside, $\frac{1}{2}$ inch thick, and sweeping down into the square flanges by 4-inch radius.

This systematic method takes longer to explain than to actually execute, but it is typical of the train of thought which must be followed on all pieces, simple or complicated, in order to properly place dimensions.

In general, it may be stated that all parts of a piece must be referred either to each other, or to some common reference line, or to both. Each part so referred must then be figured as a piece by itself, and then its connections to the principal structure. Thus, figuring a machine detail involves three things:

(1) Relative location of its parts.
(2) Proportions of these parts.
(3) Proportions of connecting members.

As in the original design of a piece so in the figuring of it, the draftsman must as far as possible put himself in the place of the workman, judging the methods and processes of construction and available tools. This will largely influence the arrangement of the dimensions. Of course it implies considerable experience in shop work, which some students do not possess. He can begin none too early, however, to learn to look at his work from the shop standpoint, and surely make it some better on that account.

Pieces must not only be systematically dimensioned, but regularly specified and called for by suitable titles.

A title should specify at least three things:

(1) Name of piece.
(2) Number wanted for one machine.
(3) Material.

To these might be added a fourth; viz., pattern or piece number. The latter is not specified on the drawings under discussion, because systems of pattern and piece numbering are so varied that little would be gained by developing one for this special study.

These titles should always be put on in the same way, as the workmen become used to a certain system and are likely to misunderstand directions if a regular plan is not followed. A good way to arrange titles is suggested on the plates, although there are others which might be used.

Bolts are usually specified by diameter and length under the head, the length of thread being to some standard system in use by the shop, unless otherwise called for. Bolts are specified on the sheet containing the piece into which they are tapped. In the case of through bolts, tapped into neither piece, they are preferably called for in connection with the principal member.

Accuracy. Of course the dimensions on a drawing must be accurate. It is, however, a very easy matter to make errors. To insure accuracy a figure must *never* be put down carelessly, and a constant watch must be kept that scaled figures add up to over-all dimensions. It will not do to rely on scaling alone, as a very slight variation from exact scale may throw two dimensions out with each other. In spite of all the care that can be exercised errors will creep in, and a final thorough checking must be given a drawing before it is pronounced complete. A good rule to follow in checking up is to "assume everything wrong until it is proved to be right."

Clearness. As in the line drawing itself, there must be absolute clearness of instruction by the dimensions. Any doubt as to what a figure is, or what it means, rules out that figure as part of the drawing. If a piece is made wrong because doubt of this character is transmitted to the workman, the draftsman is always held responsible for the error.

Figures should, in all cases, be placed where they can be most clearly read. They should be bunched on a single view as far as possible, but not when greater clearness demands that another view be used. It hinders the reading of a drawing materially if the eye is forced to jump over large spaces of the sheet from view to view, to catch the several dimensions of a small detail. Usually it is easy to so group figures as to avoid this.

It is a good plan to keep dimensions off the body of the drawing, when it can be done so conveniently. It is not worth while, however, to go out of one's way to do this, as figures in the open spaces of a detail do not at all destroy its clearness.

Extended notes on a drawing to make it clear should not be required, but they should be used without hesitation if any doubt exists. An explicit note of instruction is the final resource for clearness when the art of drawing fails of its purpose, as it sometimes does.

Completeness. A detail is completely dimensioned when it shows *all* the figures necessary for the workman. Anything short of this is incompleteness. As modern shops hold the draftsman solely responsible for the design, the mechanic is not allowed to modify it by filling in any omitted dimensions. The only way to be sure that all the dimensions are on is to systematically go around a piece inside and out, according to the method suggested under the paragraph on "System."

It is a good plan to always bear in mind that not only the machinist is to use the drawing, but also the pattern maker. For the benefit of the latter, special attention is desirable in figuring the cores. This saves him some addition and subtraction. In general, it has been found that less chance of error exists if mathematical work is not required of the shopman, all necessary data being furnished on the face of the drawing.

Character. By character in figures and letters is meant uniform style, height and slope, and a certain boldness peculiar to the work of the expert draftsman. The last is difficult for the novice to acquire. The student should not be discouraged because his efforts do not look like impressions from printers' type. Artistic excellence is the result of long experience, but is based on character. If the student can once get character into his work, the artistic feature will, with careful and constant practice, gradually develop. It is safe to say that there is no one element of a drawing which more positively stamps it as the work of an amateur than the character of the lettering, and every attention should be paid to getting out of the apprenticeship stage in this respect. Freehand lettering only is permitted in the drawings illustrated herewith. Ruled letters are seldom found on any working drawings, as the element of time involved is so great that few shops are willing to pay for it.

Uniform style requires that if capitals only are used in titles, they only must be used in notes and elsewhere on the drawing. If lower-case letters are used, they must be used in every part of the drawing. One style should not be mixed with another. The height of the letters should be limited by two horizontal lines, and though practice may render the upper line unnecessary, it takes but an instant to draw it, and uniform height is then assured. A good height for titles of details such as are illustrated is $\frac{5}{32}$ inch. The height once chosen should be adhered to throughout the whole set. A medium, not a hard, grade of pencil (3H) will give the hand greater freedom. A great temptation exists to omit titles from the pencil drawing, simply inking them on the tracing. This is false economy of time, for in the end it will be found that enough time will be saved by the certainty with which the tracing can be made to more than pay for the labor on the pencil drawing. Again, it permits the tracing, in regular shop practice, to be made by cheaper labor than that which produced the pencil drawing.

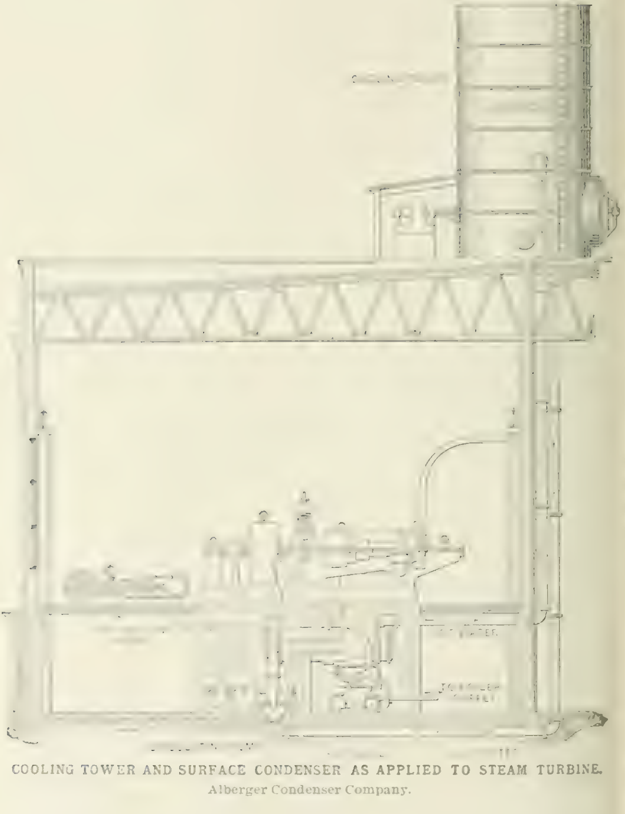
Uniform slope is most easily acquired by the use of guide lines put in at frequent intervals. A small wooden triangle can be made, giving the required angle. The angle of the letters shown on the plates is 9 degrees, or about 1 inch slope in 6 inches. The question as to whether letters should incline backwards, forwards, or stand vertical, does not enter this discussion. Character is not affected by the slope. The student may choose whatever comes most natural to him, but having chosen, the character of his work will be spoiled if he varies it. The most difficult of the three is the vertical style; hence most draftsmen incline their letters. The backward slope is used on the plates of this shop drawing paper, thus giving the student opportunity to compare with plates in the earlier books, and follow his preference.

The effect of change of style, height and slope is shown in Figs. 2, 3 and 4, respectively. Attention is called to Fig. 5, which is a sample title, in which these points are corrected.

Principal Titles. The principal title of a drawing should contain at least seven items:

(1) Name of principal details shown.
(2) Name of machine.
(3) Firm name and location.
(4) Scale of drawing.
(5) Date of completion.
(6) Draftsman's signature.
(7) Filing number.

To these are often added others, but for purposes of filing and reference the above at least *must* be put on. The filing number may or may not be put in the title frame, but it is really a part of it. It is often put in the margin below the title.



COOLING TOWER AND SURFACE CONDENSER AS APPLIED TO STEAM TURBINE.
Alberger Condenser Company.

An arrangement of title should be established and then followed exactly, without variation either as to location on sheet or detail make-up. Abbreviated words are always permissible in titles, provided the meaning is clear. Special care must be taken in punctuation, however, as a title, whether abbreviated or not, has an unfinished appearance if the periods, commas and other necessary punctuation marks are not included.

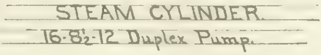

STEAM CYLINDER.
16-8½-12 Duplex Pump.

Fig. 2.

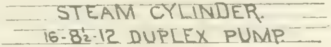

STEAM CYLINDER.
16-8½-12 DUPLEX PUMP.

Fig. 3.

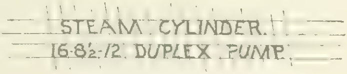

STEAM CYLINDER.
16-8½-12 DUPLEX PUMP.

Fig. 4.

The sample title illustrated in Fig. 5 indicates the arrangement chosen for the drawings of Part IV. Note that it is necessary in this special case to add an extra subject to the seven given above; viz., the residence of the student draftsman.

This style of title must be put with care on every drawing, even on the rough pencil layouts. In the latter case it may of course be left in pencil, as the rough layouts are not to be inked.

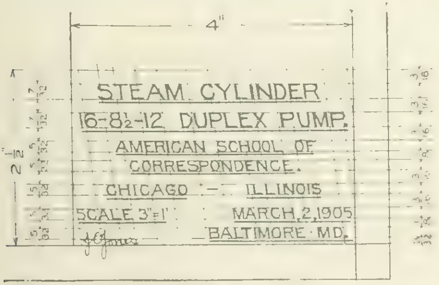


Fig. 5.

Inking and Tracing. Both bond paper and tracing cloth are used in business practice for finished drawings. It is desirable to keep a stock of both in any drawing office, so that either may be used as occasion requires. Bond paper stretched on the board gives a beautiful surface to take the ink, and very handsome and effective detail or assembled drawings can thus be produced.

Changes are not quite as readily made on bond paper as on tracing cloth, and it takes a little longer to make the blue print. In other ways the bond paper is not quite as flexible to use as the tracing cloth. However, one must be guided entirely by shop conditions to settle the question of preference. As the tracing cloth is generally used, and suits the purpose of the student better, it will be required in this work.

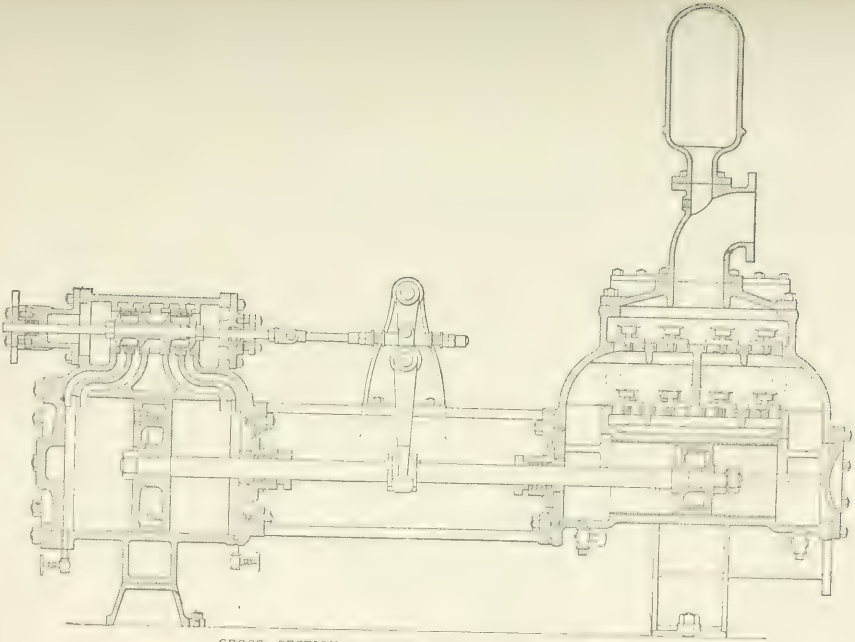
The inking should be done on the *rough* side of the cloth. One reason for choosing this side is that as the cloth tends to curl under toward the glazed side, the drawing as it lies right side up will tend to straighten itself. This seems to be a small point, but it is a very important advantage for filing and for the convenience of those who are to handle the drawings. Also the rough side takes colors and inks better than the glazed side. To trace on the glazed side is not wrong, for it is often done, but it possesses no advantages of its own, and has the disadvantage mentioned above.

Chalk dust scattered over the surface of the cloth after it is tacked down will remove the slightly greasy coating which prevents the ink from flowing well from the pen. This is always necessary if the glazed side be used, and usually for the rough side. The chalk must be carefully removed from the cloth before inking.

The first step in inking is to draw the center lines. Remember that *accurate intersections* are of the utmost importance. No circle is complete without two intersecting lines, preferably at 90 degrees, to determine its center, and these lines should be inked before the circle. When this is done a definite point exists for the needle point of the compasses. If the circle is drawn first the needle point may not be placed accurately at the center on the pencil drawing beneath, and the location be thrown out.

Likewise the principal center lines of pieces, the lines around which the pencil drawing was built up, should be at once put in.

The main body of the drawing, the full lines, should be taken next. In general, circles and arcs should be inked first, but there



CROSS SECTION OF DOUBLE ACTING STEAM PUMP.

are cases where it is easier to run the arcs into the straight lines than to match the straight lines to the arcs. They are exceptions, however, and can be judged only as the case arises.

Straight lines, horizontal and vertical, should be inked with the T-square and triangle *in position*. It is a common practice to dispense with the use of the T-square entirely in inking in, using the triangle to match the lines to the arcs already drawn. A necessity for this implies very poor work on the arcs, for with any reasonable care true horizontal and vertical lines will match the arcs all right. With regard to time required, the accuracy with which the T-square may be brought up to a line, or the triangle set on the T-square, more than makes up for the time gained in even an approximate setting of the triangle without a guide. It is just as easy to cultivate the habit of holding the T-square and triangle with the left hand and the pen with the right, and draw an exact line, as to lapse into the other method, which is not workmanlike.

The lines of the body of the drawing depend for their width upon the size of the detail. For a large piece they may be $\frac{1}{32}$ inch wide, and the shade lines $\frac{3}{64}$ inch. For a small detail such widths would be too great. Remember that *contrast* is the principal aim, and to produce it is the only reason why we use different kinds of lines on a drawing. Hence the greatest care must be exercised to prevent body lines from becoming confused with center or dimension lines, and *vice versa*. Also thick lines are desirable for the production of a bold blue-print.

Shade lines are shown on Plates I, K and N only. They are put on according to principles already explained. They certainly improve the drawing from an artistic standpoint, and the student should know how to put them on when desired. Whether or not it is desirable to adopt them on all working drawings is not the purpose of this book to decide, or even discuss. Almost always drawings can be made perfectly clear without them, and are so made and satisfactorily used in probably the majority of shops. Some shops are willing to pay for the extra time necessary to put on shade lines; this, however, is purely their own investment.

Cross-section lines are usually drawn at an angle of 45 degrees with the horizontal, and on sections which are adjacent to each other the slope should be in different directions. If three or more sections come together the width between section lines can be so changed as to indicate clearly the different parts. An example of this is shown in Fig. 6.

The spacing of section lines must not be too fine, rarely closer than $\frac{1}{16}$ inch, more often from $\frac{3}{32}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$ inch, else the labor involved is too great and uniformity practically impossible. It is a waste of time to rule in section lines on the pencil drawing; they may be sketched in freehand, as shown on the original layout of the steam cylinder. Even spacing concerns the tracing alone, and the student should train his eye to regularity as he traces. The thickness of section lines may be intermediate between that of center lines and body lines of the drawing.

Inking Dimensions and Letters. Extension lines may be dotted, as explained in Part III, or they may be fine, full lines, the latter method being illustrated in the series of pump plates in this paper. Dimension lines are also often made fine, full lines. If these lines are made full they should be made as fine as it is possible to draw them and still have them firm, clear lines. The same width should be used as for center lines.

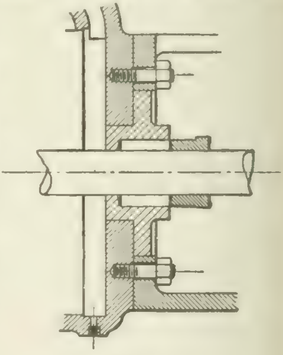


Fig. 6.

Character in inked figures and letters is more difficult to attain than in pencil work. In the first place a pen suitable to the style of drawing is necessary. A civil engineer's fine mapping pen, which gives character to his drawing, is not desirable in producing the bold character of a machine drawing. For the latter choose a rather stiff, blunt pen which is not "scratchy, but runs smoothly, making a line of uniform width. A pen with a round, or ball-shaped nib, recently put on the market, answers the purpose well for ordinary details. A bold, free stroke should be made with the idea of producing a smooth, even line, finished at the first trial. The hesitating uncertainty of the beginner's hand produces a "shaky" letter, and going over a letter or figure twice or more to smooth it up usually makes it worse.

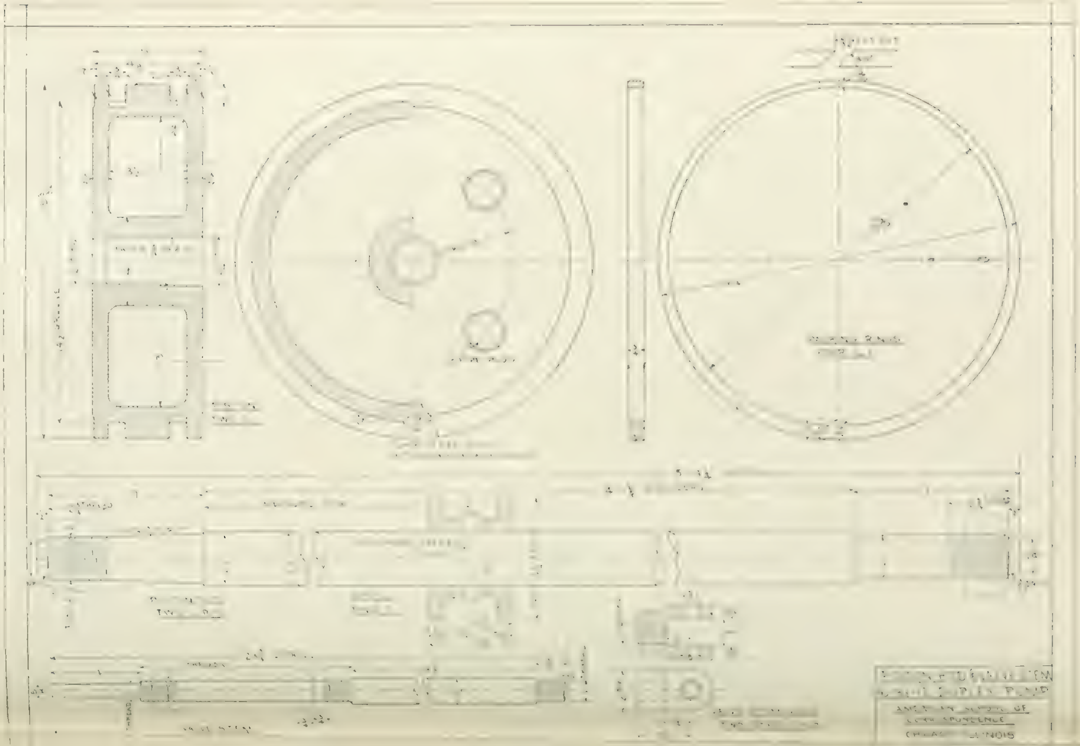
Figures and letters which are broad in proportion to height are easier to make, and have more character. It should never for a moment be forgotten that uniform *height* and *slope* carefully followed will develop character and quickly lead to artistic excellence.

Foot and inch marks are often put after figures according to the common usage. In cases where feet and inches are expressed thus: 3′ — 6″, or 4′ — 0″, they are, of course, absolutely necessary, and the dash between the figures must be very positively indicated. In cases of inch dimensions alone the marks may be put on if desired, but where there can be no doubt that inches, and not feet, are meant, the inch marks are not necessary. This practice is followed on the plates of this paper.

Abbreviations. A list of the most common abbreviations in use on working drawings follows. This list has been adopted for the plates in Part IV:

F. A. O.	finished all over.
f.	finished surface.
R.	radius.
D.	diameter.
R. H.	right hand.
L. H.	left hand.
P. R.	piston rod.
P. TAP.	pipe tap.
CTRS.	centers.
C. I.	cast iron.
S. C.	steel casting.
Bz.	bronze.
C. R. S.	cold rolled steel.
T. S.	tool steel.
O. H. S.	open hearth steel.
W. I.	wrought iron.

Plate E. Piston Rod and Valve Stem. The piston is of the one-piece box type, with sprung-in rings. The width is reduced to $4\frac{7}{8}$ inches at the outside, so that if the piston strikes the cylinder heads it will not tend to spring and break off the narrow ridge of metal outside of the packing ring. The piston rod is fastened to the piston on a taper drawn in by a nut, and the


AMERICAN SCHOOL OF
CORRESPONDENCE
CHICAGO ILLINOIS
THREAD
5' 1½"

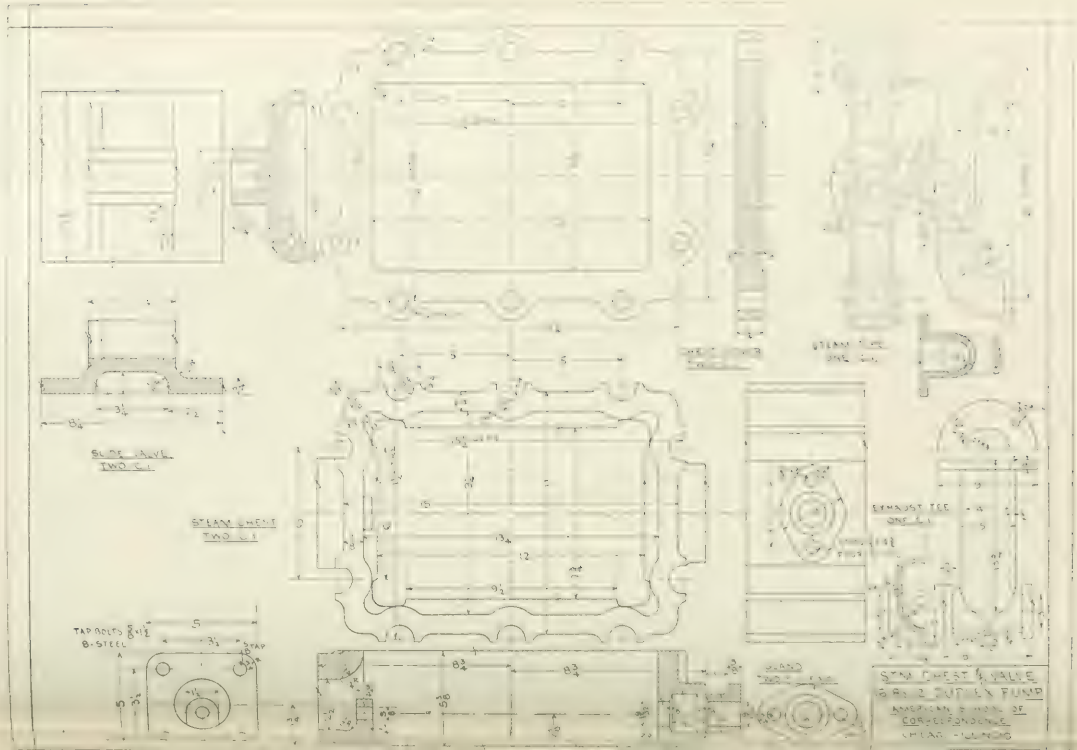
nut is checked by a $\frac{1}{4}$-inch split pin. The packing rings are prevented from slipping round the piston by lugs fitting loosely in chipped recesses in the groove. These being at opposite sides for each groove, the leakage of steam through the split in the ring is minimized, for it must pass half way round the piston before it can pass through the split in the other ring. This is a simple, but fairly effective, device.

The packing rings are usually cast in the form of a cylinder of some length, turned to a diameter a little larger than the cylinder bore, cut off to the required width, and sufficient space cut out to permit being sprung in to the size of cylinder bore.

The location of the spool on the piston rod is not positively known, as the setting of the valve bracket may be slightly different from what the drawing calls for. Hence, instead of a dimension, the words "measure for" are put on, to indicate that the spool be located during the erection of the pump. The hexagonal flanges of the spool are convenient to hold the rod from turning while screwing on the piston and plunger nuts.

Molding and Machining. There are no special features connected with the molding and machining of parts on Plate E. The holes in the piston side walls are necessary to give supports for the core, the piston being cast on its side. These holes, after the core is cleaned out through them, are plugged as indicated.

Plate F. Steam Chest and Valve. The steam chest in this instance is located on the cylinder by fitting down over the ledge made by the valve seat. The side flanges also serve the purpose of guiding the valve. It will be noticed that the steam chest cover is 15$\frac{1}{4}$ inches × 11$\frac{1}{4}$ inches, while the steam chest is 15 inches × 11 inches. This allows a ledge of $\frac{1}{8}$ inch, all around which the cover overhangs the walls of the chest. The steam cylinder flange in order to correspond must likewise be 15$\frac{1}{4}$ inches × 11$\frac{1}{4}$ inches. The reason this is done is because of the difficulty of making good matched joints between the cylinder flange, chest and cover. The practice of thus leaving a little ledge all round is by no means universal, and often the irregularity in the joints is smoothed off by chipping. This is the case with the other flanges on this pump. The steam chest, however, was thought less likely to match properly, and the slight overhang gives the finished appearance of a sort of beaded edge.


SLIDE VALVE
TWO C.I.
STEAM CHEST
TWO C.I.
STEAM TEE
ONE C.I.
EXHAUST TEE
ONE C.I.
CHEST COVER
GLAND
TAP BOLTS 5/8 x 1 1/2
8-STEEL
STAP
STM. CHEST & VALVE
[illegible] DUPLEX PUMP
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF
CORRESPONDENCE
CHICAGO ILLINOIS

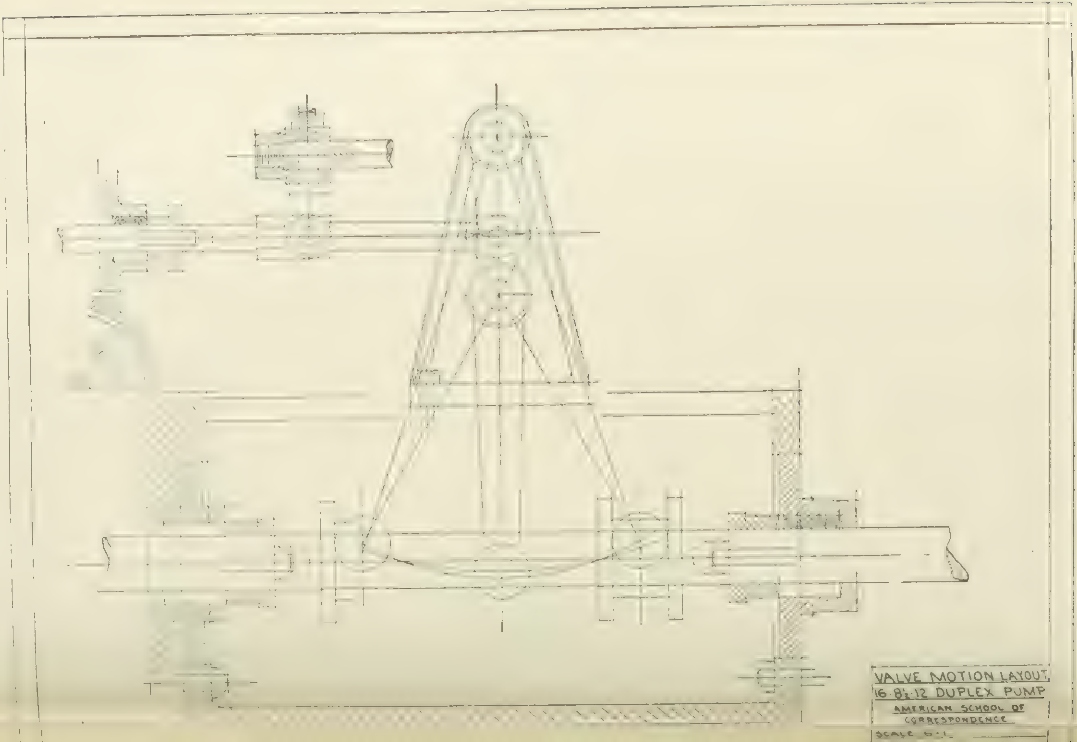
The valve is what is known as a "square" slide valve. This means that when the valve is placed central on the ports its working edges are "square" with the ports: that is, in exact line with them. If the valve be moved either way from this position, the slightest travel will admit steam to one end of the cylinder and exhaust it from the other. (See Plate A.) Another way of stating this is to say that a "square" slide valve is a slide valve without "lap."

The valve is driven from the valve stem by the striking of the nuts against the lug on its top. Since the valve is already guided on its edges by the steam-chest flange, the valve stem, to avoid springing, must be perfectly free in the slot cast for it, as is shown by the $\frac{5}{8}$-inch radius of the bottom, the stem being 1 inch in diameter.

The steam-pipe flange is made square to keep the height of the chest as low as possible. The radius of the bend should be ample; in this case 4 inches is considered sufficient.

The exhaust tee must have its upper flange high enough so that the chest cover can be lifted and slipped off the studs without interfering with it. The lower flanges should be made wide enough to permit the tap bolts to be put in without striking the 4-inch vertical pipe, 5-inch centers being necessary. The $\frac{1}{4}$-inch drip-cock, as located, readily drains the steam chest and exhaust passage of both cylinders, as well as the exhaust tee.

Molding. It is evident that the steam chest will be molded in the position shown on the drawing. The parting line of the mold will be through the centers of the steam-pipe opening and the stuffing-box. These holes must be cored out. The main body of the chest could be made to leave its own core, but it may not be made in this way. It may be cheaper to fashion the pattern solid, and make one large core-box for the inside. In this way the pattern will probably hold its shape better and require less repairs, than if it were made in green sand. The core-box will be an extra piece to make, but it probably will cost no more than to carve out the inside of the pattern, and is a rather more substantial job when done. The molding can be satisfactorily done by either method, shop conditions being the controlling element. As far as the labor of molding alone is concerned, the first method is probably easier, as it saves handling large cores.



VALVE MOTION LAYOUT

16·8½·12 DUPLEX PUMP

AMERICAN SCHOOL OF

CORRESPONDENCE

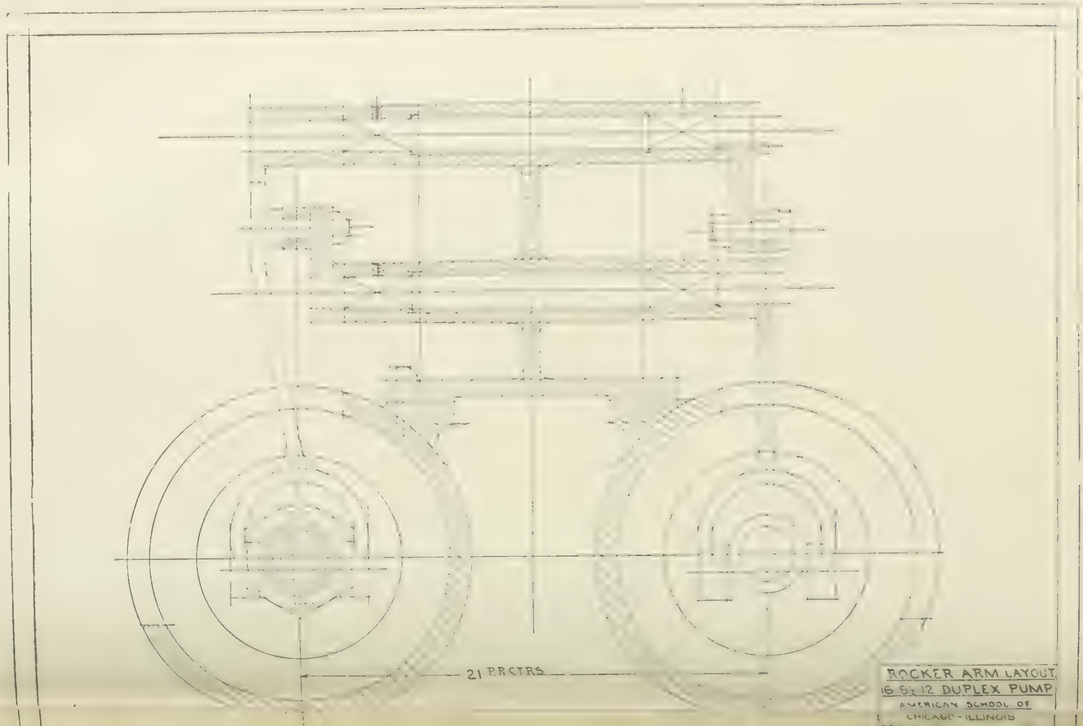
SCALE 6·1

The other parts in Plate F are very simple in their molding, and require no special attention.

Machining. Most of the surface work on this plate is adapted to the planer. The slide valve may, perhaps, if finished in lots of considerable number, be more satisfactorily handled on the milling machine. The final finish of the face of the valve must be a scraped fit to its seat.

The drilling of the cover and pipe flanges is to actual layout on the casting, or preferably, through jig plates. A templet for laying out is at least desirable, even though the expense of a jig plate be not deemed necessary.

Plates C and D. Valve Motion Layout. These plates represent the layout of the valve motion, and are necessary in order to find the length of the levers and rocker arms. It will be noticed in Plate D that the valve stem of one side of the pump is controlled by the movement of the piston-rod of the other side, the proper direction of motion being given to the valve by placing the rocker shaft above or below the valve stem as required. By reference to Plate A it will be further noticed that the nuts on the valve stem inside the chest, which abut against the faces of the lug on the valve, do not rest against the faces of the lug in the position shown, but have considerable lost motion. This lost motion is one of the essential features of the valve motion of a duplex pump, and permits the valve to remain at rest for a short period at the end of the stroke, though the valve stem may have reversed its motion and begun its return stroke. When this lost motion is taken up by the movement of the stem and the nuts abut against the lug on the valve, the valve will move, and from this point to the end of the stroke be positively controlled by the motion of the stem. At the end of the stroke the stem will reverse, when the lost motion will again permit the valve to rest for the same period as at the other end, and then move on as before. The time of rest of the valve, and consequently the pistons and plungers, is approximately one-third the period of the stroke. This means that the piston on one side travels one-third of its stroke before it picks up, through the valve levers, the valve on the other side. During the second third of its travel it is bringing the

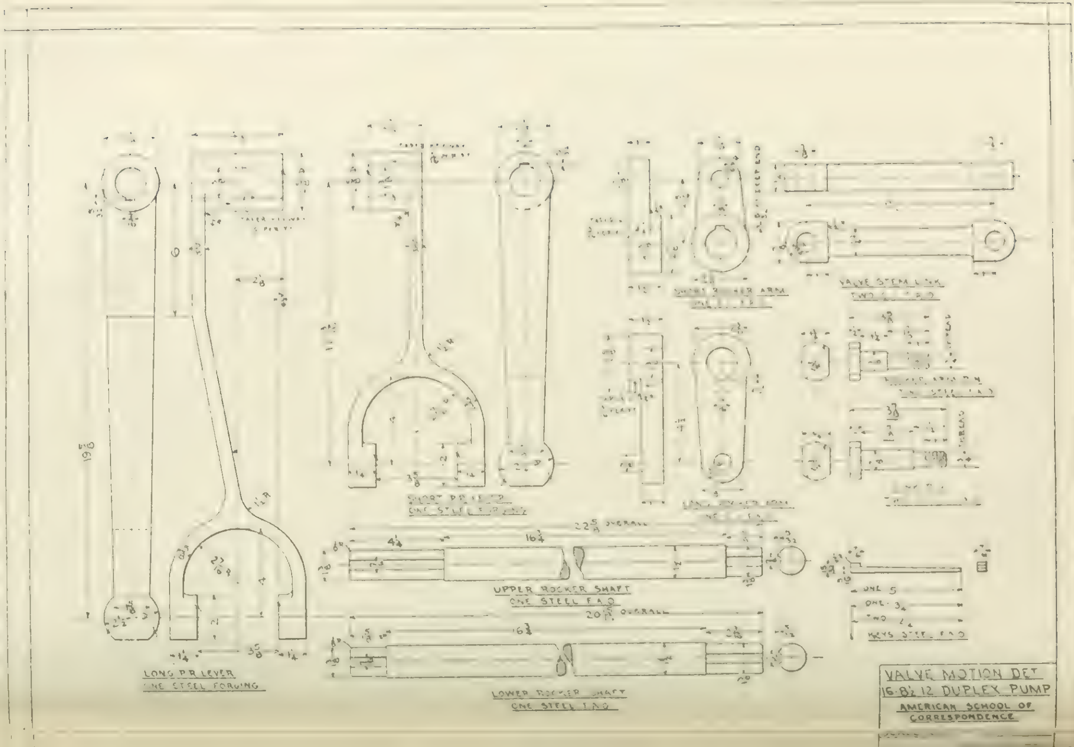

21 P.R.CTRS
ROCKER ARM LAYOUT
16 8½ 12 DUPLEX PUMP
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF
CHICAGO - ILLINOIS

valve to the point of opening. During the last third of its travel it is opening the port, wider and wider, to steam. Thus the opposite piston will start when the first piston has covered two-thirds of its stroke, and there will be only one-third of the stroke when both pistons are moving at the same time.

This relative period of rest to motion is not always made in this exact ratio, but is at least approximate to it. The period of rest at the end of the stroke is to allow the water end to adjust itself quietly to the reversal of motion about to take place at the end of the stroke. When the plunger stops, the water valves must be given time to seat themselves, and the flow of water through the passages checked. It is much easier to start the flow in the opposite direction if the reversal of plunger motion is not instantaneous. Hence for handling long columns of water, which, once in motion, tend by considerable energy to remain in motion, the duplex pump by this peculiar delayed action has been found to be well suited.

It will be found that for complete uncovering of port, and motion divisible into thirds as described, the travel of the valve stem should be three times the width of port, or $3 \times \frac{3}{4}$ inch $= 2\frac{1}{4}$ inches. A little more than this is allowed, and the travel made $2\frac{3}{8}$ inches in this case. Referring to Plate C, this distance is laid off as shown by the two limiting vertical lines across the line of the valve stem, the central vertical line of mid-position being drawn. The problem then is to find such centers for the rocker arms that the travel of the piston-rod spool will, through proper leverage, produce travel of the valve stem between these two vertical lines. This can readily be done by a few trials, the only requirement for this case being that the extremes of the arc of swing of both piston-rod lever and rocker arm shall be equally above and below the center of piston rod and valve stem respectively. The greatest possible travel of the piston-rod spool, $12\frac{1}{4}$ inches, is usually laid out in this case, not the nominal 12 inches.

From this layout the lengths of the levers and arms may be scaled off for the detail drawing, also the location of the rocker-arm centers. The student has the former given him on Plate K, but the latter, which is necessary for the development of Plate L, must be determined by his own layout. Plate D must also be


19⅝
6
2⅞
3⅝
2 7/16 R
1¼
LONG P.R. LEVER
ONE STEEL FORGING
3⅝
SHORT P.R. LEVER
VALVE STEM LINK
22 5/8 OVERALL
16¾
4¼
UPPER ROCKER SHAFT
ONE STEEL F.A.O.
20 15/16 OVERALL
16⅞
2⅞
LOWER ROCKER SHAFT
ONE STEEL F.A.O.
3⅞
THREAD
ONE 5
ONE 3¾
TWO 4
KEYS STEEL F.A.O.
VALVE MOTION DET
16·8½·12 DUPLEX PUMP
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF
CORRESPONDENCE

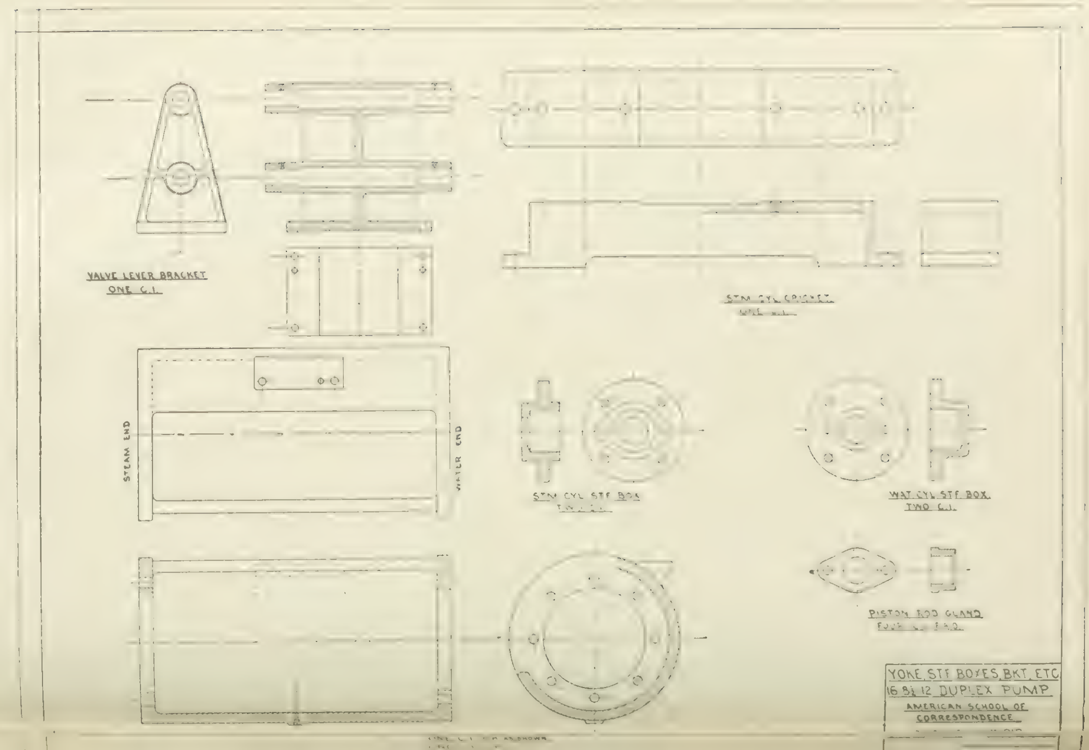
laid out before developing the cross-section of the valve bracket

The design of stuffing boxes for both steam and water ends, and the length of the yoke, should be determined next. A safe method of assuming clearance between the spool and the gland studs at the end of the stroke, is to imagine that the gland stud nuts have accidentally worked off the studs, so that they are about to drop. They are thus shown by dotted lines on Plate C. A good clearance, say $\frac{1}{4}$ inch to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch, is then allowed, and the gland drawn in. The length of the gland is determined by the number of rings of packing necessary in the stuffing box; it is usually provided that the gland may compress the packing to about one-half its original depth before bringing up against the face of the box. Packing $\frac{5}{8}$ inch square will do for this size of piston rod, hence the faces of the yoke are easily determined, and its detail, with the stuffing boxes, proceeded with as on Plate L. The length of yoke may be brought to an even figure; and proceeding on the above plan the length can be conveniently made in even inches without any fractions; viz., 28 inches.

It will be noticed that the stuffing-box flanges serve to center the yoke in line with the steam and water cylinders. This is a desirable feature of construction, and forms a simple and easy method for lining up the steam and water ends.

Plate K. Valve Motion Details. The piston-rod levers on this plate are specified to be steel forgings. Forgings of this kind are expensive, but are light, neat and reliable for the important service which they have to perform. Castings, whether steel or iron, are much cheaper, and perhaps more commonly used for this detail. When sound they are equally serviceable, though of more clumsy proportions; but the danger in castings of this form is the existence of hidden flaws or pockets, which frequently occur at the points where the hub or the fork joins the arm. These flaws cannot be readily detected from the outside, and breakage may occur at some critical time, when the disability of the pump may be a serious matter.

The use of shade lines is illustrated on this plate. The increased artistic effect is noticeable, but it would seem that absolute clearness would still exist, even if shade lines were not used.


VALVE LEVER BRACKET
ONE C.I.
STM CYL BRACKET
ONE C.I.
STEAM END
WATER END
STM CYL STF BOX
TWO C.I.
WAT CYL STF BOX
TWO C.I.
PISTON ROD GLAND
FOUR ... F.A.D.
YOKE, STF BOXES, BKT, ETC.
16 8½ 12 DUPLEX PUMP
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF
CORRESPONDENCE
... AS SHOWN

It will be noticed that on the detail of the "link pin" two of the dimensions have a short "wavy" line beneath the figures. This is one of the several ways of indicating that the dimension is "out of scale." Some draftsmen use a straight dash beneath the figure; some draw a circle about it; some print after the figure, "out of scale." Although workmen are not allowed to scale drawings, but are required to "work to figures only," yet for general safety's sake, and for the sake of the draftsmen who consult the drawings frequently, attention must be called to any variation of the figure from the measured distance on the drawing. Nothing makes a workman, or any one else who reads a shop drawing, lose confidence in it more quickly than to discover that it does not "scale"; but when no indication exists that the draftsman himself is aware of it, then every dimension is viewed with doubt and hesitation, and the drawing becomes practically worthless.

Dimensions seldom should be out of scale; but if they are, through error or necessary change, a carefully worded note should be added.

Molding and Machining. No special features of molding or machining are noteworthy on Plate K.

Plate L. Yoke, Stuffing-boxes, Bracket, etc. Having worked up the layouts of Plates C and D, the student has enough information to proceed with Plate L. This, like Plate G, is without dimensions, the student's work being to make the drawing and fill in the necessary shop data.

The valve-lever bracket is bolted down to its lug on the yoke through holes larger than the bolt, thus permitting slight adjustment. When the proper location is determined, the bracket is positively fixed in position by two dowels, $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in diameter. The holes in both bracket and yoke are drilled through both pieces at the same operation. This very common method of fixing bolted parts of machinery in absolute position not only assures firmness, but also in case of removal, permits the part to be readily and positively replaced in its exact original position.

If possible, the steam cylinder cricket should be of such height that the stone or brick work upon which it rests shall be at the same level as that beneath the water cylinder. The tapped holes in the top surface receive bolts from the cylinder foot. These bolts are often used only for shipping purposes, the cylinder foot when the pump is set up being allowed to slide freely on the cricket, thus permitting free expansion and contraction. In such cases the water end is rigidly fastened to the foundation by holding down bolts.

Molding and Machining. The valve lever-bracket would most naturally be molded with the axes of the shafts vertical, the parting line of the mold being the center line of the middle web. This makes quite a long "draw" for the shaft bosses, but the ample taper on the outside overcomes this difficulty. The space between the side webs leaves its own core. The shaft cores stand on end in the mold, which is the best position for strength and stability.

Another method is to have the parting line of the mold on the vertical center line of the bracket, as shown in the end view. In this case the bracket would be cast on its side, and cores must be set for each side of the middle web. The shaft cores are set as easily as before, but in this case lie flat. As with the steam chest, each method has its advantages, which depend largely upon existing conditions. As cored work is generally avoided whenever possible, the first method would probably be chosen.

The shaft bosses are "chamber-cored," to save labor in boring, the bearing surface for the shaft being only a short distance at the ends. The chamber-core diameter should be enough larger than the shaft so that by no possibility can the cutter run into the rough scale, even if the hole be bored slightly out of line. If it should do this, the labor of caring for the cutters more than offsets the attempted saving of labor.

The yoke is simply a barrel open at each end, and with a piece cut out of its side. The inside evidently must be cored out, and the core is satisfactorily supported at the ends on its horizontal axis. The parting line of the mold may be either the vertical or horizontal axis of the end view, the only difference being that in one case the ledge for the valve bracket will "draw," and in the other case it must be loose on the pattern and "pulled in" after the main pattern is drawn.

The cricket and stuffing boxes present no difficulties. The bore of the stuffing boxes and glands should be from $\frac{1}{32}$ inch to $\frac{1}{16}$ inch larger than the rod, to allow the fit to be entirely between the rod and the packing.

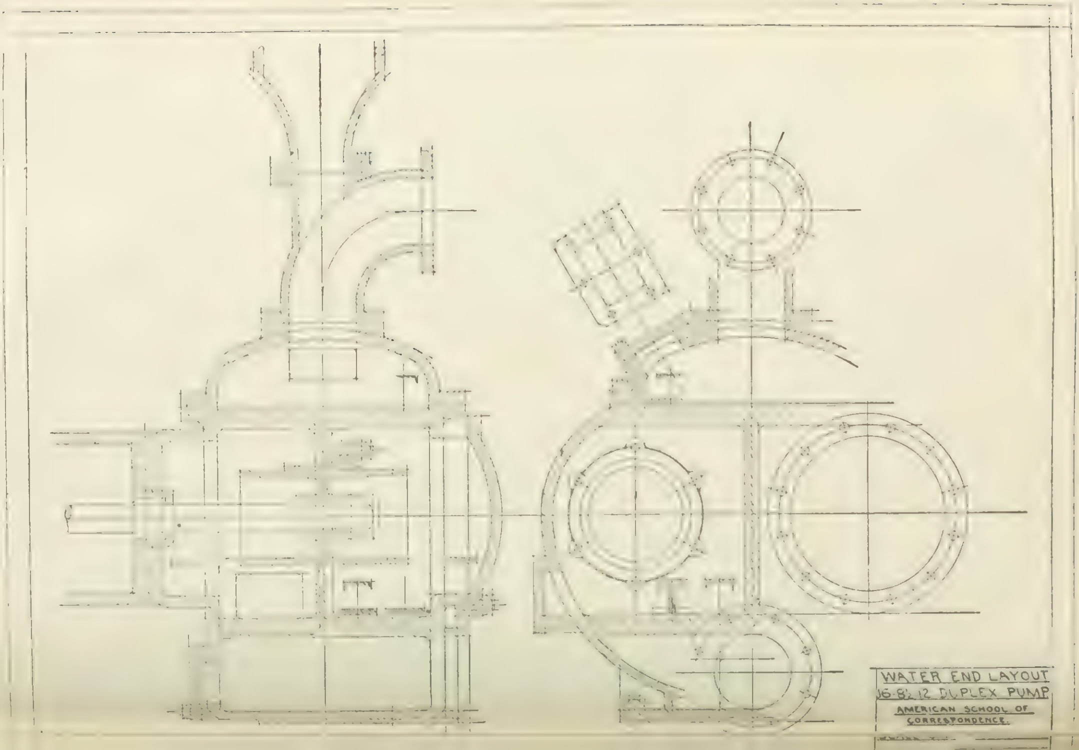
The horizontal boring machine with a double facing head is adapted to boring and facing the yoke flanges. The drilling is accomplished as before by templet or jig.

Attention is called to the tapped holes for oil or grease cups on the valve-lever bracket. The holes on the lower boss cannot be drilled strictly as shown, because the drill shank will not clear the upper boss. They should be swung around the boss at such an angle as will allow the drill to clear. This is a good instance of the common error of drawing details which cannot be made, and constant watch must be kept to avoid such mistakes.

Plate B. Water End Layout. As in the preceding work, Plates H and I being given in full detail offer a good start for the development of the water cylinder, which is the purpose of Plate B. As before, work should begin at the inside and progress outwards. Thus the piston rod with its nut should be drawn first, the hub of the plunger built around it, then the plunger barrel, the bushing, and ring to clamp the bushing. The limits of the plunger travel should be sketched in, and the valve outline shown in order to determine clearances. The progress of Plate B is on exactly the same basis as that stated in detail for the steam cylinder layout; hence it need not be repeated.

The points controlling the design of the water end must, however, be studied to enable the student to work intelligently. The fit of the rod into the plunger hub is loose, $\frac{1}{16}$-inch play being allowed, in order to permit the plunger to be guided solely by its bushing, and thus be independent of any change of alignment of the piston rod.

The relative length of plunger and bushing should allow the end of the plunger to overrun the edge of the bushing at the termination of the stroke, to prevent the formation of a shoulder. The bushing is made of brass because of the better bearing of the two dissimilar metals, brass and iron. Of course there is no lubrication except the water, and the dissimilar metals tend to "cut" less than if both were alike. The brass bushing also prevents the plunger from "rusting in" in case of long periods of


WATER END LAYOUT
16·8½·12 DUPLEX PUMP
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF
CORRESPONDENCE.

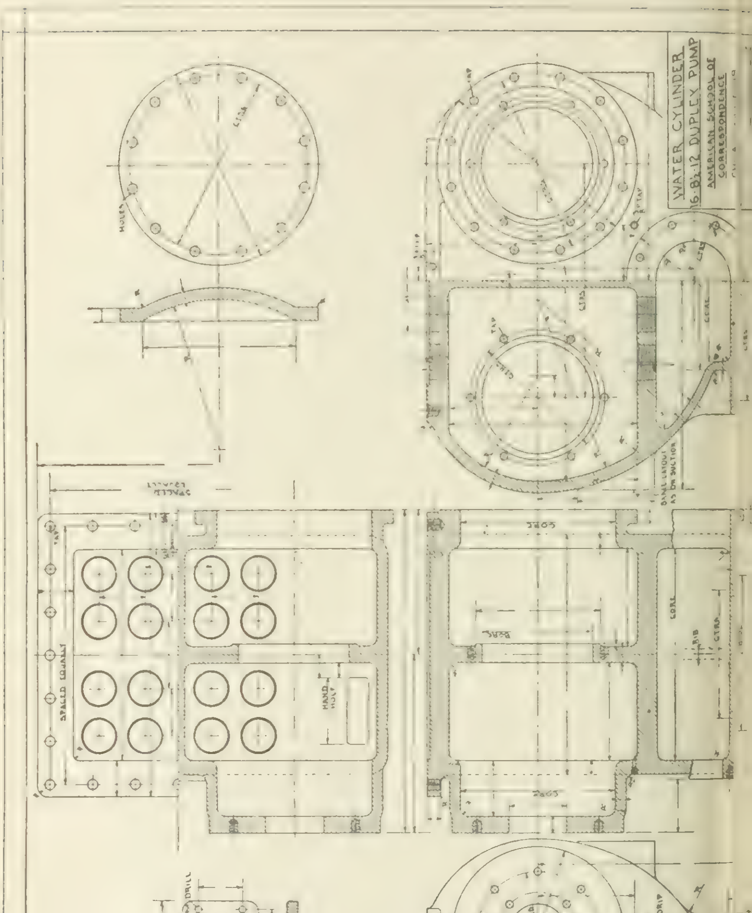
disuse. The bushing being of expensive material is made as light as possible, hence it has no stiffness of its own. Therefore it is reinforced by a deep cast-iron ring, which also takes the bolts and clamps the bushing tightly to its ground seat. These stud bolts are usually made of "tobin bronze," a rust-proof material, possessing strength almost as great as that of steel. This arrangement permits ready removal of the bushing when necessary.

As the parts of the common pump valve illustrated in detail on Plate II must be often replaced during service of the pump, provision must be made for unscrewing the stem and substituting a new one. This must be done through the hand holes provided on the cylinder. The lower valve deck must be located so that the upper valves when unscrewed will not strike the clamp ring. As shown in Plate B the clearance is pretty small, almost too small, but as it affects only two valves, it will probably cause no inconvenience. No hand holes are necessary for the end chambers, as access to the valves is had by removing the outer heads. The upper deck may be placed at a height giving sufficient clearance to allow the upper nuts of the clamp ring to be unscrewed with a socket wrench from the end of the pump. These decks are subjected to a severe pounding from the pulsations of the pump, and should be amply strong; $1\frac{3}{4}$ inches is deemed thick enough for this case.

The middle transverse wall may be $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches thick and the middle longitudinal wall a little thinner, about $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches. With high pressures these walls, being flat surfaces and the valve decks likewise, are likely to fracture under the heavy pounding. To avoid making them excessively heavy they are often strongly ribbed, either on the inside or outside, usually the former.

The curving side walls are of better form to withstand pressure, and need not be as thick, 1 inch being sufficient. This can be decreased to $\frac{3}{4}$ inch in the suction passage below the deck, where little pressure exists.

The outer head is also considered strong enough at 1 inch thickness, on account of its curved shape. It requires $\frac{7}{8}$-inch studs. Studs are preferred to tap bolts in this case, as in all other similar cases, on account of the frequent unscrewing of the nuts for purpose of removal. One or two unscrewings of a tap bolt in cast


WATER CYLINDER
16·8½·12 DUPLEX PUMP
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF
CORRESPONDENCE
SPACED EQUALLY
HOLES
CTRS
TAP
CORE
RIB
HAND HOLE
DRILL
TAP FOR DRIP
SAME LAYOUT AS ON SUCTION

iron will destroy the tightness of the thread, while the stud, being steel, stands the wear better.

The valve seats are taper screwed into the deck; they are sometimes forced in on a plain taper fit. They are located as closely as strength of the deck between the holes will permit. It is not well to place the edge of the valve closer than ½ inch from the cylinder walls. The valve holes in the lower deck should be in line, or nearly so, with the holes in the upper deck, in order to allow the shank of the mill to pass through when milling the lower holes.

The suction opening is 7 inches in diameter, 12½-inch flange, 10½-inch bolt circle, ¾-inch tapped holes.

By means of the hand hole at the end of the suction passage, any dirt which may have been brought in through the suction pipe may be removed.

The water cylinder cap, discharge ell and air chamber may be laid out from the detail Plate I, and the student must do this to see that the parts actually go together properly.

With the foregoing discussion the student should be able to produce Plate B, which is the preliminary step to the detail drawing of the water cylinder as shown on Plate J.

Plate J. Water Cylinder. The water cylinder is, perhaps, the most complicated detail that the student will meet in this set of plates. Fundamentally, it is simply a box with curved sides, divided by the several walls into five compartments, each of which communicates with the outside by a round nozzle or flange. If this basic idea be kept constantly in mind, the student will have no trouble in building up the detailed design.

This fundamental conception of a complicated piece is a very important idea, and should be developed carefully by the student. It is one of the great secrets of good design, both from an artistic and a commercial standpoint. We often see a machine which seems to begin anywhere and end nowhere; it appears to be a miscellaneous collection of bosses, lugs, ribs and flanges. There is no general prevailing shape to the structure, no harmony of the lines. This is because the designer, if he may be so called, did not have the fundamental notion of shape, to which all minor details should have been subordinated. He simply grouped parts together, without considering the fundamental structure

In this water cylinder the box is the basic part of the structure, and its lines must be first developed; they should be designed to convey a smooth, regular and consistent surface to the eye. Then the nozzles and flanges may be added as subordinate parts; they will merely interrupt, but not destroy, the prevailing outline of the box. The dotted lines in the cross-section views of Plate J show the general shape behind and beneath the nozzles.

The hand holes are the same as on Plate I, and the detail of the cover should specify the number required for both places.

Provision for draining the four chambers of the water cylinder is made by the $\frac{3}{8}$-inch pipe tap holes at the lower deck, and the cap, likewise, by the single hole at the upper deck. Drip cocks are screwed into these holes.

The holding-down bolts should not be less than 1 inch diameter: $1\frac{1}{4}$ inch would perhaps be better; and the holes in the foot should be drilled at least $\frac{1}{8}$ inch large.

Dimensions. It will be noticed that this plate has dimension lines, but no figures. This is because the cylinder is rather difficult to figure, and it is desired to guide the student in arrangement of the figures without lessening the benefit of his study of them. Special attention should be paid to this feature of the plate. Notice that although space for dimensions is restricted, a clear opening is always found for the figures; and when one view seems to offer no space for a figure, another view gives the desired opportunity.

No finish marks or titles are shown on this plate, these being left entirely to the student for insertion.

Molding. The centers of the curves for the sides being on the main horizontal axis of the nozzles, the cylinder, if molded to be cast vertically as shown, will draw readily both ways from this line. The exceptions to this easy draw are the foot, suction nozzle and flange, and hand-hole boss. On account of the inside of the cylinder being cored, these pieces if made loose on the pattern have ample space to be "pulled in" after the main pattern is withdrawn.

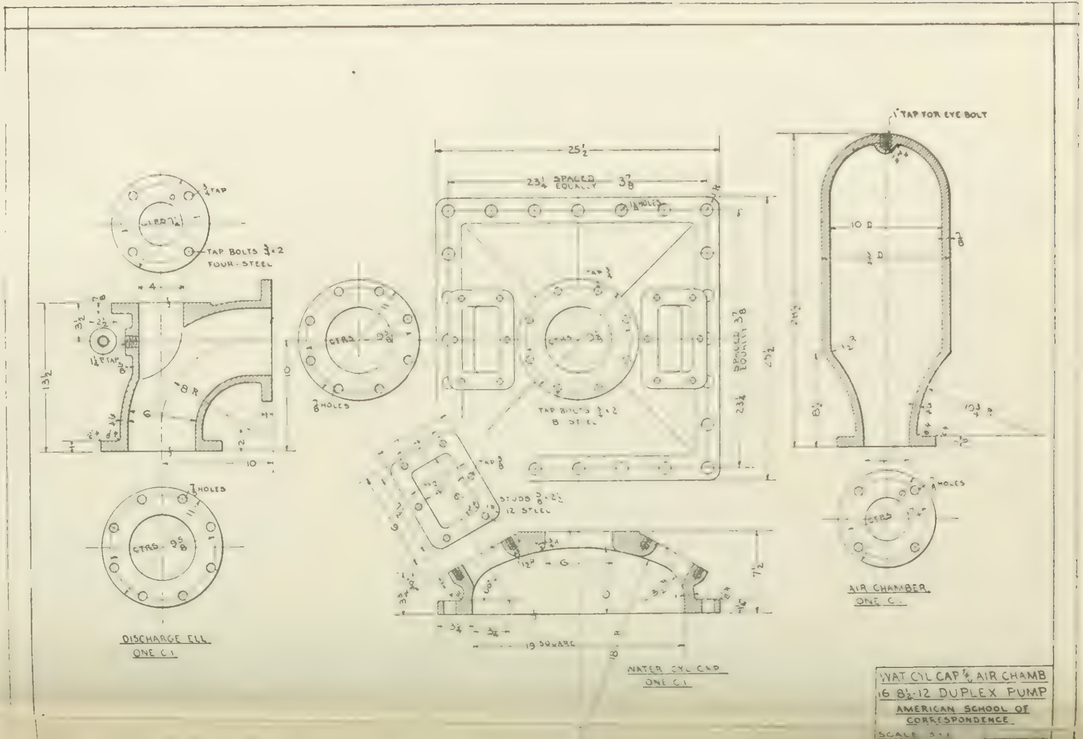
The suction passage below the deck communicates with the main core through the valve holes, hence it may be supported from the main core. This involves some difficulty, however. If a three-part flask be used, and another parting established at the center of the suction flange, in addition to the previous one, the problem becomes much simplified.

It is desirable to make the four chambers of the cylinder alike in general proportions. It is then possible to make a single core-box, and by the use of loose pieces change the length of the nozzle cores and transpose from right to left, thus saving labor on the pattern. This, however, multiplies the loose pieces on the pattern. The many pieces are likely to become lost and make frequent repair necessary. Hence it is not always wise to use a single core box too much, and good judgment is required to fix the limit.

Machining. Special double horizontal boring machines are now in common use for such cases as this water cylinder. The centers are made adjustable, so that within limits any distance between piston-rod centers can be met. The advantages of double boring are, of course, most obvious for a considerable number of duplicate cylinders.

It will be noticed that the face of the suction flange is carried out flush with the cylinder head face. This affords opportunity for finishing all the end surfaces at a single setting of the tool, whether the work be done on the rotary or reciprocating planer. This same point might have been observed on the small hand-hole boss at the other end of the cylinder, but the advantage gained did not seem to warrant extending the "reach" through the hand hole.

Plate I. Water Cylinder, Cap and Air Chamber. For a water cylinder cap of this size, the most difficult problem is to find room for the hand-hole bosses. A hand hole 4 inches × 6 inches is about as small as can be used, and this calls for a flange at least 7 inches × 9 inches. These are the proportions shown on the plate, and since the boss overhangs the bolts in the main-cap flange, it must be cut away underneath to clear the nuts. If three stud bolts are used on each side, this overhang also requires that the nut be "fed on"; that is, screwed on little by little as the end of the stud protrudes above the flange when the cap is being lowered into place. This is an awkward process, but is sometimes necessary.


1" TAP FOR EYE BOLT
25½
23¼ SPACED EQUALLY 3⅞
¾ TAP
TAP BOLTS ¾ × 2
FOUR - STEEL
4
13½
3½
2½
1¼ P TAP
8 R
6
10
⅞ HOLES
CTRS. 9⅝
CTRS. 9⅝
TAP ¾
TAP BOLTS ¾ × 2
8 STEEL
SPACED EQUALLY 3⅞
25½
23¼
TAP ⅝
STUDS ⅝ × 2½
12 STEEL
6
9
7½
10 D
⅞ D
24½
8½
10¾
⅞ HOLES
CTRS.
7½
19 SQUARE
18
3¼
DISCHARGE ELL
ONE C.I.
WATER CYL CAP
ONE C.I.
AIR CHAMBER
ONE C.
WAT CYL CAP & AIR CHAMB
16 8½ 12 DUPLEX PUMP
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF CORRESPONDENCE
SCALE

The discharge ell should have an easy bend; usually the radius is somewhat more than the outside diameter of the pipe. In this case 50 per cent greater. It is customary on this piece to provide an opening for the attachment of a relief valve as shown, 1¼ inch pipe tap. This valve can be set to open at a desired pressure, so that the water end may be relieved in case of accidental excessive pressure.

The air chamber provides an air cushion for the water to make the delivery more constant, and take the shock which would otherwise come with hammer-like force and full intensity upon the cylinder. Being placed at the highest point of the water end, air will naturally tend to collect in the air chamber and keep it charged. In some cases, however, a special charging device is necessary.

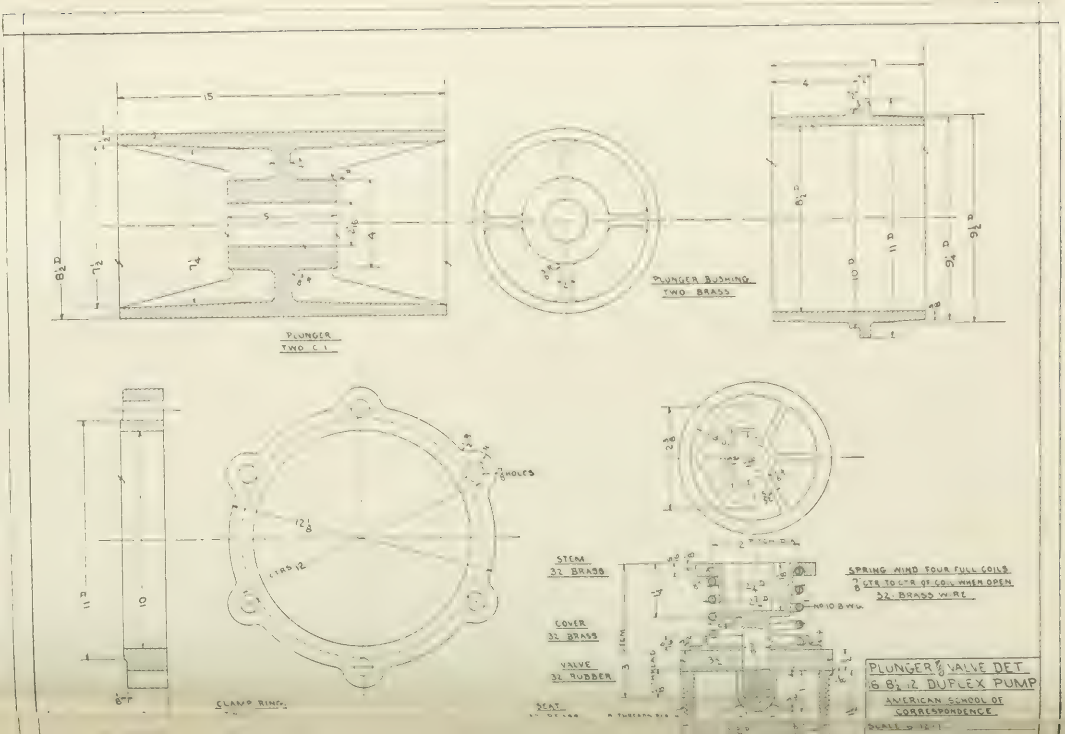
Molding and Machining. The hand holes being at an angle will not "draw." Hence cores must be set for these openings at least, and it may be desirable to core out the whole inside of the cap for the sake of keeping the pattern in good shape by making it solid. Otherwise it is easy to let it leave its own core.

The overhang of the hand-hole bosses requires loose pieces for the overhanging part. They are "pulled" in after the pattern is drawn.

The molding and machining which are further required on details of Plate I are simple, and require no special discussion.

Plate II. Plunger and Valve Details. This plate is noticeable for illustrating a method of drawing details not used elsewhere in this set of plates. On the other plates each piece is separately detailed. On Plate II the details of the valve, cover, seat, stem and spring are shown assembled, and dimensioned without separation. This is an allowable method when clearness is not sacrificed, but it is usually found desirable only with simple construction. It concentrates parts on the drawing, and probably saves some time, besides showing the workman just how the parts go together. The only test which the student need to apply in this, as in any method of detailing, is the test for absolute clearness.

It is believed in the case of the valve as shown that the details are completely illustrated without sacrificing clearness. Special care in putting in dimensions is of necessity required


PLUNGER
TWO C I
PLUNGER BUSHING
TWO BRASS
15
8½ D
7½
7¼
5
4
11 D
10 D
9¼ D
9½ D
8½ D
7
4
CLAMP RING
12⅛
CTRS 12
⅞ HOLES
11 D
10
STEM
32 BRASS
COVER
32 BRASS
VALVE
32 RUBBER
SEAT
SPRING WIND FOUR FULL COILS
⅞ CTR TO CTR OF COIL WHEN OPEN
32. BRASS WIRE
NO 10 B W G
2⅜
2 PITCH D
3½
3
PLUNGER & VALVE DET
6 8½ 12 DUPLEX PUMP
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF
CORRESPONDENCE
SCALE

The valve stem can be unscrewed either with a socket wrench on the inside or an ordinary fork wrench on the outside.

The seat, after being screwed to position in the deck, is often faced off, to true up any distortion caused by screwing in.

The valve itself, of rubber, can be bought of any desired grade of hardness. The specification for any given set of valves depend upon the quality of the water, the pressure and the general service of the pump.

Molding and Machining. By reason of the simple nature of the parts on this plate, the molding and machining is left entirely to the original consideration of the student.

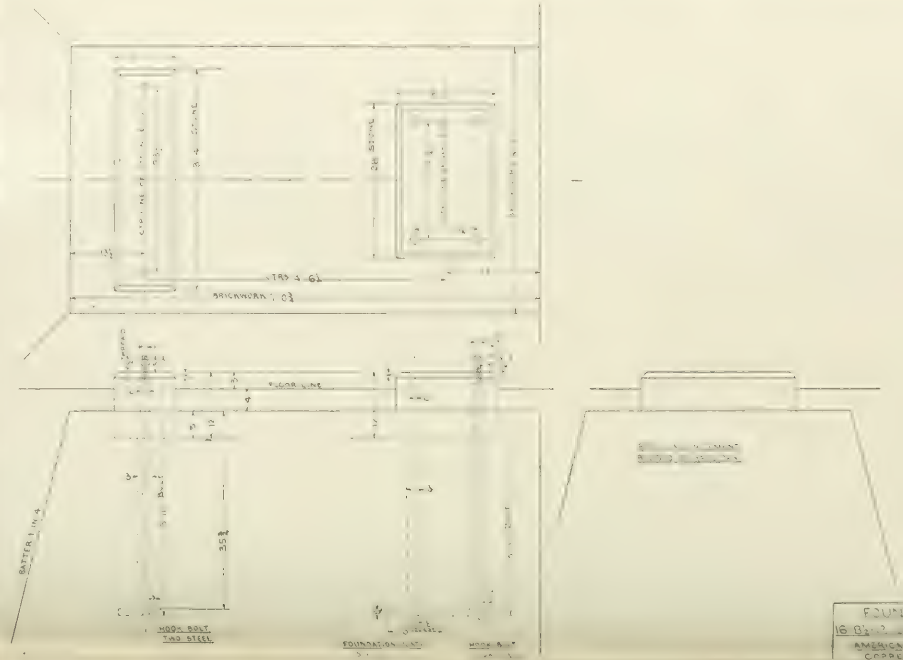
Plate M. Foundation. Pumps are often set directly upon a foundation of brick, but it makes a better job to bed stones, with surfaces dressed plane and true, into the main foundation, and rest the pump feet upon these stones. The simplest form of holding down bolts are shown on Plate M, a plain hook at the lower end, pulling up against a flat cast-iron plate, to distribute the pressure into the brickwork. These plates are of course bedded, and the bolts set as the foundation is built up. As the subsequent courses are laid some little space is left around the bolts, which may be afterwards filled with cement, thus making the bolts rigid with the foundation.

The water end of the foundation has no batter, because the suction pipe often drops vertically down from the end of the pump, and clearance is therefore necessary.

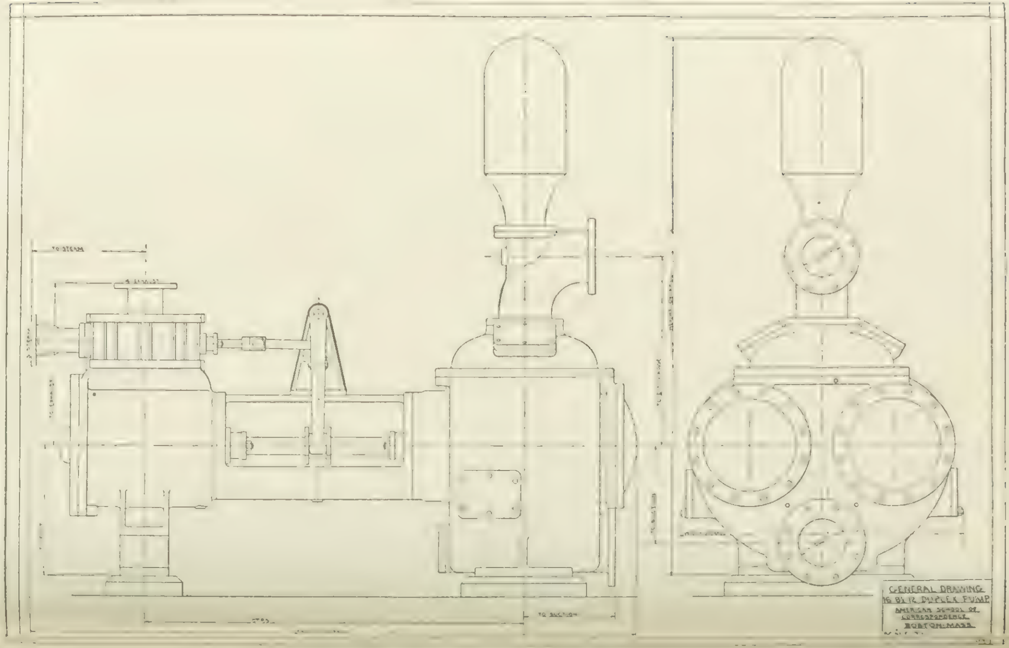
The floor line is placed 4 inches above the brickwork, to allow for the usual 1-inch top floor and 2-inch plank beneath, and still have a space left for shims to level the floor.

Plate N. General Drawing. This is an example of a plain, everyday shop drawing, to show the relation of parts and the extreme space occupied by the pump. A great deal of time can be needlessly wasted in producing a drawing of this character, by trying to make too faithful a picture. For example: If all the bolt heads were put in, it is safe to say that several hours' extra time would be required for this one item alone. But the drawing would be no better for shop use. Hence all bolt heads and nuts have been left out, except when necessary to show clearance.

Shade lines have been put on for no special reason except



FOUNDATION
16 8½ [illegible] PLEX PUMP
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF
CORRESPONDENCE
SCALE [illegible]


TO STEAM
TO SECTION
GENERAL DRAWING
16 BY 12 DUPLEX PUMP
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF
CORRESPONDENCE
BOSTON, MASS.

that if they are desirable on any drawing they are especially desirable on a general drawing, where one part overlaps another, as they make it easier to pick out and separate one surface from another. Some lines are shaded in this drawing which are not strictly sharp edges. It is held, however, that the rounding of a corner ought not to destroy its character as an edge casting a shadow, and such lines are treated accordingly.

An assembled or general drawing of this character should be laid out strictly from the dimensions shown by the details. It thus serves a valuable purpose in checking up figures, and showing whether or not the parts will go together. The method or character of the work in no respect differs from that suggested for the detail drawings.

If a scale of 3 inches = 1 foot be used, the size of sheet must be 24 inches × 36 inches. The student, however, will perhaps find it easier to use a scale of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches = 1 foot, in which case the ordinary size, 18 inches × 24 inches, will suffice. For such a small scale it will be found undesirable to attempt to put in any very small fillets and corners, although those that can be readily handled by the ordinary bow pen ought not to be omitted. As a matter of fact, the expert draftsman either leaves the corners sharp, as suggested, or puts in the smallest curves freehand.

Order Sheets. Any set of drawings is incomplete unless in connection with it a statement is made in tabular form of the complete make-up of the machine. An infinite variety of ways exists for making the specifications. Sometimes the tabulated data are placed on the general drawing. Most often, however, printed blanks are provided, usually of bond paper, arranged with special reference to the individual shop system and methods of handling work; these blanks are filled in by the draftsman, indexed and filed as a part of the set of drawings. They can be blue printed for use in the shops the same as a drawing. From these sheets stock is ordered, checked off, and watched in its process of manufacture.

Order sheets are indispensable in any well-ordered shop. Hence they are illustrated on pages 59, 60, 61 and 62 as the final step in the set of pump drawings. They are made as simple as possible, and are not intended to fit any special shop system. As previously stated, the exact form and method of classification can be determined only when the shop conditions are known.

The student, having carefully followed through the preceding pages, must not think that he is master of pump construction, for even the type illustrated has been but touched upon. The object of the detailed discussion is to get the student in close touch with the spirit of construction, to make his drawings real serious work. It is hoped that the student will work just as though a machine were to be built from his drawings, and built to sell at a profit. Only in this way can advanced work in mechanical drawing be of benefit to him, for after becoming expert in the use of the instruments, no other advance is possible except advance in *thought*.

AMERICAN SCHOOL OF CORRESPONDENCE

TYPE.
INSIDE PLUNGER.

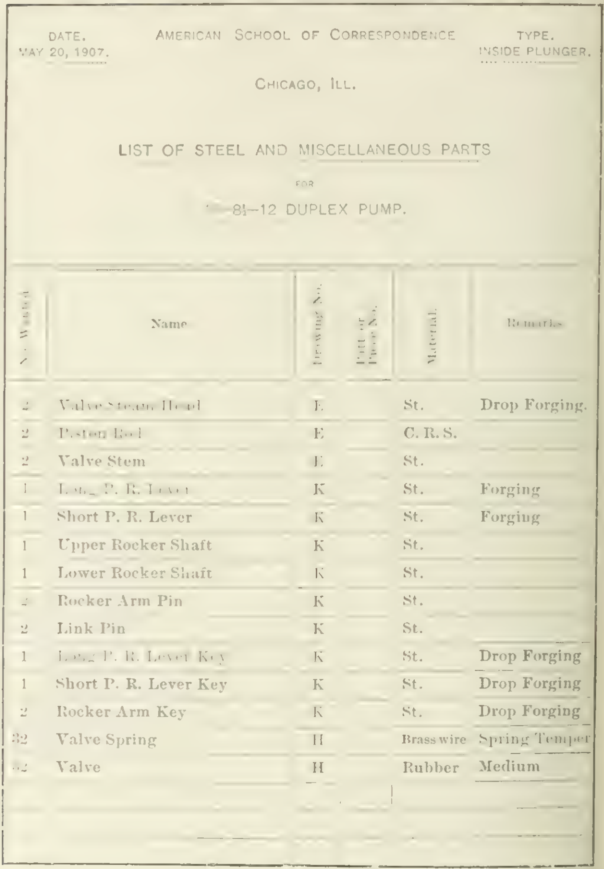
CHICAGO, ILL.

LIST OF CASTINGS

FOR

16–8½–12 DUPLEX PUMP.

No. Wanted.	Name.	Drawing No.	Patt. or Piece No.	Material.	Remarks.
2	Steam Cylinder	G		C. I.	R. & L.
2	Steam Cylinder Head	G		C. I.	
2	Steam Chest	F		C. I.	
2	Steam Chest Cover	F		C. I.	
2	Slide Valve	F		C. I.	
1	Steam Pipe	F		C. I.	
1	Exhaust Tee	F		C. I.	
2	Valve Steam Gland	F		C. I.	
2	Piston	E		C. I.	
8	Piston Pipe Plug, 1½	E		C. I.	
4	Piston Packing Ring	E		C. I.	
2	Spool	E		C. I.	
1	Steam Cylinder Cricket	L		C. I.	
2	Steam Cylinder Stuffing Box	L		C. I.	
2	Water Cylinder Stuffing Box	L		C. I.	
4	Piston Rod Gland	L		C. I.	
1	Valve Lever Bracket	L		C. I.	
2	Yoke	L		C. I.	R. & L.
1	Short Rocker Arm	K		C. I.	
1	Long Rocker Arm	K		C. I.	
2	Valve Stem Link	K		C. I.	
1	Water Cylinder	J		C. I.	
2	Water Cylinder Head	J		C. I.	
3	Hand Hole Cover	J		C. I.	
1	Water Cylinder Cap	I		C. I.	
1	Air Chamber	I		C. I.	
1	Discharge Ell	I		C. I.	
2	Plunger	H		C. I.	
2	Plunger Bushing	H		Brass	
2	Clamp Ring	H		C. I.	
32	Valve Stem	H		Brass	
32	Valve Cover	H		Brass	
32	Valve Seat	H		Brass	
6	Foundation Plate	M		C. I.	



DATE.
MAY 20, 1907.

AMERICAN SCHOOL OF CORRESPONDENCE

TYPE.
INSIDE PLUNGER.

CHICAGO, ILL.

LIST OF STEEL AND MISCELLANEOUS PARTS

FOR

8½–12 DUPLEX PUMP.

No. Wanted	Name	Drawing No.	Patt. or Piece No.	Material	Remarks
2	Valve Stem Head	E		St.	Drop Forging.
2	Piston Rod	E		C. R. S.	
2	Valve Stem	E		St.	
1	Long P. R. Lever	K		St.	Forging
1	Short P. R. Lever	K		St.	Forging
1	Upper Rocker Shaft	K		St.	
1	Lower Rocker Shaft	K		St.	
2	Rocker Arm Pin	K		St.	
2	Link Pin	K		St.	
1	Long P. R. Lever Key	K		St.	Drop Forging
1	Short P. R. Lever Key	K		St.	Drop Forging
2	Rocker Arm Key	K		St.	Drop Forging
32	Valve Spring	H		Brass wire	Spring Temper
32	Valve	H		Rubber	Medium

DATE.
MAY 30, [illegible]

AMERICAN SCHOOL OF CORRESPONDENCE

[illegible]
INSIDE PLUNGER.

CHICAGO, ILL.

LIST OF BOLTS, NUTS AND PINS

FOR

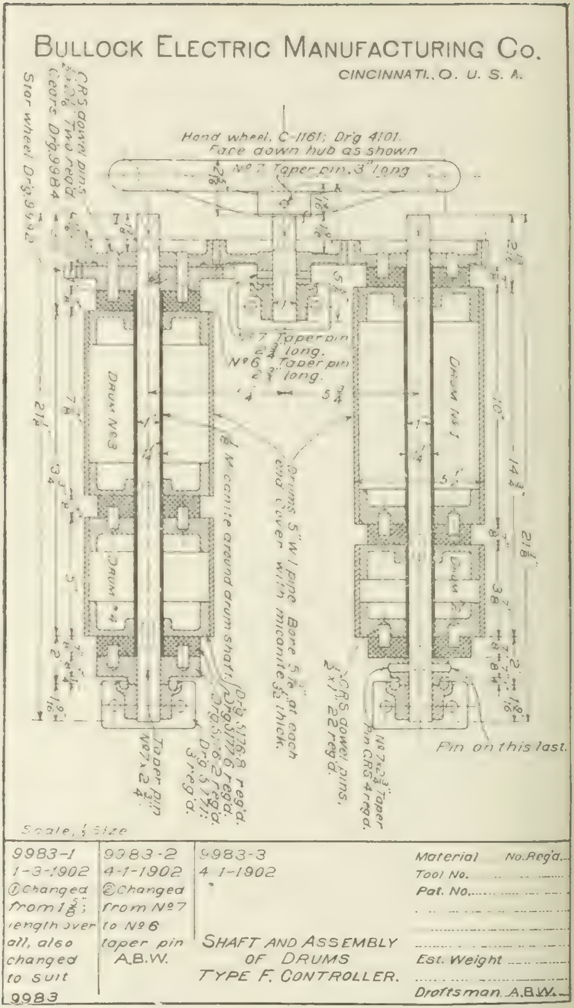
16—8½—12 DUPLEX PUMP.

No. wanted.	Name.		Drawing No.	Patt. or Piece No.	Material.	Remarks
24	Cylinder Head	Stud $\frac{7}{8}$ x $3\frac{1}{4}$	G		St.	
20	Steam Chest	Stud $\frac{3}{4}$ x $8\frac{3}{4}$	G		St.	
4	Valve Stem Gland	Stud $\frac{5}{8}$ x $4\frac{3}{4}$	F		St.	
8	Piston Rod Gland	Stud $\frac{3}{4}$ x 4	L		St.	
24	Water Cylinder Head	Stud $\frac{7}{8}$ x $3\frac{1}{4}$	J		St.	
12	Clamp Ring	Stud $\frac{3}{4}$ x $4\frac{1}{2}$	J		Tobin Bz	
24	Water Cylinder Cap	Stud 1 x $3\frac{1}{2}$	J		St.	
18	Hand Hole Cover	Stud $\frac{5}{8}$ x $2\frac{1}{2}$	J		St.	
12	Hand Hole Cover	Stud $\frac{5}{8}$ x $2\frac{1}{4}$	I		St.	
8	Exhaust Tee	Tap Bolt $\frac{5}{8}$ x $1\frac{3}{4}$	G		St.	
16	Yoke	Tap Bolt $\frac{3}{4}$ x 2	G		St.	
8	Steam Cyl. Stf. Box	Tap Bolt $\frac{3}{4}$ x $1\frac{3}{4}$	G		St.	
8	Steam Pipe	Tap Bolt $\frac{5}{8}$ x $1\frac{1}{2}$	F		St.	
4	Valve Lever Bracket	Tap Bolt $\frac{5}{8}$ x $1\frac{3}{4}$	F		St.	
4	Steam Cyl. Cricket	Tap Bolt 1 x $2\frac{1}{4}$	F		St.	
16	Yoke	Tap Bolt $\frac{3}{4}$ x 2	J		St.	
8	Water Cyl. Stf. Box	Tap Bolt $\frac{3}{4}$ x $1\frac{3}{4}$	J		St.	
8	Discharge Ell	Tap Bolt $\frac{3}{4}$ x 2	I		St.	
4	Air Chamber	Tap Bolt $\frac{3}{4}$ x 2	I		St.	
2	Hook Bolt (special)	1 x 3′—11″	M		St.	
4	Hook Bolt (special)	$1\frac{1}{4}$ x 3′ — 11	M		St.	
1	Eye Bolt	Standard 1″	I		St.	
34	Standard Nut	$\frac{5}{8}$			St.	
44	Standard Nut	$\frac{3}{4}$			St.	
36	Standard Nut	$\frac{7}{8}$			St.	
26	Standard Nut	1			St.	
4	Standard Nut	$1\frac{1}{4}$			St.	
4	Standard Nut	2			St.	
8	Special Valve Stem Nut	1			St.	$\frac{3}{4}$ Thick
4	Piston Rod Split Pin	$\frac{1}{4}$ x 2	E		St.	
2	Spool Taper Pin	No. 10 Morse Taper	E		St.	4″ long
4	Valve Bracket Dowel Pin	$\frac{1}{2}$ x 2	L		St.	

LIST OF SPECIAL FITTINGS, WRENCHES, ETC.

16–8½–12 DUPLEX PUMP.

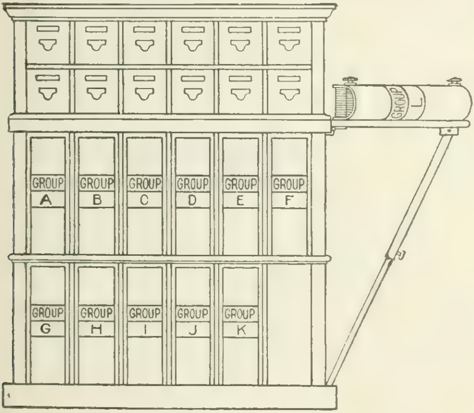
No. Wanted	Name		Drawing No.	[illegible]	Material.	Remarks
4	Drip Cock	[illegible]	G			
1	Drip Cock	[illegible]	F			
2	Drip Cock	[illegible]	I			
4	Oil Cup	[illegible]	L			
[illegible]	Drip Cock	[illegible]	J			
1	Relief Valve	1[illegible]	I			175 lbs. pressure
1	Standard Fork Wrench	[illegible]				
1	Standard Fork Wrench	[illegible]				
1	Standard Fork Wrench	[illegible]				
1	Standard Fork Wrench	1"				
1	Socket Wrench	[illegible]				[illegible]" handle
1	Valve Stem Fork Wrench					
1	Valve Stem Socket Wrench					



EXAMPLE OF SHOP DRAWING REPRODUCED FROM A BLUE PRINT BY THE COURTESY OF THE BULLOCK ELECTRIC MFG. CO.

DRAFTING ROOM ORGANIZATION

It is always of interest to manufacturing engineers when anything additional to the subject of systematic commercial drawing is brought to their attention. The development of a universal drawing process or system sufficiently general to meet all practical needs of manufacturing concerns, will likely come about at some future time, and this may form part of the engineering curriculum in schools and colleges, much the same as bookkeeping has been taught in commercial colleges for years.



Cabinet Set Forming Portion of Part Drawing System.

Comprises, in the upper part, a card index, and in the lower part, a bound blue-print file containing records and drawings of finished material or parts.

The present is a period of standard manufacturing, and the tendency toward standardization is naturally growing, thereby creating a demand for different methods from those employed where the articles of manufacture were unsettled and undergoing ceaseless and uncertain changes. It is of course true that improvements in standard lines of manufacture will be continually required, but these changes take the form of revisions, to a greater or less extent, of designs that previously have been reduced to a fairly definite basis. The drawing office is where things are built on paper, and it is subject to a change of methods when approaching standard manufacturing as much as are the factory departments doing actual construction work.

To illustrate the following list brings out a few of the essential features that usually appear for consideration in conducting a drawing office for developing specialized products:

1. The desirability of one uniform size of drawing sheet for all drawings.

2. The necessity of drawing parts independently of any mechanism to which they may belong, for the reason that any part is likely to be found available for use in the manufacture of a number of different mechanisms.

3. The necessity of knowing and being able to identify all parts by symbols.

4. A suitable system of drawing parts.

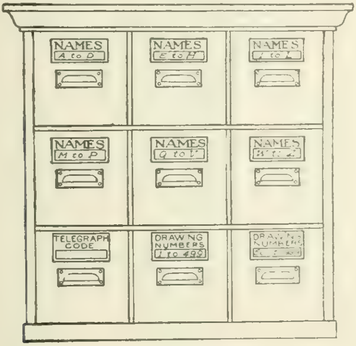
5. The necessity of classifying parts into groups or collections and grading them according to the primary operations that are required in forming them, or according to their elementary nomenclature or design.

6. As parts and constructional views cannot be shown on the same drawing, some means must be employed by draftsmen to specify and identify the parts that are involved in a general drawing.

7. Once typical general drawings have been made, how is it possible to avoid the delay and expense that are inevitably attached to redrawing practically the same thing for the many modifications arising from time to time?

Standard manufacturing may be looked upon as differing from special or miscellaneous manufacturing inasmuch as, under the former, parts take a systematic course from one set of machines to another until they finally become finished material.

The work of constructing or assembling the various parts to form a finished product, involves an entirely separate office. General drawings are of service principally where assembling is done, while the part-producing departments, on the other hand, require but those drawings that give working dimensions of parts. It is therefore seen that, so far as the uses of drawings are concerned, there is no occasion for showing parts associated with the finished mechanism, even were it possible to do so. Moreover, the fact that any single part may be found available in a variety of places, suggests the principle of showing parts collectively as a body of things having individual entity; and, if they are to be thought of as associated in some manner, it seems preferable to regard them as some group or collection. Where numerous parts are involved, the idea of drawing each of them separately on an independent sheet—which is a very general practice—incurs the disadvantage of a great collection of small sheets, whereas, by the use of a no less convenient but larger sheet, their number may be materially reduced by placing five to seven or more part views on the one drawing, arranging them, of course, according to their respective groups. One uniform size of drawing sheet can be used, which is of great advantage in filing and binding blue-prints for circulation.



Section of Cabinet Set for Finished Products.

Contains material record list cards arranged alphabetically under names of mechanism, general view drawing numbers, and telegraph code for drawing office reference.

Symbols. Symbols for parts usually take the form of numbers, with characters or letters annexed which signify the association of the parts. Each and every part is numbered in numerical sequence; and in the present instance, letters may be annexed which signify the group of which the part is a member, and the groups established according to the basic operations by which they are first formed. This is illustrated by the following list:

Cast Metal Parts.—*Group Symbol, A.*

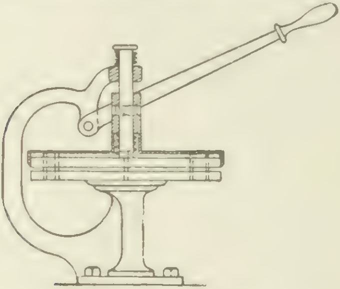
All parts originally formed by moulding or casting, and which are not magnets.

Sheet Metal Parts, Die Formed, etc.—*Group Symbol, B.*

All parts originally formed from sheet metal by puncturing, shearing, spinning, stamping, etc., and which are not magnets.

Machine-Formed Parts.—*Group Symbol, C.*

All metal parts that are formed on lathes, shapers, milling machines, screw machines, threading and tapping machines, etc., such parts being made from raw material in the shape of rods, bars, tubes, plates, etc., and which are not magnets.



[illegible] Punch Press

One advantage [illegible] sheets for part drawings is [illegible] constructed punch press, which at the same time will pierce the holes for binding.

Magnets.—*Group Symbol, D.*

Cores of electro-magnets, armatures, pole-pieces, and shoes, frames, permanent magnets, shells, yokes, etc.

Insulators.—*Group Symbol, E.*

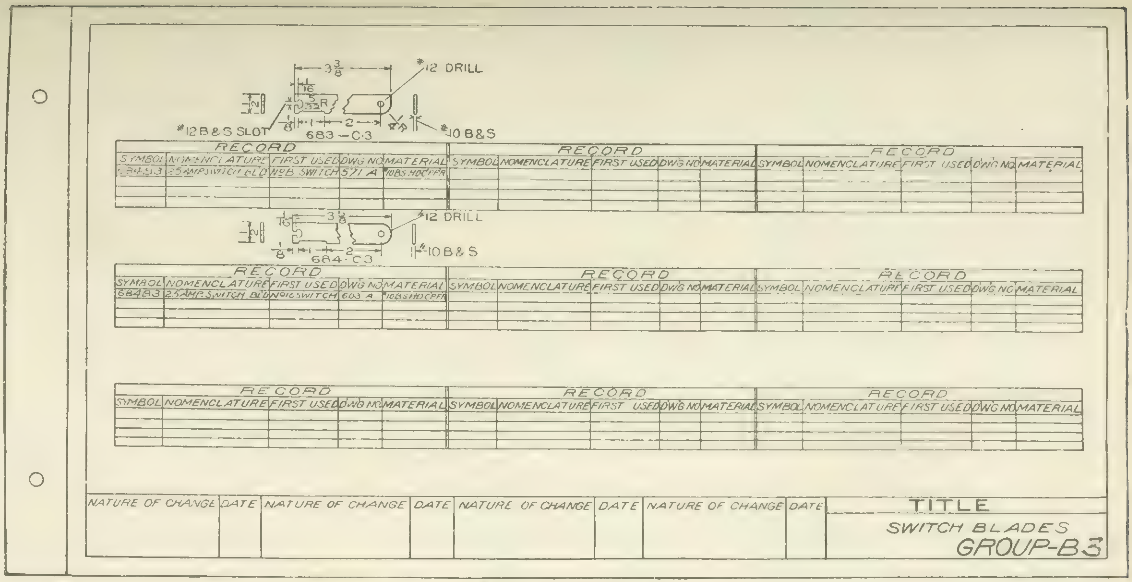
Tubes, strips, bushings, collars, handles, knobs, etc., of porcelain, glass, rubber, fiber, wood, paper; fabrics or parts made of other material for insulating purposes.

Coils.—*Group Symbol, F.*

Electro-magnet coils, resistance coils, condenser coils, or current-carrying coils of any nature; to comprise only the coil governed by its winding measurements, size of wire, number of turns, resistance, grade of insulation, and material wire is made of.

Forged or Wrought Parts.—*Group Symbol, G.*

All parts such as hooks, rivets, rings, wire springs, which are made of wire



RECORD					RECORD					RECORD				
SYMBOL	NOMENCLATURE	FIRST USED	DWG NO	MATERIAL	SYMBOL	NOMENCLATURE	FIRST USED	DWG NO	MATERIAL	SYMBOL	NOMENCLATURE	FIRST USED	DWG NO	MATERIAL
684B3	25 AMP SWITCH BLD	№ 8 SWITCH	571 A	#10 BS HDCPPR										

RECORD					RECORD					RECORD				
SYMBOL	NOMENCLATURE	FIRST USED	DWG NO	MATERIAL	SYMBOL	NOMENCLATURE	FIRST USED	DWG NO	MATERIAL	SYMBOL	NOMENCLATURE	FIRST USED	DWG NO	MATERIAL
684B3	2.5 AMP. SWITCH BLD	№ 16 SWITCH	603 A	#10 BS HD CPPR										

RECORD					RECORD					RECORD				
SYMBOL	NOMENCLATURE	FIRST USED	DWG NO	MATERIAL	SYMBOL	NOMENCLATURE	FIRST USED	DWG NO	MATERIAL	SYMBOL	NOMENCLATURE	FIRST USED	DWG NO	MATERIAL

NATURE OF CHANGE	DATE	NATURE OF CHANGE	DATE	NATURE OF CHANGE	DATE	NATURE OF CHANGE	DATE	TITLE
								SWITCH BLADES GROUP-B3

Specimen Part Drawing.

and which are not resistance coils; supports, brackets, fixtures, and all such parts, which are hand-formed, forged, or wrought, and which are not magnets.

Wooden Parts.—*Group Symbol, H.*

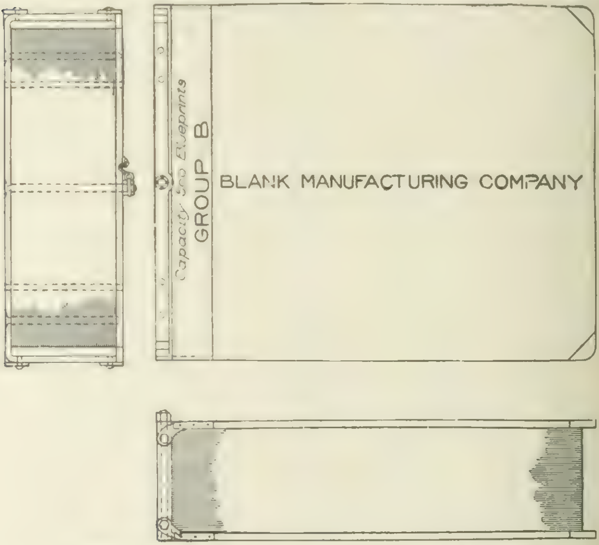
All wooden parts such as strips, pins, blocks, bases, moulding, ornaments, knobs, and brackets, which are not used for insulating purposes.

Compound Parts.—*Group Symbol, J.*

All parts consisting of more than one member, where it is necessary to join them to produce the part as completed material ready for assembling.

Purchased Articles.—*Group Symbol, K.*

All articles such as locks, door or drawer knobs, fixtures, receptacles, and ornaments, which are compounded parts, being purchased, not manufactured

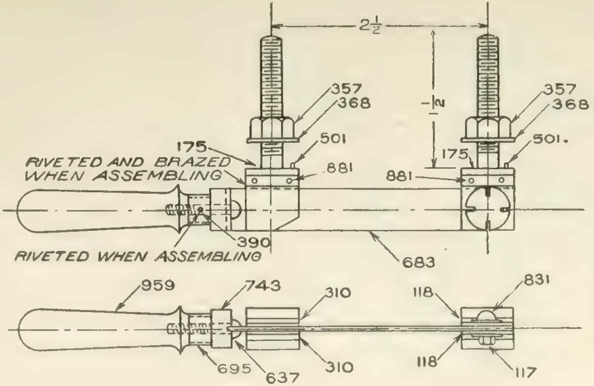


Detail of Blue Print Binder Designed for Part Drawing System.

The binding operates independent of the covers, which are hinged and can be opened clear back, allowing free access to the prints. Any print can be removed or inserted at any point, and the binder conveniently rejoined by use of a combination key and guide.

The above classification enables an intelligent analysis of the parts to be made, placing them in their respective group order according to the directions or codifications given.

The drawings for each set exhibit a convenient number of part views, and the title of each sheet indicates the name and group



MATERIAL SPECIFICATION				
NUMBER	REQ	NOMENCLATURE	GR	MATERIAL
683	1	SWITCH BLADE	B3	HD COPPER
175	2	CONNECTING STUDS	A5	CAST BRASS
959	1	HANDLE	E6	H RUBBER
357	2	¼-20 HEX. NUT	C7	ROD BRASS
368	2	¼" WASHER	C6	COPPER
637	1	6-32 RHI SCREW	C5	IRON
831	1	" " "	C3	"
514	2	WASHER	A2	COPPER
310	2	CLIPS	A3	HD COPPER
118	2	"	A5	"
395	1	FERRULE	A1	BRASS
390	1	RIVET	G3	IRON
881	4	"	G3	"
743	1	INSULATOR	E4	H RUBBER
501	2	DOWEL	C1	STUB STEEL

TITLE

№13 SWITCH

DRAWN BY	TRACED BY	CHECKED BY	DATE

APPROVED ____________

BLANK MANUFACTUR'G CO.

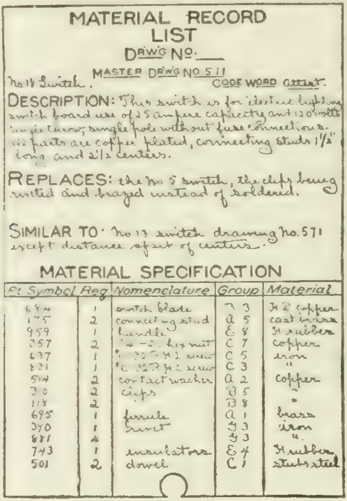
№ 571A

NATURE OF CHANGE	DATE	NATURE OF CHANGE	DATE	NATURE OF CHANGE	DATE

Specimen General View Drawing

of the parts it contains. The sheets are numbered serially, beginning each set with *No. 1*, the number increasing by one for each successive addition. If, for illustration, the number portion of a part symbol is *368*, then, in order to signify its groups and still more its drawing, we might write *368.A3*, which means that the part belongs to the *A* group (Cast Metal Parts), and is shown on the third drawing of the series.

Material Lists. Where articles of manufacture are repeatedly reproduced, as is the case in standard manufacturing, and where, as often occurs, they are, for various reasons, not made in all cases just exactly alike, there is involved the question as to how far the reproduction of general view drawings should be carried. A record at least is necessary of each article, just as it is built. The old and familiar but serviceable plan of employing material lists, developed through the use of part symbols, etc., serves admirably in combination with a typical or master drawing. Such lists enumerate the various parts used in each mechanism;



MATERIAL RECORD
LIST
DRWG NO. ___

No 18 Switch. MASTER DRWG NO 511
CODE WORD attest.

DESCRIPTION: This switch is for electric lighting switch board use of 25 ampere capacity and 120 volts single throw, single pole without fuse connections. All parts are copper plated, connecting studs 1½" long and 2½ centers.

REPLACES: the No 5 switch, the clips being riveted and brazed instead of soldered.

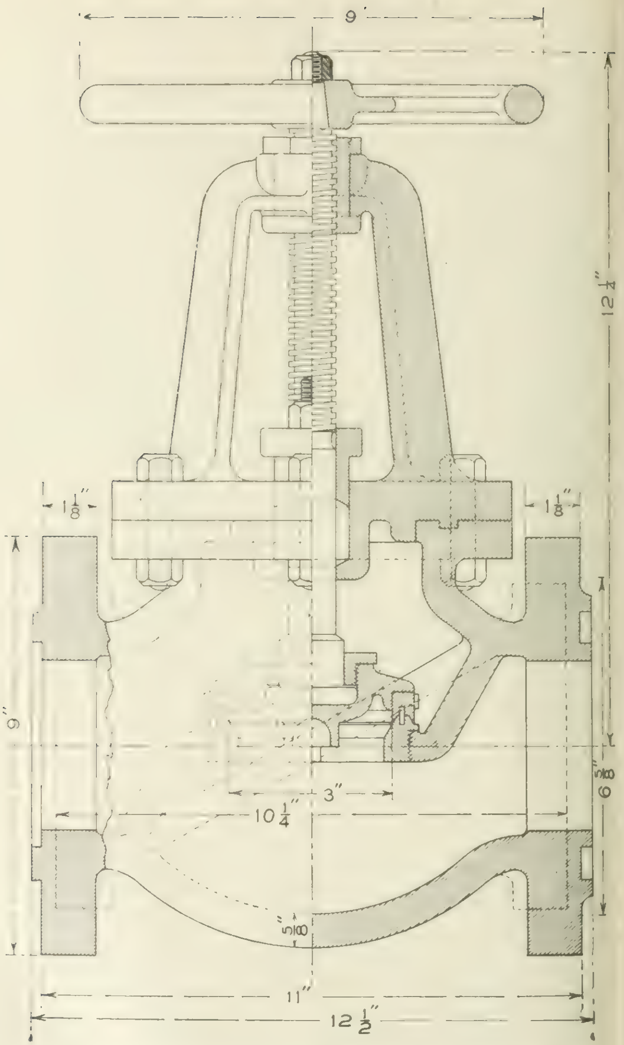
SIMILAR TO: No 13 switch drawing No. 571 except distance apart of centers.

MATERIAL SPECIFICATION

Pt Symbol	Req	Nomenclature	Group	Material
684	1	switch blade	D 3	H D copper
175	2	connecting stud	A 5	cast brass
959	1	handle	E 8	H rubber
257	2	¼ - 20 hex nut	C 7	copper
637	1	[illegible] screw	C 5	iron
831	1	[illegible] screw	C 3	"
514	2	contact washer	A 2	copper
3[illegible]0	2	clips	B 5	"
118	2		B 8	"
695	1	ferrule	A 1	brass
370	1	rivet	G 3	iron
881	4		G 3	"
743	1	insulators	E 4	H rubber
501	2	dowel	C 1	stubs steel

and when the construction changes, it must occur through a change in the combination of parts. Therefore, when the parts are enumerated there can be no mistake about the construction. To illustrate the use of such lists, let us assume the instance of a switch which is represented by a general drawing and called the "No. 13 Switch." Occasion later arises for a modification, say in the distance between stud centers. This will require a different blade, which is practically the only difference between the switches. The material record list shown in the accompanying illustration fully serves the purpose, as it reveals and identifies the component parts which, accompanied with a master drawing, furnish complete manufacturing data.

The "Material Specification" portion of the record card is in form a duplicate of the material list appearing in general drawings, being used for the same purpose—that of identifying the parts involved in a convenient tabulation.



WORKING DRAWING SHOWING PRINCIPAL DIMENSIONS OF SPRING SEAT VALVE.

Crosby Steam Gage & Valve Co.

MACHINE DESIGN.

PART I.

Definition. Machine Design is the art of mechanical thought development, and specification.

It is an art, in that its routine processes can be analyzed and systematically applied. Proficiency in the art positively cannot be attained by any "short cut" method. There is nothing of a spectacular nature in the methods of Machine Design. Large results cannot be accomplished at a single bound, and success is possible only by a patient, step-by-step advance in accordance with well-established principles.

"Mechanical thought" means the thinking of things strictly from their mechanical side; a study of their mechanical theory, structure, production, and use; a consideration of their mechanical fitness as parts of a machine.

"Mechanical development" signifies the taking of an idea in the rough, in the crude form, for example, in which it comes from the inventor, working it out in detail, and refining and fixing it in shape by the designing process. Ideas in this way may become commercially practicable designs.

"Mechanical specification" implies the detailed description of designs, in such exact form that the shop workmen are enabled to construct completely and put in operation the machines represented in the designs.

The object of Machine Design is the creation of machinery for specific purposes. Every department of a manufacturing plant is a controlling factor in the design and production of the machines built there. A successful design cannot be out of harmony with the organized methods of production. Hence in the high development of the art of Machine Design is involved a knowledge of the operations in all the departments of a manufacturing plant. The student is therefore urged not only to familiarize himself with the direct production of machinery, but to study the relation thereto of the allied commercial departments

He should get into the spirit of business at the start, get into the shop atmosphere, execute his work just as though the resulting design were to be built and sold in competition. He should visit shops, work in them if possible, and observe details of design and methods of finishing machine parts. In this way he will begin to store up bits of information, practical and commercial, which will have valuable bearing on his engineering study.

The labor involved in the design of a complicated automatic machine is evidenced by the designer's wonderful familiarity with its every detail as he stands before the completed machine in operation and explains its movements to an observer. The intricate mass of levers, shafts, pulleys, gears, cams, clutches, etc., etc., packed into a small space, and confusing even to a mechanical mind, seems like a printed book to the designer of them.

This is so because it is a familiar journey for the designer's mind to run over a path which it has already traversed so many times that he can see every inch of it with his eyes shut. Every detail of that machine has been picked from a score or more of possible ideas. One by one, ideas have been worked out, laid aside, and others taken up. Little by little, the special fitness of certain devices has become established, but only by patient, careful consideration of others, which at first seemed equally good.

Every line, and corner, and surface of each piece, however small that piece may be, has been through the refining process of theoretical, practical, and commercial design. Every piece has been followed in the mind's eye of its designer from the crude material of which it is made, through the various processes of finishing, to its final location in the completed machine; thus its bodily existence there is but the realization of an old and familiar picture.

What wonder that the machine seems simple to the designer of it! As he looks back to the multitude of ideas invented, worked out, considered and discarded, the machine in its final form is but a trifle. It merely represents a survival of the fittest.

No successful machine, however simple, was ever designed that did not go through this slow process of evolution. No machine ever just simply happened by accident to do the work for which it is valued. No other principle upon which the successful design of machinery depends is so important as this careful, patient consideration of detail. A machine is seldom unsuccessful because some main point of construction is wrong. The principal features of a machine are usually the easiest to determine. It is a failure because some little detail was overlooked, or hastily considered, or allowed to be neglected, because of the irksome labor necessary to work it out properly.

There is no task so tedious, for example, as the devising of the method of lubricating the parts of a complicated machine. Yet there is no point of design so vital to its life and operation as an absolute assurance of an adequate supply of oil for the moving parts at all times and under all circumstances. Suitable means often cannot be found, after the parts are together, hence the machine goes into service on a risky basis, with the result, perhaps, of early failure, due to "running dry." Good designers will not permit a design to leave their hands which does not provide practically automatic oiling, or at least such means of lubrication that the operator can offer no excuse for neglecting to oil his machine. This is but a single illustration of many which might be presented to impress the definite and detail character necessary in work in Machine Design.

Relation. The relation which Machine Design should correctly bear to the problems that it seeks to solve, is twofold; and there are, likewise, two points of view corresponding to this twofold relation, from which a study of the subject should be traced. Neither of these can be discarded and an efficient mastery of the art attained. These points are—

I. Theory.

II. Production.

I. *Theory.* From this point of view, Machine Design is merely a skeleton or framework process, resulting in a representation of ideas of pure motion, fundamental shape, and ideal proportion. It implies a working knowledge of physical and mathematical laws. It is a strictly scientific solution of the problem at hand, and may be based purely on theory which has been reasoned out by calculation or deduced from experiment. This is the only sure foundation for intelligent design of any sort.

But it is not enough to view the subject from the standpoint of theory alone. If we stopped here we should have nothing but mechanisms, mere laboratory machines, simply structures of ingenuity and examples of fine mechanical skill. A machine may be correct in the theory of its motions; it may be correct in the theoretical proportions of its parts; it may even be correct in its operation for the time being; and yet its complication, its misdirected and wasteful effort, its lack of adjustment, its expensive and irregular construction, its lack of compactness, its difficulty of ready repair, its inability to hold its own in competition—any of these may throw the balance to the side of failure. Such a machine, commercially considered, is of little value. No shop will build it, no machinery house will sell it, nobody will buy it if it is put on the market.

Thus we see that, aside from the theoretical correctness of principle, the design of a machine must satisfy certain other exacting requirements of a distinctly business nature.

II. *Production.* From this point of view, Machine Design is the practical, marketable development of mechanical ideas. Viewed thus, the theoretical, skeleton design must be so clothed and shaped that its production may be cheap, involving simple and efficient processes of manufacture. It must be judged by the latest shop methods for exact and maximum output. It must possess all the good points of its competitor, and, withal, some novel and valuable ones of its own. In these days of keen competition it is only by carefully studied, well-directed effort toward rapid, efficient, and, therefore, cheap production that any machine can be brought to a commercial basis, no matter what its other merits may be. All this must be thought of and planned for in the design, and the final shapes arrived at are quite as much a result of this second point of view as of the first.

As a good illustration of this, may be cited the effect of the present somewhat remarkable development of the so-called "high speed" steels. The speeds and feeds possible with tools made of these steels are such that the driving power, gearing, and feed mechanism of the ordinary lathe are wholly inadequate to the demands made upon them when working the tool to its limit. This means that the basis of design as used for the ordinary tool steel will not do, if the machine is expected to stand up to the cuts possible with the new steels. Hence, while the old designs were right for the old standard, a new one has been set, and a thorough revision on a high-speed basis is imminent, else the market for them as machines of maximum output will be lost.

From these definitions it is evident that the designer must not only use all the theory at his command, but must continually inform himself on all processes and conditions of manufacture, and keep an eye on the tendency of the sales markets, both of raw material and the finished machinery product. This is what in the broadest sense is meant by the term "Mechanical Thought," thought which is directed and controlled, not only by theoretical principle but by closely observed practice. From the feeblest pretenders of design to those engineers who consummate the boldest feats and control the largest enterprises, the process which produces results is always the same. Although experience is necessary for the best mechanical judgment, yet the student must at least begin to cultivate good mechanical sense very early in his study of design.

Invention. Invention is closely related to Machine Design, but is not design itself. Whatever is invented has yet to be designed. An invention is of little value until it has been refined by the process of design.

Original design is of an inventive nature, but is not strictly invention. Invention is usually considered as the result of genius, and is announced in a flash of brilliancy. We see only the flash, but behind the flash is a long course of the most concentrated brain effort. Inventions are not spontaneous, are not thrown off like sparks from the blacksmith's anvil, but are the result of hard and applied thinking. This is worth noting carefully, for the same effort which produces original design may develop a valuable invention. But there is little possibility of inventing anything except through exhaustive analysis and a clear interpretation of such analysis.

Handbooks and Empirical Data. The subject matter in these is often contradictory in its nature, but valuable nevertheless. Empirical data are data for certain fixed conditions and are not general. Hence, when handbook data are applied to some specific case of design, while the information should be used in the freest manner, yet it must not be forgotten that the case at hand is probably different, in some degree, from that upon which the data were based, and unlike any other case which ever existed or will ever again exist. Therefore the data should be applied with the greatest discretion, and when so applied will contribute to the success of the design at least as a check, if not as a positive factor.

The student should at the outset purchase one good handbook, and acquire the habit of consulting it on all occasions, checking and comparing his own calculations and designs therefrom. Care must be taken not to become tied to a handbook to such an extent that one's own results are wholly subordinated to it. Independence in design must be cultivated, and the student should not sacrifice his calculated results until they can be shown to be false or based on false assumption. Originality and confidence in design will be the result if this course be honestly pursued.

Calculations, Notes, and Records. Accurate calculations are the basis of correct proportions of machine parts. There is a right way to make calculations and a wrong way, and the student will usually take the wrong way unless he is cautioned at the start.

The wrong way of making calculations is the loose and shiftless fashion of scratching upon a scrap of detached paper marks and figures, arranged in haphazard form, and disconnected and incomplete. These calculations are in a few moments' time totally meaningless, even to the author of them himself, and are so easily lost or mislaid that when wanted they usually cannot be found.

Engineering calculations should always be made systematically, neatly, and in perfectly legible form, in some permanently bound blank book, so that reference may always be had to them at any future time for the purpose of checking or reviewing. Put all the data down. Do not leave in doubt the exact conditions under which the calculations were made. Note the date of calculation.

If a mistake in figures is made, or a change is found necessary, never rub out the figures or tear out the leaf, or in any way obliterate the figures. Simply draw a bold cross through the wrong part and begin again. Often a calculation which is supposed to be wrong is later shown to be right, or the facts which caused the error may be needed for investigation and comparison. Time which is spent in making figures is always valuable time, time too precious to be thrown away by destroying the record.

The recording of calculations in a permanent form, as just described, is the general practice in all modern engineering offices. This plan has been established purely as a business policy. In case of error it locates responsibility and settles dispute. Consistent designing is made possible through the records of past designs. Proposals, estimates, and bids may often be made instantly, on the basis of what these record books show of sizes and weights. This bookkeeping of calculations is as important a factor of systematic engineering as bookkeeping of business accounts is of financial success.

The student should procure for this purpose a good blank book with a firm binding, size of page not smaller than 6 by 8 inches (perhaps 8 by 11 inches may be better), and every calculation, however small and apparently unimportant, should be made in it.

Sample pages of engineering calculations are reproduced in Figs. 3 to 9. Note the sketch showing the forces. Note the clear statement of data. Note the systematic writing of the equations, and the definite substitutions therein. Note the heavy double underscoring of the result, when obtained. There is nothing in the whole process of the calculation that cannot be reviewed at any moment by anybody, and in the briefest time.

The development of a personal note-book is of great value to the designer of machinery. The facts of observation and experience recorded in proper form, bearing the imprint of intimate personal contact with the points recorded, cannot be equalled in value by those of any hand or reference book made by another. There is always a flavor about a personal note-book, a sort of guarantee, which makes the use of it by its author definite and sure.

The habit of taking and recording notes, or even knowing what notes to take, is an art in itself, and the student should begin early to make his note-book. Aside from the value of the notes themselves as a part of his personal equipment, the facility with which his eye will be trained to see and record mechanical things will be of great value in all of his study and work. How many men go through a shop and really see nothing of the opera tions going on therein, or, seeing them, remember nothing! An engineer, trained in this respect, will to a surprising degree be able to retain and sketch little details which fall under his eye for a brief moment only, while he is passing through a crowded shop.

Some draftsmen have the habit of copying all the standard tables of the various offices in which they work. While these are of some value in a few cases, yet this is not what is meant by a good note book in the best sense. Ideas make a good note-book, not a mere tabulation of figures. If the basis upon which standards are founded can be transferred to permanent personal record, or novel methods of calculation, or simple features of construction, or data of mechanical tests, or efficient arrangement of machinery—if *these* can be preserved for reference, the note-book will be of greatest value.

Whatever is noted down, make clear and intelligible, illustrating by a sketch if possible. Make the note so clear that reference to it after a long space of years would bring the whole subject before the mind in an instant. If this is not done the author of the note himself will not have patience to dig out the meaning when it is needed; and the note will be of no value.

METHOD OF DESIGN.

The fundamental lines of thought and action which every designer follows in the solution of any problem in any class of work whatsoever, are four in number. The expert may carry all these in mind at the same time, without definite separation into a a step-by-step process; but the student must master them in their proper sequence, and thoroughly understand their application. In these four are concentrated the entire art of Machine Design. When they have become so familiar as to be instinctively applied on any and all occasions, good design is the result. The only other quality which will facilitate still further the design of good machinery is experience; and that cannot be taught, it must be acquired by actual work.

1. **Analysis of Conditions and Forces.** First, take a good square look at the problem to be solved. Study it from all sides, view it in all lights, note the worst conditions which can possibly exist, note the average conditions of service, note any special or irregular service likely to be called for.

With these conditions well in mind, make a careful analysis of all the forces, maximum as well as average, which may be brought into play. Make a rough sketch of the piece under consideration, and put in these forces. Be sure that these forces are at least approximately right. Go over the analysis carefully again and again. Remember that time saved at the beginning by hasty and poor analysis will actually be time lost at the end; and if the machine actually fails from this reason, heavy financial loss in material and labor will occur. Any haste toward completion of the structure beyond the roughest outline, without this careful study of forces, is a blind leap in the dark, entirely unscientific, and almost certain to result in ultimate failure.

On the other hand this principle may be carried too far. In trying to make the analysis thorough and the forces accurate, it is quite possible to consume more than a reasonable amount of time. Again, it is not always easy, and frequently impossible, to determine exactly the forces acting on a given piece. But their *nature*, whether sudden or slowly applied, rapid in action or only occurring at intervals, and their *approximate* direction and magnitude at least, are always capable of analysis. There are few, if any, cases where close assumptions cannot be made on the above basis and the design proceeded with accordingly. Hence the danger of too great refinement of analysis is simply to be avoided by the designer's plain business sense.

The first tendency of the student is to pass over the study of the forces as dull and dry, and attempt the design at once. He soon finds himself facing problems of which he sees no possible solution, and he bases his design on pure guess-work. This is the only solution possible from such a point of view, and is really no solution at all. A guess which has some rational backing is often successful; but in that case some analysis is required, and it is not a pure guess, but falls under the very principle we are considering.

There is no short cut to the design of machine parts which avoids this full understanding of the forces that they must sustain. The size of a belt depends upon the maximum pull upon it, and the designing of belts is nothing but providing sufficient cross-section of leather to prevent the belt tearing under the pull. Again, if pulley arms are not to break, or shafts twist off, or bolts be torn apart, or the teeth of gears fail, or keys and pins shear off, we must first, of course, find out what forces exist which are likely to produce stress that may lead to such breakage. We should not guess at the sizes, and then run the machine to see if breakage results, and then guess again. Machines are sometimes built in this way, but it is an unreasonable and uncertain method. We must use every effort to foresee the stress which a piece is liable to receive, before we decide its size. We must know all the forces approximately, if not positively. The analysis must be thorough enough to permit of reasonable assumption, if not positive assertion. It is manifestly impossible to solve any problem until we know exactly what the problem is; and a full analysis *is* the statement of the problem.

2. Theoretical Design. After we know by careful analysis what stress the machine part has to sustain, the next step is so to design it that it will theoretically resist the applied forces with the least expenditure of material.

We often see machinery with the metal of which it is made distributed in the worst possible manner. In places where the stress is heavy and a rigid member is needed, we find a weak, springy part; while in other parts, where there are no forces to be resisted, or vibration to be absorbed, there seems to be a waste of good material. Whether in such case the analysis of the forces was poor, or perhaps not made at all, or whether a knowledge of how to design so as to resist the given forces was wholly absent, cannot be told. At any rate, lack of either or both is clearly shown in the result.

Any member of a machine may vary in form from a solid block or chunk of material to an open ribbed structure. The solid chunk fills the requirement as far as strength is concerned, unless it is so heavy as to fail from its own weight. But such construction is poor design, except in cases where the concentration of heavy mass is necessary to absorb repeated blows like those of a hammer. The possibility of these blows should, however, have been determined in the analysis; and the solid, anvil construction then becomes theoretical design for that analysis.

For steadily applied loads an open, ribbed, or hollow box structure can be made which will distribute the metal where it is theoretically needed, and each fiber will then sustain its proper share of the load. In this way weight, cost, and appearance are heeded; and the service of the piece is as good as, and probably better than, it would be with the clumsy, solid form.

There is no such thing as putting too much theory into the design of machinery. The strongest trait which an engineer can have is absolute faith in his analysis and calculations, and their reproduction in his theoretical design. Theoretical design is an indication of scientific advance in the art, and some of the greatest steps of progress which have been made in recent years have been accomplished through a purely theoretical study of machine structure.

It will never do, however, to be satisfied with theoretical design when it is not in accord with modern commercial and manufacturing considerations. Hence the next step after the determination of the theoretical design is the study of it from the producing standpoint.

3. Practical Modification. All theoretical design viewed from the business standpoint is worthless, unless it has been subjected to the test of cheap and efficient production. Each machine detail, though correct in theory, may yet be improperly shaped and unfit for the part it is to play in the general scheme of manufacture.

The conditions here involved are changeable. What is good design in this decade may be bad in the next. In this light the designer must be a close student of the signs of the times; he must follow the march of progress, closely applying existing resources, conditions, and facilities, otherwise he cannot produce up-to-date designs. The introduction of new raw materials, the cheapening of production of others, the changing of shop methods, the use of special machinery, the opening of new markets, the development of new motive agents, — all these and many others are constantly demanding some modification in design to meet competition.

Illustrative of this, note the change which has been wrought by the development of electric power, the rise and decline of the bicycle business, the present manufacture of automobiles, the last named especially with reference to the development of the small motive unit, the gasolene engine, the steam engine, etc. The design of much machinery has been materially changed to meet the exacting demands of these new enterprises.

Practical modifications of design necessary to meet the limitations of construction in the pattern shop, foundry, and machine shop are of daily application in the designer's work. He must keep in his mind's eye at all times the workmen and the processes they use to create his designs in metal in the shop.

"How can this be made?" "Can it be made at all?" "Can it be made cheaply?" "Will it be simple in operation after it is made?" "Can it be readily removed for repair?" "Can it be lubricated?" "How can it be put in place?" "How can it be gotten out?" "Will it be made in small quantities or large?" "Will it sell as a special or standard machine?" etc., etc.

The consideration of such questions as these is a practical necessity as a business matter. No other feature affects the design of machinery more, perhaps; for designs which cannot be built as business propositions are no designs at all.

The student, it is true, may not have the extended shop knowledge which is essential to this; but he can do much for himself by visiting shops whenever possible, getting hold of shop ways of doing things, and invariably treating his work as a business matter. Though a man may not be a pattern maker, molder, blacksmith, or machinist, yet he can soon gain ideas of the processes in each of these branches which will be of immense advantage to him in his designing work.

4. **Delineation and Specification.** This means the clear and concise representation of the design by mechanical drawings.

This is as much a part of the routine method of Machine Design as the other three points which have been discussed. The mere act of putting the results of mechanical thinking on paper is one of the greatest helps to force thinking machinery to systematic and definite action. A designer never thinks very long without drawing something, and the student must bring himself to feel that a drawing in its first sense is a means of helping his own thought, and must freely use it as such.

In its second and final sense, the drawing is an order and specification sheet from the designer to the workman. Design which stops short of exact, finished delineation in the form of working shop drawings is only half done. In fact the possibility of a piece being thus exactly drawn is often the crucial test of its feasibility as a part of a machine. It is easy to make general outlines, but it is not so easy to get down to finished detail. It is safe to say that there is no one thing productive of more trouble, delay and embarrassment, and waste of time and money in the shop, when there need be none from this cause, than a poor detail drawing. The efficiency of the process of design is not fully realized, and failures are often recorded where there should be success, merely because the indefiniteness permitted by the designer in the drawings naturally transmitted itself to the workman, and he in turn produced a part indefinite in form and operation.

The actual process of drawing in the development of a design may be outlined as follows:

Rough sketches merely representing ideas, not drawn to scale, are first made. These are of use only so far as the choice of mechanical ideas is concerned, and to carry preliminary dimensions.

Following these sketches, comes a layout to scale, of the favored sketch, a working out of the relative sizes and location of the parts. This drawing may be of a sketchy nature, carrying a principal dimension here and there to fix and control the detailed design. In this drawing the design is developed and general detail worked out. The minute detail of the individual parts is, however, left to the subsequent working drawing.

This layout drawing may now be turned over to an expert draftsman or detail designer, who picks out each part, makes an exact drawing of it, studying every little detail of its shape, and finally adds complete dimensions and specifications so that the workman is positively informed as to every point of its construction.

General drawings and cross sections constitute the last step in the process of complete delineation. These show the parts assembled in the complete machine. They also serve a valuable purpose to the draftsman in checking up the dimensions of the detail drawings. Errors which have escaped previous notice are often discovered in this way. The layout, mentioned above, is sometimes finished up into a general drawing; but it is safer to make an entirely new drawing, as changes in detail are often necessary after the layout is made.

The four fundamental lines of thought and action noted above may be summarized thus—**“analyze and theorize, modify and delineate.”** This is a maxim easy to remember, applicable to every problem in Machine Design, and always provides the answer to the question “What shall I do, how shall I proceed?” by pointing out the proper sequence in the course to be followed.

CONSTRUCTIVE MECHANICS.

Mechanics is a constructive science, its principles lying at the root of the design and operation of all machinery. It is usually taught, however, as an advanced mathematical subject; and the student gets his original conceptions of forces, moments, and beams in the abstract, before he realizes the constructive value of such conceptions. By “Constructive Mechanics” is meant the study of a machine purely from its constructive side, the viewing of the parts with respect to their “mechanics,” and satisfying the requirements of the same in form and arrangement.

The student may cultivate this habit of clear, mechanical perception by constantly noting the “mechanics” of the simple structures which he sees in his daily routine of work. Aside from machinery, in which the “mechanics” is often obscure, the world is full of simple examples of natural strength and symmetry, explainable by application of the principles of pure “mechanics.”

Posts and pillars are largest at their bases; overhanging brackets or arms are spread out at the fastening to the wall; heavy swinging gates are counter-balanced by a ponderous weight; the old fashioned well sweep carries its tray of stones at the end, adjusting the balance to a nicety; these are examples of things depending for their form and operation upon the principles of “mechanics.” The building of them involved “constructive mechanics,” and yet their constructor perhaps never heard of the science, using merely his natural sense of mechanical fitness Such simple reasoning is, however, Constructive Mechanics.

Forces, Moments, and Beams. Machines are nothing but a collection of (1) parts taking direct stress, or (2) parts acting as loaded beams. Forces acting *without* leverage produce direct stress on the sustaining part. Forces acting *with* leverage produce a moment; the sustaining member is a beam, and the stress therein depends on the theory of beams, as explained in "Mechanics."

An example of the first is the load on a rope, the force acting without leverage, and the rope therefore having a direct stress put upon it.

An example of the second is a push of the hand on the crank of a grindstone. A moment is produced about the hub of the crank; the arm of the crank is a beam, and the stress at any point of it may be found by the method of theory of beams.

Tension, Compression, and Torsion. The stress induced in the sustaining part, whether tensile, compressive, or torsional, is caused by the application of forces, either acting directly without leverage, or with leverage in the production of moments.

The forces applied from external sources are at constant war with the resisting forces due to the strength of the fibres of the material composing the machine members. The moments of the *external* forces are constantly exerted against and balanced by the moments of the *internal* resistance of the material. Hence, design, from a strength standpoint, is merely a balancing of internal strength against external force. In other words, we may in all cases write a sign of equality, place the applied effort on one side, the effective resistance on the other, and we shall have an equation, which, if capable of solution, will give the proper proportions of the parts considered.

External Force = Internal Resistance.

External Moment = Internal Moment of Resistance.

Expressed in terms of the "Mechanics:"

$$P = AS \qquad (1)$$

$$B \text{ or } T = \frac{SI}{c} \qquad (2)$$

In these formulas, which are perfectly general,

P=direct load in pounds.

A=area of effective material, in square inches.

S=working fibre stress of the material (tensile, compressive, or shearing), in pounds per square inch.

B or T=external moment (bending or torsional), in inch-pounds.

I=moment of inertia (direct or polar), of the resisting section.

c=distance of the most remote fibre of the resisting section from the neutral axis.

P may produce direct tensile, compressive, or shearing stress.

B may produce tensile or compressive stress, and requires use of direct moment of inertia in either case.

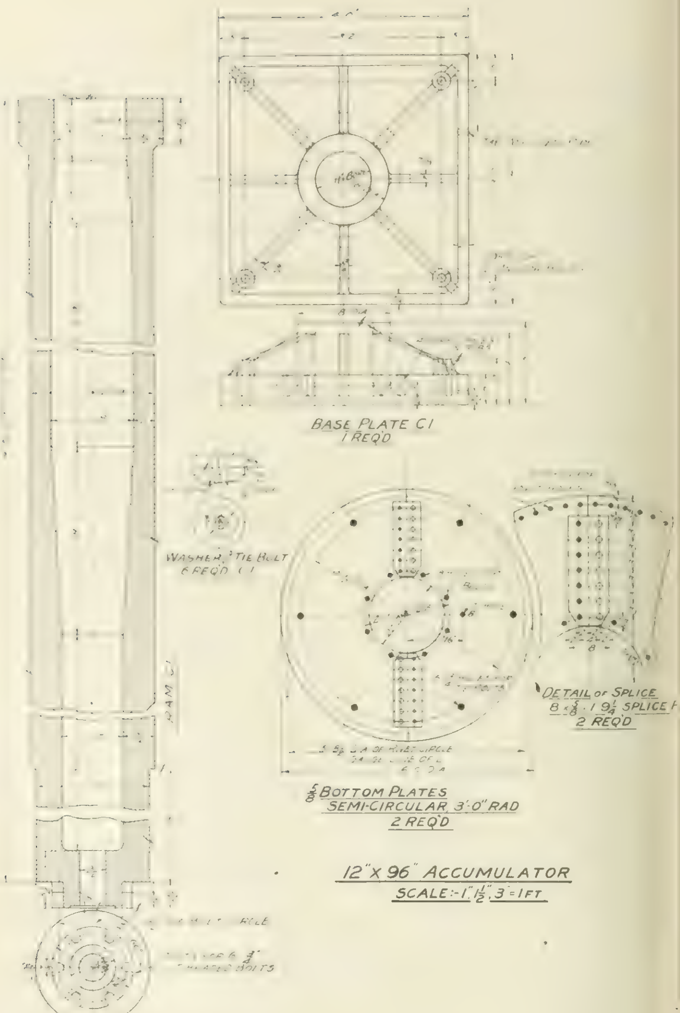
T produces shearing stress, and requires use of polar moment of inertia.

The origin of formula (1) is obvious, the assumption being that the fibre stress is equally distributed to every particle in the area "A."

The development of formula (2) is given in any text-book in Mechanics. It requires the aid of the Calculus, however. Any good handbook gives values for both the direct moment of inertia and the polar moment of inertia for quite a large variety of sections, so that further reference is an easy matter for the student. These values are also obtained through the methods of the Calculus.

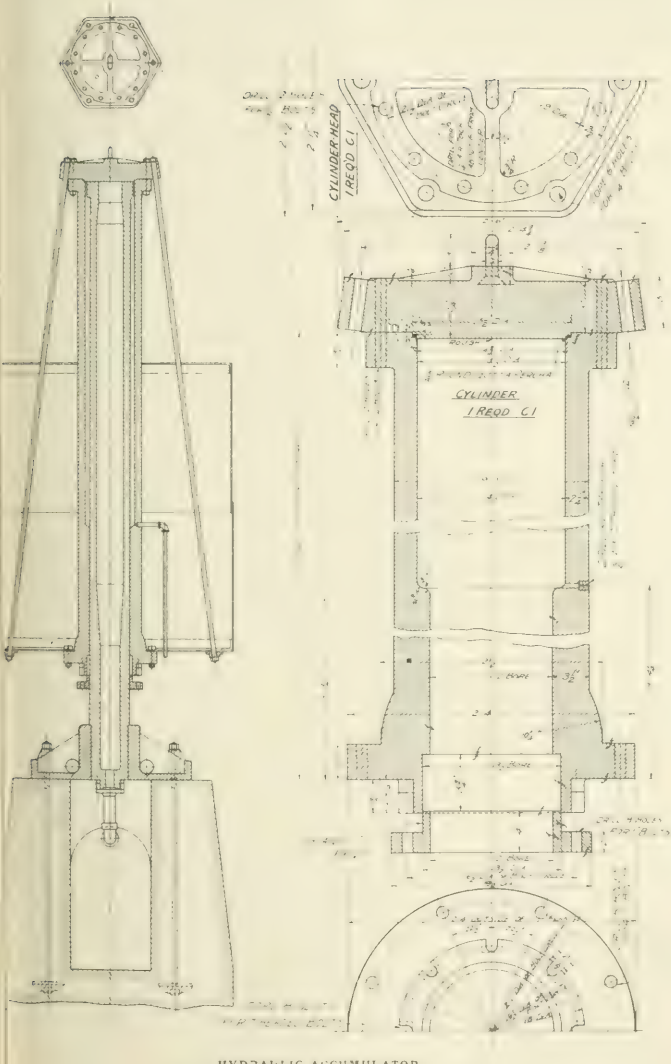
The reason for introducing these formulas at this time is to call the attention of the student especially to the fact of their universal and fundamental use in all problems concerning the strength of machine parts. Nearly every computation may be reduced to or expanded from these two simple equations. Many complex combinations occur, of course, which will not permit simple and direct application of these formulas, but the student will do well to place himself in perfect command of these two. Assuming that he is able to analyze forces, and compute the simple moment at the point where he wishes to find the strength of section, the rest is the mere insertion of the assumed working fibre stress of the material in the formula (2) above, and solution for the quantity desired.

When the case is one of combined stress, the relation becomes more complicated and difficult of analysis and solution. The most common case is where bending is combined with torsion, as in the case of a shaft transmitting power, and at the same time loaded transversely between bearings. In fact there are very few cases of shafts in machines, which, at some part of their length, do not have this combined stress. In this case the method of procedure is to find the simple bending moment and the simple torsional moment separately, in the ordinary way. Then the theory of elasticity furnishes us with a formula for an equivalent bending or an equivalent torsional moment which is supposed to produce the same effect upon the fibres of the material as the combined



HYDRAULIC ACCUMULATOR

Detail Drawing to be used with Figure on Opposite Page



HYDRAULIC ACCUMULATOR
Assembled Drawing with Details on the Same Sheet

action of the two simple moments acting together. In other words, the separate moments combined in action, being impossible of solution in that form, are reduced to an equivalent simple moment and the solution then becomes the same as for the previous case.

These equivalent equations are given below, the subscript "e" being added to express separation from the simple moment:

$$B_e = \frac{B}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{B^2+T^2} \qquad (3)$$

$$T_e = B + \sqrt{B^2+T^2} \qquad (4)$$

B_e and T_e, found from these equations, are the external moments, and are to be equated to the internal moments of resistance of the section precisely as if they were simple bending or torsional moments. Either may be used. For shafts (4) is generally used, being the simpler of the two in form.

FRICTION AND LUBRICATION.

The parts of a machine which have no relative motion with regard to each other are not dependent upon lubrication of their surfaces for the proper performance of their functions. In cases where relative motion does occur, as between a planer bed and its ways, a shaft and its bearing, or a driving screw and its nut, friction, and consequent resistance to motion, will inevitably occur. Heat will be generated, and cutting or scoring of the surfaces will take place if the surfaces are allowed to run together dry.

This difficulty, which exists with all materials, cannot be overcome, for it is a result of roughness of surface, characteristic of the material even when highly finished. The problem of the designer, then, is to take conditions as he finds them, and, as he cannot change the physical characteristics of materials, so choose those which are to rub together in the operation of the machine that friction will be reduced to the lowest possible limit. Now it fortunately happens that there are certain agents like oil and graphite, which seem to fill up the hollows in the surface of a solid material, and which themselves have very little friction on other substances. Hence, if a machine permits by its design an automatic supply of these lubricating agents to all surfaces having motion between them, friction may be reduced to the lowest limit.

If this full supply of lubricant be secured, and the parts still heat and cut, then the fault may be traced to other causes, such as springy surfaces, localization of pressure, or insufficient radiating surface to carry away the heat of friction as fast as it is generated.

Lubricating agents are of a nature running from the solid graphite form to a thick grease, then to a heavy dark oil, and finally to a thin, fluid oil flowing as freely as water. The solid and heavy lubricants are applicable to heavily loaded places where the pressure would squeeze out the lighter oils. Grease, forced between the surfaces by compression grease cups, is an admirable lubricator for heavy machinery under severe service. High-speed and accurate machinery, lightly loaded, requires a thin oil, as the fits would not allow room for the heavier lubricants to find their way to the desired spot. The ideal condition in any case is to have a film of lubricant always between the surfaces in contact, and it is this condition at which the designer is always aiming in his lubricating devices.

Oil ways and channels should be direct, ample in size, readily accessible for cleaning, and distributing the oil by natural flow over the full extent of the surface. Hidden and remote bearings must be reached by pipes, the mouths of which should be clearly indicated and accessible to the operator of the machine. Such pipes must be straight, if possible, and readily cleaned.

There is one practical principle affecting the design of methods of lubrication of a machine which should be borne in mind. This is, "Neglect and carelessness by the operator *must* be provided for." It is of no use to say that the ruination of a surface or hidden bearing is due to neglect by the operator, if the means for such lubrication are not perfectly obvious. This is "locking the door after the horse is stolen." The designer has not done his duty until he has made the scheme of lubrication so plain that every part *must* receive its proper supply of oil, except by gross and willful negligence, for which there can be no possible just excuse.

WORKING STRESSES AND STRAINS.

Some persons object to the use of these terms, as one is frequently used for the other, and misunderstanding results. This is doubtless true; but the student may as well learn the true relation of the terms once for all, because he will frequently run across them in his reading and reference work, and should interpret them rightly. The strict relation of the two is as follows:

Stress is the internal force in a piece resisting the external force applied to it. A weight of ten pounds hanging on a rope produces a *stress* of ten pounds in the rope.

Strain is the change of shape, or deformation, in a piece resisting an external force applied to it. If the above weight of ten pounds stretches the rope $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, the *strain* is $\frac{1}{4}$ inch.

Unit stress is stress per unit area, e. g., per square inch.

Unit strain is strain per unit length, e. g., per inch length.

In the above case, if the rope were $\frac{1}{2}$ square inch in area and 30 inches long, the unit stress, or intensity of stress, is $10 \div \frac{1}{2} = 20$ pounds per square inch; the unit strain is $\frac{1}{4} \div 30 = \frac{1}{120}$ inch per inch.

When stress is induced in a piece, the strain is practically proportional to the stress for all values of the stress below the elastic limit of the material; and when the external load is removed the strain will entirely disappear, or the recovering power of the material will restore the piece to the original length.

Illustrating by the case above, on the supposition that the elastic limit has not been reached by the stress of 20 pounds per square inch, if the load of 10 pounds were taken off, the $\frac{1}{4}$-inch strain would disappear and the rope return to its original length; if the load were changed to $\frac{1}{2}$ of 10 pounds, or 5 pounds, the strain would be $\frac{1}{2}$ of $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, or $\frac{1}{8}$ inch.

Now it is found that if we wish a piece to last in service for a long time without danger of breakage, we must not permit it to be stressed anywhere near the elastic limit value. If we do, although it will probably not break at once, it is in a dangerous condition, and not well suited to its requirements as a machine member. The technical name for this weakening effect is "fatigue." It is further found that the fatigue due to this repeated stress is reached at a lower limit when the stress is alternating in character than when it is not. In other words, if we first pull on a piece and then push on it, we shall first have the piece in tension and then in compression; this alternation of stress repeated to near the elastic limit of the material will fatigue it, or wear out the fibres, and it will finally fail. If, however, we first pull on the piece with the same force as before, and then let go, we shall first have the piece in tension and then entirely relieved; such repetition of stress will finally "fatigue" the material, but not so quickly as in the first case. Experiments indicate that it may take twice as many applications in the latter case as in the former.

The working stress of materials permissible in machines is based on the above facts. The breaking strength divided by a liberal factor of safety will not necessarily give a desirable working stress. The question to be answered is, "Will the assumed working fibre stress permit an indefinite number of applications of the load without fatiguing the material?"

Hence we see that the same material may be safely used under different assumptions of working stress. For example, a rotating shaft, heavily loaded between bearings, acts as a beam which in each revolution is having its particles subjected, first to a maximum tensile stress, and then to a maximum compressive stress. This is obviously a very different stress from that which the same piece would receive if it were a pin in a bridge truss. In the former we have a case where the stress on each particle reverses at each revolution, while in the latter we have merely the same stress recurring at intervals, but never becoming of the opposite character. For ordinary steel, a value of 8,000 would be reasonable in the former case, while in the latter it may be much higher with safety, perhaps nearly double.

From the facts stated above, it is evident that exact values for working fibre stress cannot be assumed with certainty and applied broadly in all cases. If the elastic limit of the material is definitely known we can base our working value quite surely on that.

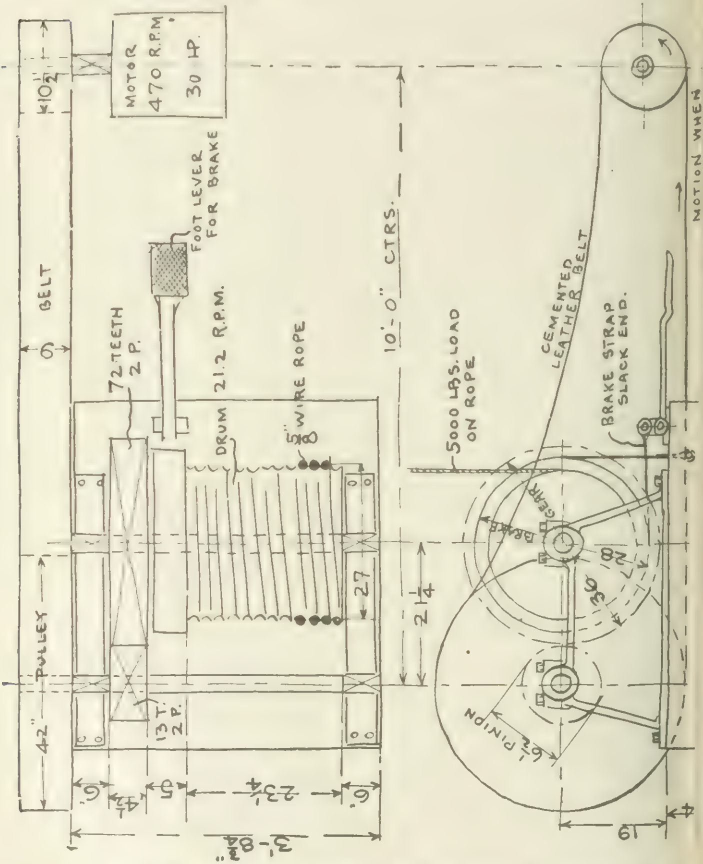
With but a general knowledge of the elastic limit, ordinary steel is good for from 12,000 to 15,000 pounds per square inch non-reversing stress, and 8,000 to 10,000 reversing stress. Cast iron is such an uncertain metal on account of its variable structure that stresses are always kept low, say from 3,000 to 4,000 for non-reversing stress, and 1,500 to 2,500 for reversing stress.

With these values as a guide, and the special conditions controlling each case carefully studied, reasonable limits may be assigned for working stress, not only of steels, various grades of cast iron, and mixtures of the same, but of other alloys, brass, bronze, etc. Gun metal, semi-steel, and bronze are intermediate in strength between cast iron and steel. Data on the strength of materials are available in any of the handbooks, and should be consulted freely by the student. They will be found somewhat conflicting, but will assist the judgment in coming to a conclusion.

Application to Practical Case. In actual practice the only information which the designer has, upon which to base his design, is the object to be accomplished. He must choose or originate suitable devices, develop the arrangement of the parts, make his own assumptions regarding the operation of the machine, then *Analyze and Theorize, Modify and Delineate* each detail as he meets it.

This, it will be found, is a very different matter from taking some familiar piece of machinery, such as a pulley, or a shaft, or a gear, as an isolated case, the load being definitely given, and proceeding with the design. This is easily done, but is only half the problem, for machine parts, such as pulleys, gears, and shafts, do not confront the designer tagged or labeled with the conditions they are to meet. He is to provide parts to meet the specific conditions, and it is as much a part of his designing method to know how to attack the design of a machine as it is to know how to design the parts in detail after the attack has reduced the members to definitely loaded structures. The whole process must be gone through, the preliminary sketches, calculations, and layout, all of which precede the detail design and working drawings; and no step of the process can be omitted.

It is for this reason that the present case used for illustration is carried out quite thoroughly. The student should make himself familiar with every step of the designing method as applied to this simple case of design. More complex problems, handled in the same way, will simplify themselves; and when the point is reached where confidence exists to take hold of the design of any machine, however unfamiliar its object may be, or however involved its probable detail appears, the student has become the true designer. It is the knowing how to attack a problem, to start definite work on it, to go ahead boldly, confident that the method applied will produce results, that gives command of the design of machinery and wins engineering success.



The special case which has been chosen to illustrate the application of the principles stated in the foregoing pages is ideal, in that it does not represent any actual machine at present in operation. Probably builders of hoisting machinery have devices which would improve the machine as shown. In detail, as well as arrangement, they could doubtless make criticism as manufacturers. The arrangement as shown is merely intended to bring out in simplest form the common elements of transmission machinery as parts of some definite machine, instead of as isolated details. The design is one entirely possible, practical, and mechanical, but special attention has been paid to simplicity in order to enable the student to follow the method closely, for the *method* is the chief thing for him to acquire.

The student is expected to refer constantly to Part II for a more formal and general discussion of the simple machine elements involved in the case considered. Part II is intended to be a simplified and condensed reference book, carried out in accordance with the method of machine design as specified in Part I. The student should not wait until he has completed the study of this part before taking up Part II, for the latter is intended for use with the former in the solution of the problems.

In the case of power transmission about to be studied, the running, conversational method employed assumes that the student is in possession of the matter in Part II on the subject considered. Thus, in the design of the pulley, reference to the subject of "Pulleys" in Part II is necessary to follow the train of calculation; in designing the gear, consult "Gears;" in calculating size of shafts, see "Shafts," etc., etc.

Problem. A machine is to be designed to be set on the floor of a building to drive a wire rope falling from the overhead sheaves of an elevator or hoist. Without regard to details of this overhead arrangement, for its design would be a separate problem, suppose that the data for the rope are as follows:

Load on rope........................	5,000 pounds.
Speed of rope........................	150 feet per minute.
Length of rope to be reeled in......	200 feet.

We shall further assume that the driving power is to be an electric motor belted to the machine, that the required speed reduction can be satisfactorily obtained by a single pair of pulleys and one pair of gears, and that a plain band brake is to be applied to the drum.

With this data we shall proceed to work out the detail design of the machine.

Preliminary Sketch. The first thing to do is to sketch roughly the proposed arrangement of the machine.

This might appear like Fig. 1 except that it would have no dimensions in addition to the data given above. If the scheme seems suitable, the next step is to make such preliminary calculations as will give further data, exact or closely approximate sizes, to be put at once on the sketch, to outline the future design.

Rope and Drum. Referring to tables of strength of wire rope (Kent's Pocket Book gives the manufacturers' list), we find that a ⅝ inch cast-steel rope will carry 5,000 pounds safely, and that the proper size of drum to avoid excessive bending of the rope around it is 27 inches diameter.

Allowing $\frac{1}{8}$ inch between the coils as the rope winds on the drum, the pitch of coil will be $\frac{3}{4}$ inch as shown in sketch, Fig. 2. The length of one complete coil is, practically, $\frac{27 \times 3.1416}{12}$ $= 7.07$ feet. To provide for 200 feet will require $\frac{200}{7.07} = 28+$ coils. To be safe, let us provide for 30 coils, for which a length of drum $(30 \times \frac{3}{4}) + \frac{3}{4} = 23\frac{1}{4}$ inches is required.

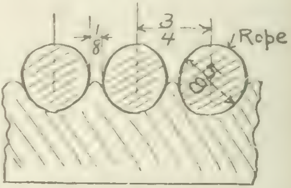


Fig. 2.

The space for brake strap may be assumed at 5 inches, and the thickness to provide necessary strength determined later in the design. The frictional surface of the strap may be of basswood blocks, say $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches thick, screwed to the metal band. The diameter of brake surface may be 28 inches.

Driving Gears. The size of drum gear evidently depends upon the method of fastening to the drum, and, other things being equal, should be kept as small as possible. One way would be to key the gear on the outside of the drum, another to bolt the gear to the end of the drum. The latter has the advantage that a standard gear pattern can be used with the slight change of addition of bolt flange on the arms. This makes a simple, direct, and strong drive, the bolts being in shear.

Sketching this arrangement as the preferred one (Fig. 2A), it is evident that the diameter of the gear should be at least as large as the drum in order to keep the tooth load down to a reasonable figure. On the other hand, if made too large, it spreads out the machine and destroys its compactness. As a diameter of 36 inches is not excessive, let us assume this, and see if a desirable proportion of gear tooth can be found to carry the load.

For a pitch diameter of 36 inches there will be a theoretical load of $\frac{5,000\times 27}{36}=3,750$ pounds at the pitch line. But the load on the tooth must not only impart a pull of 5,000 pounds to the rope, but must overcome friction between the gear teeth in action, also between the drum shaft and its bearings. Assuming the efficiency between the rope and tooth load to be 95 per cent, the net load, therefore, which the tooth must take is $\frac{3,750}{.95}=3,947$, say 4,000 pounds.

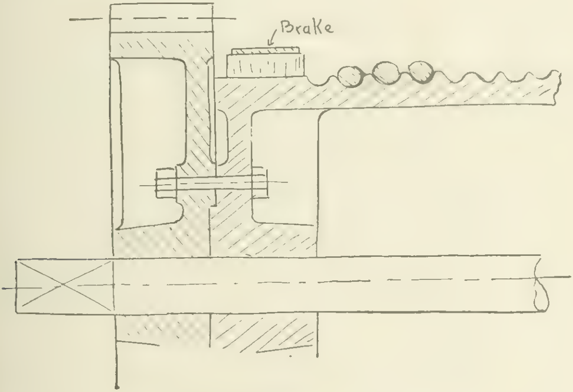


Fig. 2A.

Assuming involute teeth, and applying the "Lewis" formula, (Part II, "Gears"):

$$W = s \times p \times f \times y$$

$$4{,}000 = 6{,}000 \times p \times f \times .116$$

$$p \times f = \frac{4{,}000}{6{,}000 \times .116} = 5.7 \text{ inches}$$

$W = 4{,}000$
$s = 6{,}000$
$y = .116$ (number of teeth assumed at 75)
$p =$ circular pitch
$f =$ face of gear

Let $f = 3\,p$ (a reasonable proportion for machine-cut teeth).

Then $3 \times p^2 = 5.7$

$$p^2 = 1.9$$

$$p = \sqrt{1.9} = 1.378 \text{ inches}$$

The diametral pitch corresponding to this is

$$\frac{3.1416}{1.378} = 2.28$$

which is just between the regular standard pitches, 2 and $2\frac{1}{2}$, for which stock cutters are made. To be safe, let us take the coarser pitch, which is 2. The circular pitch corresponding to this is $\frac{3.1416}{2} = \mathbf{1.57}$, and making the face about three times the circular pitch gives

$$3 \times 1.57 = 4.71, \text{ say } 4\tfrac{1}{2} \text{ inches.}$$

The number of teeth in the gear is then $36 \times 2 = 72$. Referring to the value assumed for the tooth factor in calculation above, it is seen that y was based on 75 as the number of teeth, which is near enough to 72 to avoid the necessity of further checking the result.

The pinion to mesh with this gear should be as small as possible in order to get a high-speed ratio between pinion shaft and drum, otherwise an excessive ratio will be required in the pulleys, making the large one of inconvenient size. Small pinions have the teeth badly undercut and therefore weak, 13 teeth being the lowest limit usually considered desirable, for that reason. Choosing that number, we have a pitch diameter of $\frac{13}{2} = 6.5$ in., which is probably ample to take the shaft and key, and still leave sufficient stock under the tooth for strength. If made of cast iron, however, the pinion teeth, on account of the low number, will be narrower at the root than those of the gear of 72 teeth. **Yet it** was upon the basis of the latter that the pitch was chosen, for it will be remembered that the value of y in the formula was taken at .116. Hence the pinion will be weaker than the gear unless we make it of stronger material than cast iron, of which the large gear is supposed to be made. Steel lends itself very readily to this requirement; and in practice, pinions of less than 20 teeth are usually made of this material, hence we shall specify the pinion to be of steel.

Pulleys. The question now is whether or not we can get a suitable ratio in the pulleys without making the large one of inconvenient size, or giving the motor too slow speed for an economical proportion.

Suppose we limit ourselves to a diameter of 42 inches for the large pulley, and try a ratio of 4 to 1; this will give a diameter for the small pulley of $\frac{42}{4}=10\frac{1}{2}$ inches. We shall then have

Total ratio between drum and motor........ $\frac{72}{13}\times 4=\frac{288}{13}=22.2$

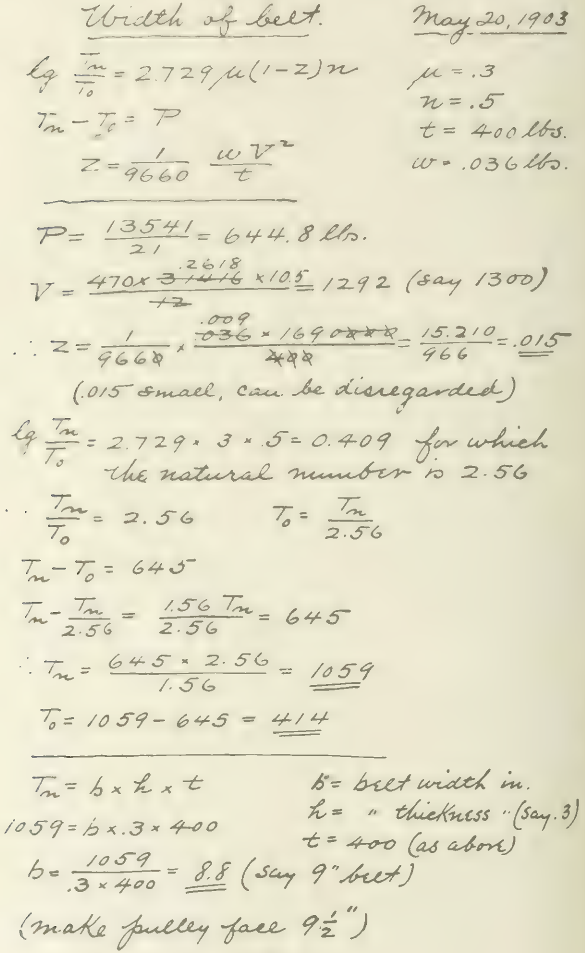
Rev. per min. of drum to give 150 f. p. m. of rope .... $\frac{150}{7.07}=21.2$

Rev. per min. of motor.....................$22.2\times 21.2=470$

Horse-power of motor at 80 per cent efficiency $\frac{150\times 5{,}000}{33{,}000\times .80}=30$

A 30 H. P. motor running 470 r. p. m. would be classed as a slow speed motor and would be a heavier machine and cost more than one of higher speed. It will be noticed, however, that the diameter of the small pulley is already quite reduced, and it is hardly desirable to decrease it still further. Neither can we increase the large pulley, as we have already set the limit at 42 inches. Hence, for our present problem we cannot improve matters much without increasing the size of the large gear, which is undesirable, or putting in another pair of gears, which is contrary to the conditions of the problem. As such a motor is perfectly reasonable, we shall assume it to be chosen for the purpose.

In commercial practice it would be well to pick out some standard make of motor of the required horse-power, note the speed as specified by the makers, and then, if possible, suit the ratio in the machine to this speed. It is always best to use standard machinery, if possible, both from the standpoint of first cost, as well



Width of belt. May 20, 1903

$\lg \frac{T_n}{T_0} = 2.729\,\mu(1-z)n$

$T_n - T_0 = P$

$z = \frac{1}{9660}\,\frac{wV^2}{t}$

$\mu = .3$

$n = .5$

$t = 400$ lbs.

$w = .036$ lbs.

$P = \frac{13541}{21} = 644.8$ lbs.

$V = \frac{470 \times \overset{.2618}{\cancel{3.1416}} \times 10.5}{\cancel{12}} = 1292$ (say 1300)

$\therefore z = \frac{1}{966\cancel{0}} \times \frac{\overset{.009}{\cancel{.036}} \times 169\cancel{0000}}{\cancel{400}} = \frac{15.210}{966} = \underline{\underline{.015}}$

(.015 small, can be disregarded)

$\lg \frac{T_n}{T_0} = 2.729 \times 3 \times .5 = 0.409$ for which the natural number is 2.56

$\therefore \frac{T_n}{T_0} = 2.56 \qquad T_0 = \frac{T_n}{2.56}$

$T_n - T_0 = 645$

$T_n - \frac{T_n}{2.56} = \frac{1.56\,T_n}{2.56} = 645$

$\therefore T_n = \frac{645 \times 2.56}{1.56} = \underline{\underline{1059}}$

$T_0 = 1059 - 645 = \underline{\underline{414}}$

$T_n = b \times h \times t$

$1059 = b \times .3 \times 400$

$b = \frac{1059}{.3 \times 400} = \underline{\underline{8.8}}$ (say 9" belt)

b = belt width in.

h = " thickness " (say .3)

t = 400 (as above)

(make pulley face $9\frac{1}{2}$")

Fig. 3.

as ease of replacing worn parts. Machinery ordered special is expensive in first cost of designing, patterns, and tools, and extra spare parts for emergency orders are not often kept on hand.

Tabulation of Torsional Moments. For future reference, it is desirable at this point to tabulate the torsional moment, or torque, about each of the three shaft axes, assuming reasonable efficiencies for the various parts, as follows:

Efficiency between drum and gear tooth........	95 per cent
Efficiency between drum and pinion shaft...........	90 per cent
Efficiency between drum and motor shaft	80 per cent

TABLE OF TORSIONAL MOMENTS.

Axis.	Inch Lbs. Torque at 100 Per Cent Efficiency.	Inch Lbs. Torque, Efficiency as Above.
Drum	$5{,}000\times\frac{27}{2}$ .... $=67{,}500$	$\frac{67{,}500}{.95}=71{,}052$
Pinion......	$5{,}000\times\frac{27}{2}\times\frac{13}{72}$ ...... $=12{,}187$	$\frac{12{,}187}{.90}=13{,}541$
Motor	$5{,}000\times\frac{27}{2}\times\frac{13}{72}\times\frac{10.5}{42}=3{,}047$	$\frac{3{,}047}{.80}=3{,}809$

This means that the motor develops a torque of 3,809 inch-pounds delivering to pinion shaft 13,541 inch-pounds, and to drum 71,052 inch-pounds.

Width of Belt. The page of calculation for belt width is reproduced in Fig. 3.

The calculation as given is strictly scientific, based on the working strength of a cemented joint ($f=400$ lbs. per square inch). This is a favorable situation for the use of a cemented joint, because it is easy to provide means of adjusting the belt tension by placing the motor on a sliding base. Otherwise a laced joint could be used, requiring relacing when the belt slackens through its stretch in service. Under the assumption that a double *laced* belt is used, the empirical formula below is one often applied:

$$\text{H. P.}=\frac{w\times V}{540}=\frac{w\times 1{,}300}{540}=30$$

$$\text{This gives } w=\frac{540\times 30}{1{,}300}=12{\cdot}4 \text{ inches (say 12 inches).}$$

It should be remembered that this value is purely empirical; it applies to a *laced* joint, and could not be expected to check the value of 9 inches obtained by the first computation for a cemented joint. It is fairly in proportion. For the quite definite service required of the belt in the present case, the width of 9 inches is doubtless sufficient, considering the cemented joint.

Length of Bearings. Considerable latitude in choice of length of bearings is permissible, especially in such slow-speed machinery. There is probably little danger from heating, and the question then becomes one of wear. It is better in such cases as the one in question, to choose boldly a length which seems to be reasonable and proceed with the design on that basis, even if the length be later found out of proportion to the shaft diameter, than to waste too much time in the preliminary calculation over the exact determination of this question. Probably in most cases of commercial practice the existence of patterns, or some other practical consideration, will decide the limits of length.

In the present instance it seems reasonable that a length of 6 inches would fill the requirement for the worst case, that of the drum shaft, and it is obvious that the bearings for the pinion shaft would naturally be of the same length on account of being cast on the same bracket, and faced at the same setting of the planer tool.

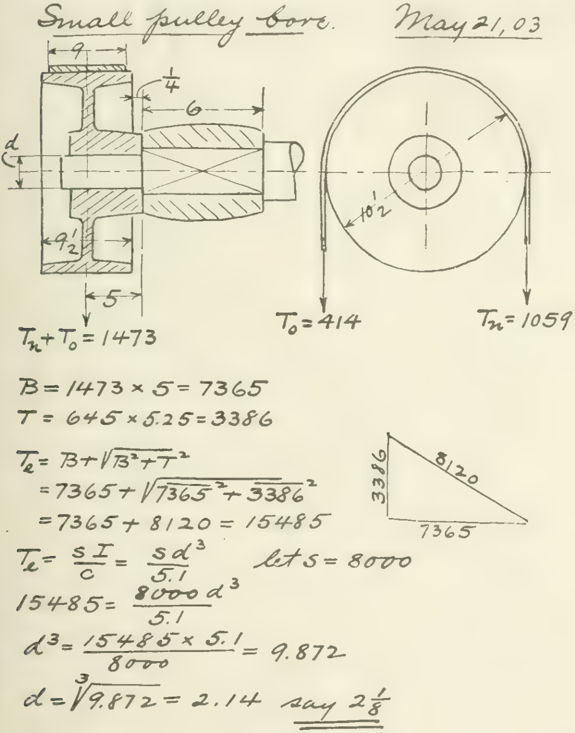
Height of Centers. The large pulley should naturally swing clear of the floor. This will require, say, a total height of 23 inches, out which we may take 4 inches for the base, leaving 19 inches as the height, center of bearing to base of bracket.

Data on Sketch. The data as found above should now be put on the sketch previously made; it will then have the appearance shown in Fig. 1.

This sketch is now in form to control all the subsequent detail design, and it is expected that the figured dimensions as shown can be maintained. It is impossible to predict this with positiveness, however, as in the working out of the minor details certain changes may be found desirable, when, of course, they should be made.

The shaft sizes do not appear on this sketch, hence before proceeding farther the several shaft diameters must be calculated.

Sizes of Shafts. The calculations of the shaft diameters are good instances of systematic engineering computations, hence they are reproduced in the exact form in which they were made. The student should learn a valuable lesson in making and recording calculations by following these carefully. Note that each set of figures is independent, both in the statement of given data, as well as in the actual computation. Observe how easy it would be for the author of these figures or anyone else to check them even after



Small pulley bore. May 21, 03

$T_n + T_o = 1473$

$B = 1473 \times 5 = 7365$

$T = 645 \times 5.25 = 3386$

$T_e = B + \sqrt{B^2 + T^2}$

$= 7365 + \sqrt{7365^2 + 3386^2}$

$= 7365 + 8120 = 15485$

$T_e = \frac{sI}{c} = \frac{sd^3}{5.1}$ let $s = 8000$

$15485 = \frac{8000\, d^3}{5.1}$

$d^3 = \frac{15485 \times 5.1}{8000} = 9.872$

$d = \sqrt[3]{9.872} = 2.14$ say $2\frac{1}{8}$

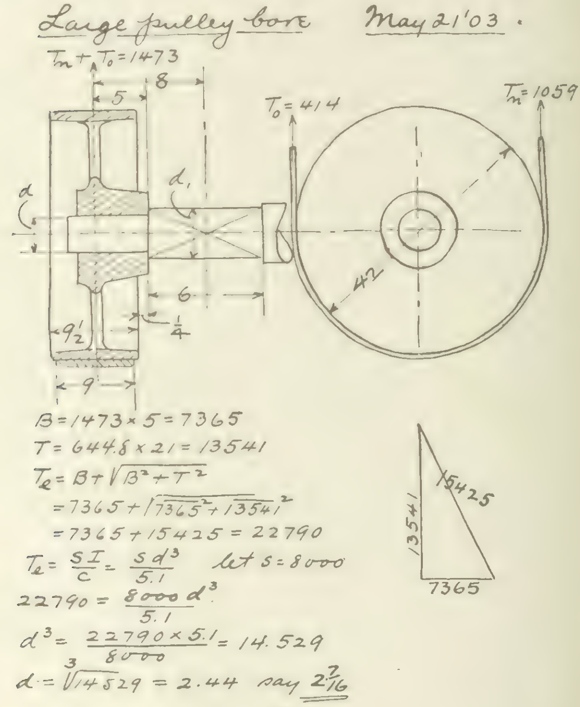
Fig. 4.

a long lapse of time. If the machine should unexpectedly fail in service the figures are always available to prove or disprove theoretical weakness. The right triangles merely indicate that the value of $\sqrt{B^2+T^2}$ was found by the graphical method suggested in

Part II, "Shafts," the figures being put on the triangle as a simple and direct way of recording both process and result.

Attention is especially called to the fact that in the pinion shaft the size is changed for each piece upon the shaft. This is

Large pulley bore May 21'03.



$B = 1473 \times 5 = 7365$

$T = 644.8 \times 21 = 13541$

$T_e = B + \sqrt{B^2 + T^2}$

$= 7365 + \sqrt{7365^2 + 13541^2}$

$= 7365 + 15425 = 22790$

$T_e = \frac{SI}{c} = \frac{Sd^3}{5.1}$ let $S = 8000$

$22790 = \frac{8000\, d^3}{5.1}$

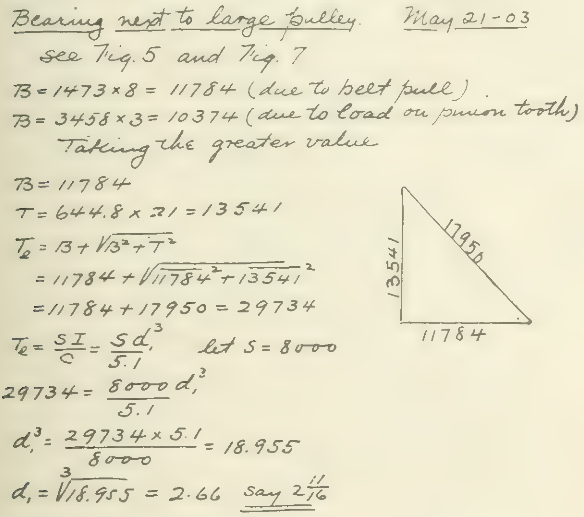
$d^3 = \frac{22790 \times 5.1}{8000} = 14.529$

$d = \sqrt[3]{14.529} = 2.44$ say $2\frac{7}{16}$

Fig. 5.

done partly because it is desired to show the student that the shaft at each of these points should be theoretically of different size. It is also done because as a practical feature of construction it is a good plan to change the size when the fit changes, partly for reasons of production in the shop, partly for ease in slipping pieces freely endwise on the shaft until they reach their proper fit and location in the assembling of the machine.

This should not be taken as an absolute requirement in any sense. A straight shaft would be satisfactory in the present case; but the shouldered shaft is a little better construction, in a mechanical sense, and does not cost much more. Hence it is used. For the drum the straight shaft seems to answer the requirement well enough.



Bearing next to large pulley. May 21-03

see Fig. 5 and Fig. 7

$B = 1473 \times 8 = 11784$ (due to belt pull).

$B = 3458 \times 3 = 10374$ (due to load on pinion tooth)

Taking the greater value

$B = 11784$

$T = 644.8 \times 21 = 13541$

$T_e = B + \sqrt{B^2 + T^2}$

$= 11784 + \sqrt{11784^2 + 13541^2}$

$= 11784 + 17950 = 29734$

$T_e = \frac{SI}{c} = \frac{S d_1^3}{5.1}$ let $S = 8000$

$29734 = \frac{8000 d_1^3}{5.1}$

$d_1^3 = \frac{29734 \times 5.1}{8000} = 18.955$

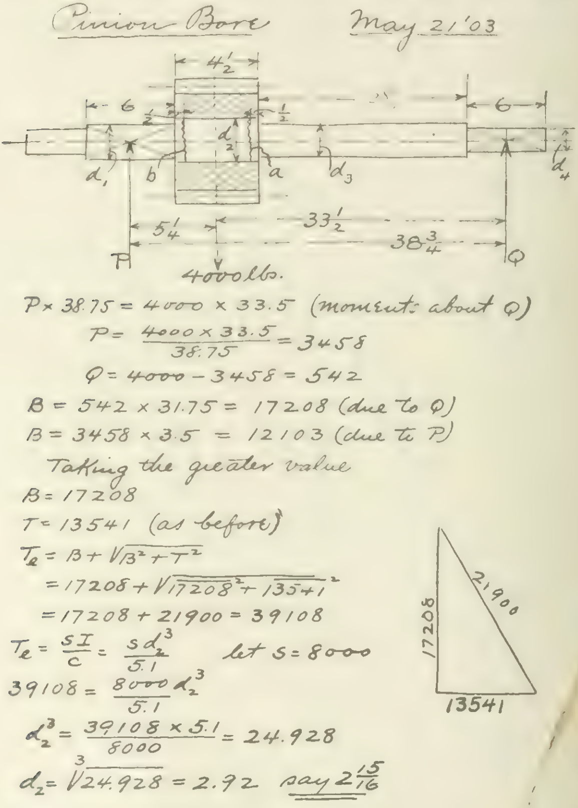
$d_1 = \sqrt[3]{18.955} = 2.66$ say $2\frac{11}{16}$

Fig. 6.

Small Pulley Bore. Fig 4.
Large Pulley Bore. Fig. 5.
Bearing Next to Large Pulley. Fig. 6.

The diameter, $2\frac{11}{16}$, as calculated, is based on the supposition that the greatest bending moment is caused by the belt pull on the overhanging pulley, that is, by the forces existing at the left-hand side of the center of the bearing.

But the pinion tooth load produces a heavy bending on the shaft in the bearing, the shaft in this case acting as a beam supported at the two bearings and having the tooth load applied as shown. If this latter effect be greater than the former, that is, if



$$P \times 38.75 = 4000 \times 33.5 \quad \text{(moment about } Q)$$

$$P = \frac{4000 \times 33.5}{38.75} = 3458$$

$$Q = 4000 - 3458 = 542$$

$$B = 542 \times 31.75 = 17208 \quad \text{(due to } Q)$$

$$B = 3458 \times 3.5 = 12103 \quad \text{(due to } P)$$

Taking the greater value

$$B = 17208$$

$$T = 13541 \quad \text{(as before)}$$

$$T_e = B + \sqrt{B^2 + T^2}$$

$$= 17208 + \sqrt{17208^2 + 13541^2}$$

$$= 17208 + 21900 = 39108$$

$$T_e = \frac{sI}{c} = \frac{sd_2^3}{5.1} \quad \text{let } s = 8000$$

$$39108 = \frac{8000 d_2^3}{5.1}$$

$$d_2^3 = \frac{39108 \times 5.1}{8000} = 24.928$$

$$d_2 = \sqrt[3]{24.928} = 2.92 \quad \text{say } 2\tfrac{15}{16}$$

Fig. 7.

the bending moment produced by the pinion tooth load be greater than the bending moment produced by the belt pull, then the diameter must be increased to satisfy the latter case. As is seen by the second calculation of Fig. 6, this is not the case, and the diameter stands at $2\frac{11}{16}$ as made.

Pinion Bore. Fig. 7. The pinion being a driving fit upon the shaft, reinforces the shaft to such an extent that it is hardly possible for the shaft to break off very far inside the face of the pinion; but it is quite possible that the metal of the pinion may give enough, or be a little free at the ends of the hole, so that the shaft may be broken off, say ½ inch inside the face. In this case, it may fail from the moment of the force at the left-hand bearing or of that at the right. It may fail then at (a) or (b), depending on which section has the greater bending moment. Trying both, it is seen by the calculation that the right-hand moment is the controlling one, and it, therefore, is used.

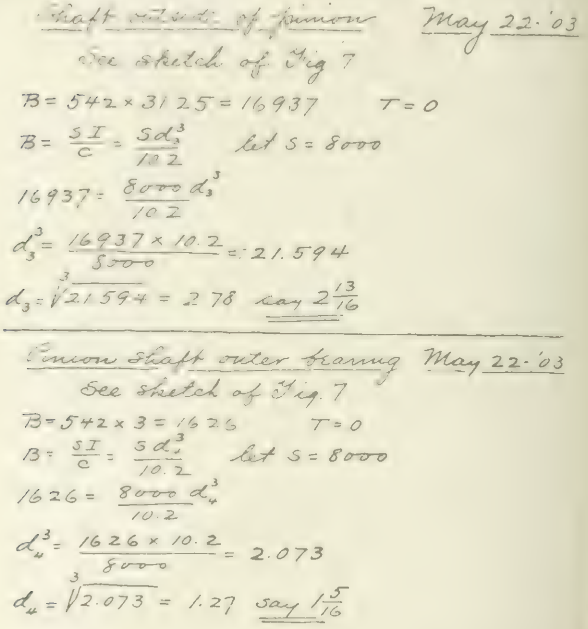
Shaft Outside of Pinion. Fig. 8. As there is no power transmitted through this portion of the shaft, there is no torsional moment in it, and the bending moment remains practically the same as inside the pinion.

The size figures about $2\frac{1}{2}$, but since there is no use in turning off material just to reduce the size to this, it is well to make it $2\frac{7}{8}$, or just smaller than the fit in the pinion.

Pinion Shaft Outer Bearing. Fig. 8. This diameter, of course, figures small, as there is no torsion in it, and the bending moment is not heavy. The practical question comes in, however, whether it is advisable to make the outer bracket different from the inner one just on account of this bearing. The commercial answer to this would probably be "No," hence the size as figured next to the pinion will be maintained ($2\frac{11}{16}$).

Drum Shaft. Fig. 9. In this case, as previously inferred, the simplest thing to do is to use a piece of straight cold-rolled steel, and make both bearings alike, the size being determined according to the worst case of loading which can occur as the rope travels from end to end of the drum. This case is evidently when the rope is at the end of its travel close to the brake, for at that time both the load on the rope and the load on the pinion tooth which is driving it are exerted upward, and produce the greatest reaction at the bearing next to the gear. The analysis of the forces for this condition is shown in Fig. 9.

Other conditions of loading would be when the brake is on and the tooth load relieved, but then the resultant of the brake strap tensions would be diagonally downward and would reduce



Shaft outside of pinion May 22·'03

See sketch of Fig 7

$B = 542 \times 31.25 = 16937 \qquad T = 0$

$B = \frac{SI}{C} = \frac{Sd_3^3}{10.2} \qquad \text{let } S = 8000$

$16937 = \frac{8000\, d_3^3}{10.2}$

$d_3^3 = \frac{16937 \times 10.2}{8000} = 21.594$

$d_3 = \sqrt[3]{21.594} = 2.78 \quad \text{say } 2\frac{13}{16}$

Pinion shaft outer bearing May 22-'03

See sketch of Fig. 7

$B = 542 \times 3 = 1626 \qquad T = 0$

$B = \frac{SI}{C} = \frac{Sd_4^3}{10.2} \qquad \text{let } S = 8000$

$1626 = \frac{8000\, d_4^3}{10.2}$

$d_4^3 = \frac{1626 \times 10.2}{8000} = 2.073$

$d_4 = \sqrt[3]{2.073} = 1.27 \quad \text{say } 1\frac{5}{16}$

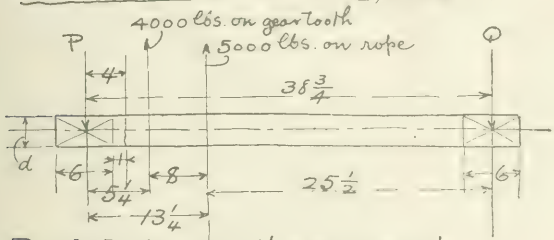
Fig. 8.

rather than add to the rope load. Again, when the rope is at the end of the drum farthest from the gear, the load on it and the load on the pinion teeth are both exerted upward as before, but the reaction cannot be as great as in the case of Fig. 9, because the tooth load is still concentrated at the other end of the shaft and produces a relatively small reaction at the rope end.

Preliminary Layout. Fig. 10. Proceeding now with the layout to scale, the detail of the parts may be worked out as completely as the scale of the drawing will permit. The work on this drawing may be of an unfinished, sketchy nature, but the measurements must be exact as far as they go, for this drawing is to serve as the reference sheet, from which all future detail is to be worked up.

In this layout may be worked out the sizes of the arms and hubs of pulleys and gears, the proportions of the drum and brake strap, and the general dimensions of the side brackets and the base. When the detail becomes too fine to work out to advantage on this drawing it may be worked out full size by a separate sketch, or left to be finished when it is regularly detailed. The preliminary layout, it should be remembered, is a service sheet only, a means of carrying along the design, and not intended for

Drum shaft May 22'03



$$P \times 38.75 = 5000 \times 25\tfrac{1}{2} + 4000 \times 33\tfrac{1}{2}$$

$$P = \frac{261500}{38.75} = 6748$$

$$B = 6748 \times 4 = 26992$$

$$B = \frac{SI}{c} = \frac{Sd^3}{10.2} \quad \text{let } S = 8000$$

$$26992 = \frac{8000\,d^3}{10.2}$$

$$d^3 = \frac{26992 \times 10.2}{8000} = 34.415$$

$$d = \sqrt[3]{34.415} = 3.25 \quad \underline{\underline{\text{say } 3\tfrac{1}{4}}}$$

Fig. 9.

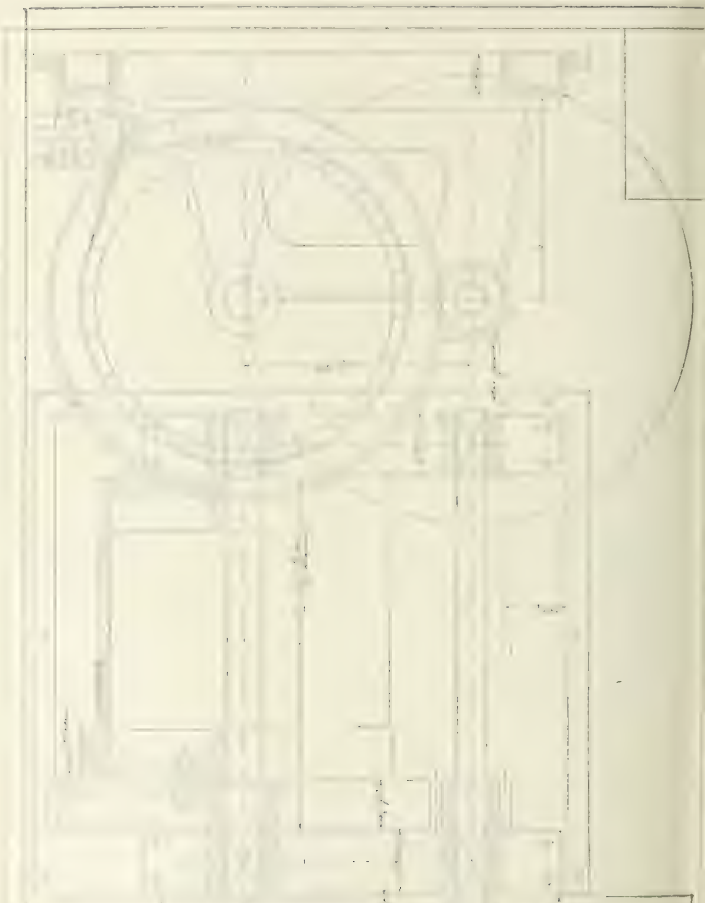


Fig. 10.

a finished drawing. The moment that the free use of the layout is impaired by trying to make too much of a drawing of it, its value is largely lost. A designer must have some place to try out his schemes and devices, and the layout drawing is the place to do it. This drawing may be recurred to at intervals in the progress of the design, details being filled in as they are worked out, as they may control the design of adjacent parts.

As the discussion of the design of each of the members involved in the present problem can be better taken up in connection with the detail drawing of each, it will be given there, rather than in connection with the layout, although many of the proportions thus discussed could be worked out directly from the latter.

Pulleys. Fig. 11. The analysis of the forces in the belt gives, according to the calculation of Fig. 3, a tension in the tight side of 1,059 pounds, and in the slack side 414 pounds. The difference of these, or 1,059—414=645 pounds, is transmitted to the pulley and produces the torque in the shaft. Of course in the small pulley the torque is transmitted from the motor through the pulley to the belt, but both cases are the same as far as the loading of the pulleys is concerned.

The only other force theoretically acting is the centrifugal force due to the speed of the pulley. This produces tension in the rim and arms, but for the low value of 1,300 feet per minute peripheral velocity in this case may be disregarded.

Considering the arms as beams loaded at the ends, and that one-half the whole number of arms take the load, and for convenience, figuring the size of the arms at the center of the pulley gives the following calculation for the large pulley:

$$\frac{645}{3}\times 21=\frac{S\times I}{c}=.0393\times 2{,}500\times h^3 \qquad \text{Let } S=2{,}500$$

" h=breadth of oval

" $.4h$=thickness of oval

$$h^3=\frac{4{,}515}{98.25}=46$$

$$h=\sqrt[3]{46}=3.6 \text{ (say 3.5)}$$

$$.4h=.4\times 3\ 5=1.4 \text{ (say 1 7-16)}$$

This is about all the theoretical figuring necessary on this pulley. The rim is made as thin as experience judges it capable of being cast; the arms are tapered to suit the eye, thus giving ample fastening to the rim to provide against shearing off the rim

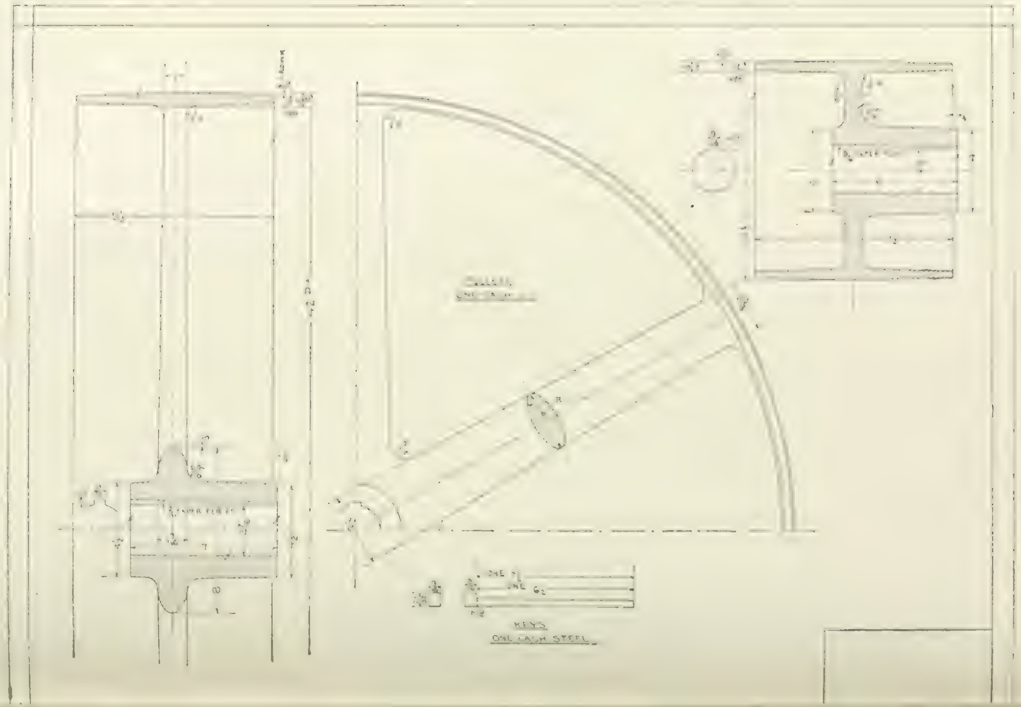


Fig. 11.

from the arms; generous fillets join the arms to both rim and hub; and the hub is given thickness to carry the key, and length enough to prevent tendency to rock on the shaft. Uncertain strains due to unequal cooling in the foundry mold may be set up in the arms and rim, but with careful pouring of the metal they should not be serious, and the low value chosen for the fibre stress allows considerable margin for strength.

The small pulley has the same forces to withstand as the large pulley, but on account of its small diameter there is not room enough for arms between the rim and the hub, hence it is made with a web. The web cannot be given any bending by the belt pull, the only tendency which exists in this case being a shearing where the web joins the hub. This shearing also exists throughout the web as well, but at other points farther from the center it is of less magnitude, and moreover, there is more area of metal to take it. The natural way to proportion the thickness of the web is to give it an intermediate thickness between that of the hub and rim, thus securing uniform cooling, and then figure the stress as a check. Making this value ⅞ inch gives a shearing area of ⅞ multiplied by the circumference of the hub, which is 3.1416 × 4 = 12.56. The shearing force at the hub is $\frac{645 \times 5.25}{2} = 1{,}693$ pounds. Equating the external force to the internal resistance

$$1{,}693 = \tfrac{7}{8} \times 12.56 \times S$$

$$S = \frac{1{,}693 \times 8}{7 \times 12.56} = 154 \text{ pounds per square inch (approx.)}.$$

This is a very low figure, even for cast iron, hence the web is amply strong. The rim and hub are proportioned as for the large pulley.

The keys are taken from the standard list. They may be checked for shear, crushing in the hub, and crushing in the shaft, but the hubs are so long that it is at once evident without figuring that the stress would run very low in both cases.

Gears. Fig. 12. The analysis of the forces acting on the gears has been given on page 28, 4,000 pounds being taken at the pitch line. Using this same value, and choosing a T-shaped arm as a good form for a heavily loaded gear like the present one, let us consider that the rim is stiff enough to distribute the load

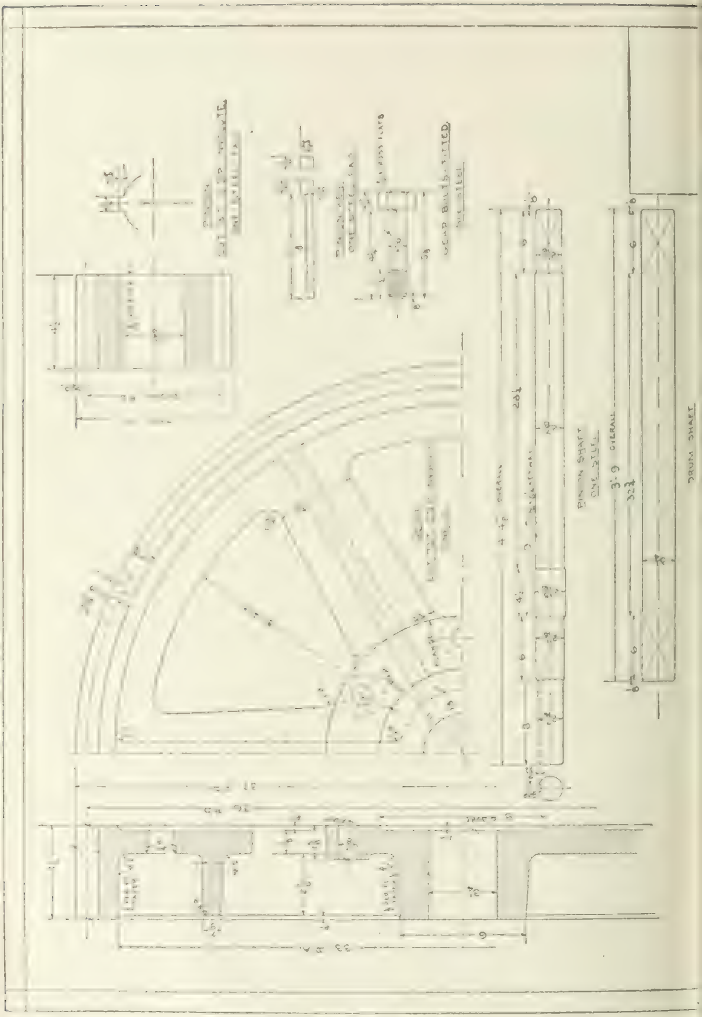


Fig. 12.

equally between all the arms, and that each acts as a beam loaded at the end with its proportion of the tooth load. Before we can determine the length of these arms, however, we must fix upon the size of the flange which is to carry the driving bolts. This is taken at 13 inches. It could be smaller if desired, but drawing the bolts in toward the center increases the load on them, and 13 inches seems reasonable until it is proved otherwise. This makes the maximum moment which can come on an arm $\frac{4,000 \times 11.5}{6} = 7,666$ inch-pounds.

Now it is evident that the base of the T arm section, which lies in the plane of rotation, is most effective for driving, and that the center leg of the T does not add much to the driving capacity of the arm, although it increases the lateral stiffness of the arm, as well as providing in casting a free flow of metal between the rim and the hub. Hence the simplest way of treating the section of the arm for strength is to consider the base of the T only, of rectangular section, breadth b, and depth h, for which the internal moment of resistance is $\frac{S \times b \times h^2}{6}$.

Also, it is simplest to assume one dimension, say the breadth, and the allowable fibre stress, and figure for the depth. Taking the breadth at 1⅛ inches, which looks about right, and the fibre stress at 2,500, and equating the external moment to the internal, we have

$$7,666 = \frac{2,500 \times 1.125 \times h^2}{6}$$

$$h^2 = \frac{6 \times 7,666}{2,500 \times 1.125} = 16.4$$

$$h = \sqrt{16.4} = 4.05 \text{ (say } 4\tfrac{1}{4}\text{)}$$

Drawing in this size, and tapering the arm to the rim as in the case of the pulleys, making the depth of the rim according to the suggested proportions given in Part II, "Gears," giving the center leg of the T a thickness of ¾ inch tapering to 1 inch, and heavily filleting the arms to the rim and center flange, we have a fairly well proportioned gear.

The next thing to determine is the size of the driving bolts. The circle upon which their centers lie may be 11 inches in diam-

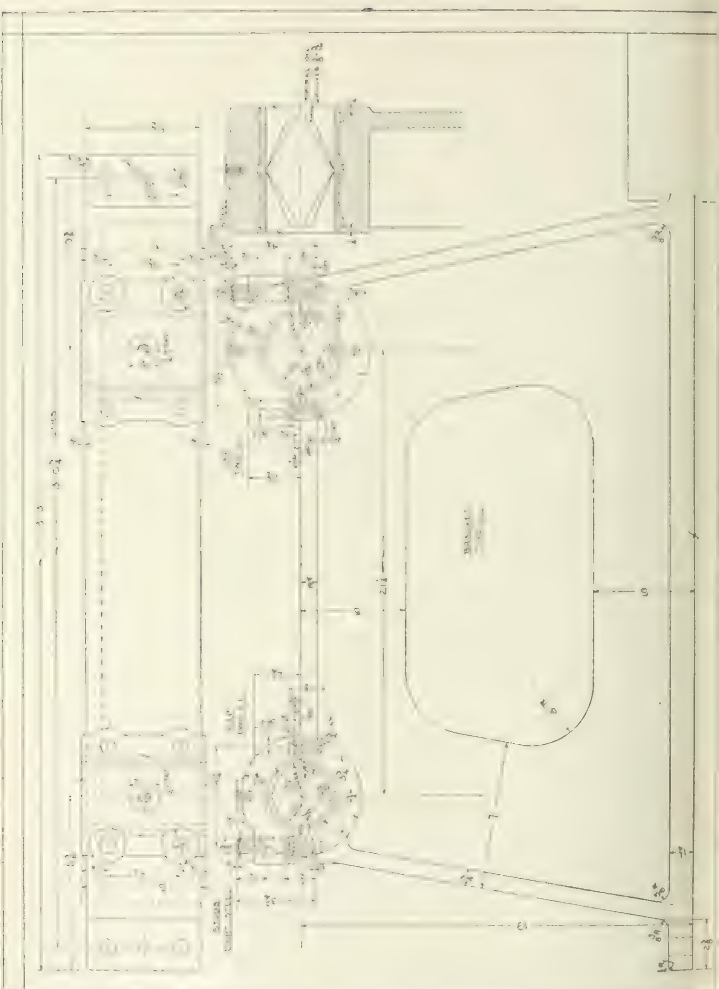


Fig. 13.

eter, and there will naturally be six bolts, one between each arm. These bolts are in pure shear, and the material of which they are to be made ought to be good for at least 8,000 pounds per square inch fibre stress. The force acting at the circumference of an 11-inch circle would be $\frac{4,000 \times 18}{5.5} = 13,091$ pounds.

Equating the load on each bolt to the resisting shear gives

$$\frac{13,091}{6} = 8,000 \times A = \frac{8,000 \times 3.1416 \times d^2}{4}$$

Let A = area resisting shear.
Let d = dia. of bolt.
Then $A = \frac{\pi d^2}{4}$

$$d^2 = \frac{4 \times 13,091}{6 \times 8,000 \times 3.1416} = .35$$

$d = \sqrt{.35}$ say .6 or $\frac{5}{8}$ inch bolts would do.

But $\frac{5}{8}$-inch bolts are pretty small to use in connection with such heavy machinery. They look out of proportion to the adjacent parts. Hence $\frac{7}{8}$-inch bolts have been substituted as being better suited to the place in spite of the fact that theoretically they are larger than necessary. The extra cost is a small matter. These bolts may crush in the flange as well as shear off, but as there is an area of $\frac{7}{8} \times 1\frac{5}{8} = 1.422$ square inches to take $\frac{13,091}{6} = 2,182$ pounds, the pressure per square inch of projected area is only $\frac{2,182}{1.422} = 1,534$ pounds, which is very low.

This gear needs no key to the shaft because all the power comes down the arms and passes off to the drum through the bolts, thus putting no torsional stress in the shaft. The face of the flange is counterbored so as to center the gear upon the drum, without relying upon the fit of the gear upon the shaft to do this.

The pinion is solid and needs no discussion for its design.

Brackets and Caps. Fig. 13. As the size of the drum shaft was determined by considering the rope wound close up to the brake, thus giving in combination with the load on the gear tooth the maximum reaction at the bearing as 6,748 pounds, the cap and bolts should be designed to carry the same load.

For a bearing but 6 inches long, two bolts are sufficient under ordinary conditions and might perhaps do for this case. The load is pretty heavy, however, and it is deemed wise to provide four bolts, thus securing extra rigidity, and permitting the use of bolts of comparatively small size. If the load were distributed equally over all the bolts each would take one fourth of the whole load, but it is not usually safe to figure them on this basis, because it is difficult to guarantee that each bolt will receive its exact share of stress. Assuming that the two bolts on one side take $\frac{2}{3}$ the whole load instead of $\frac{1}{2}$, which provides for this uncertain extra stress, each bolt must take care of $\frac{1}{3}$ of 6,748, or 2,249, pounds. Allowing 8,000 pounds per square inch fibre stress calls for an area at the root of the thread of $\frac{2,249}{8,000} = .281$ square inch. Consulting a table of bolts we find that the next standard size of bolt greater than this is $\frac{3}{4}$, which gives an area of .302 square inch.

Choosing this size as satisfactory, the bolts should be located as close to the shaft as will permit the hole to be drilled and tapped without breaking out. A center distance of $5\frac{1}{2}$ inches accomplishes this result. The distance between centers in the other direction is somewhat arbitrary, although the theoretical distance between the bolt and the end of the bearing to give equal bending moment at the center of the cap and at the line of the bolts is about $\frac{5}{24}$ of the length, or $\frac{5}{24}$ of $6 = 1\frac{1}{4}$ inches. This proportion answers well for the present case, although for long caps it brings the bolts too far in to look well.

The thickness of the cap may be determined by assuming it to be a beam supported at the bolts and loaded at the middle. This is not strictly true, for the load is distributed over at least a portion of the shaft diameter; moreover, the bolts to some extent make the beam fixed at the ends. It being impossible to determine the exact nature of the loading, we may take it as stated, supported at the ends and loaded in the middle, and allow a higher fibre stress than usual, say 3,500. The longitudinal section at the middle of the cap is rectangular, of breadth 6 inches, and depth unknown, say h. The equation of moments is

$$\frac{\mathrm{W} \times l}{4} = \frac{\mathrm{S} \times \mathrm{I}}{c} = \frac{\mathrm{S} \times b \times h^2}{6}$$

$$\frac{6{,}748 \times 5.5}{4} = \frac{3{,}500 \times 6 \times h^2}{6}$$

$$h^2 = \frac{6 \times 6{,}748 \times 5.5}{4 \times 3{,}500 \times 6} = 2.65$$

$$h = \sqrt{2.65} = 1.63 \ (1\tfrac{5}{8} \text{ will probably answer})$$

For the other bearing next to the pinion, the load on the tooth acts downward, and the resultant pull of the belt is nearly horizontal, hence the cap and bolts must stand but little load, and calculation would give minute values. In a case like this it is well to make the size the same as for the larger bearing, unless the construction becomes very clumsy thereby. This saves changing drills and taps in making the holes, and preserves the symmetry of the bracket. The ¾-inch bolts are good proportion for the smaller bearing, hence that size will be maintained throughout.

The body of the bracket is conveniently made with the web at the side and horizontal ribs extending to the outside. The load due to the rope is carried directly down the side ribs and web into the bottom flanges and to the bolts. The analysis of the forces on these bolts is shown in Fig. 14. It is evident from the figure that the resultant belt pull tends to hold the bracket down, while the load on the rope tends to pull it up, the point about which it tends to rotate being the corner furthest from the drum. It is also evident that the bolts nearest this corner can have little effect on the holding down, because their leverage is so small about the corner, hence we shall assume that the pair of bolts at the right-hand end of the bracket takes all the load. The belt pull, being horizontal, tends to slide the bracket along the base, but this tendency is small, and at any rate is easily taken care of by the two dowel pins, which are thus put in shear.

The load on the bolts being 4,954 pounds, a heavy bending moment is thrown on the flange of the bracket, tending to break it off at the root of the fillet. The distance to the root of the fillet is ¾ inch; the section tending to break is rectangular, of breadth 5½ inches, and unknown depth h. The equation of moments is

$$W \times l = \frac{S \times I}{c} = \frac{S \times b \times h^2}{6}$$

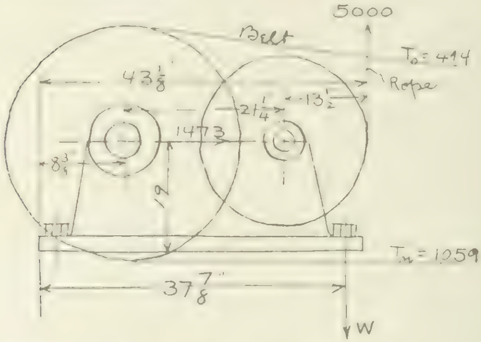
$$\frac{4{,}954 \times 3}{4} = \frac{2{,}500 \times 5.5 \times h^2}{6}$$

$$h^2 = \frac{6 \times 4{,}954 \times 3}{4 \times 2{,}500 \times 5.5} = 1.62$$

$$h = \sqrt{1.62} = 1.3 \text{ (say } 1\tfrac{1}{4}\text{).}$$

The thickness of the web and ribs of this bracket is hardly capable of calculation. The figure ¾ inch has been chosen in proportion to the size of the large drum bearing, giving ample stiffness and rigidity, and permitting uniform flow and cooling of the metal in the mold. The opening in the center is made merely to save material, as in that part little stress would exist, the two sides

Bracket base bolts May 25-1903



$$5000 \times 43\tfrac{1}{8} = 37\tfrac{7}{8} \times W + 1473 \times 19$$

$$W = \frac{5000 \times 43.125 - 1473 \times 19}{37.875}$$

W = 4954 lbs on two bolts

$\frac{4954}{2} = 2477$ lbs per bolt.

$\frac{2477}{8000} = .31$ sq. in. area at 8000 fib. stress.

Area at root of thread for a $\frac{3}{4}$ bolt is .28

Hence $\frac{3}{4}$ bolts will answer.

Fig. 14.

carrying the load down to the base bolts, and the top serving as a tie between the bearings.

This bracket might be made with the web in the center of the bearings instead of at the side, in which case the expense of the pattern would be slightly greater. It could also be made of closed box form, but would in that case probably weigh more than as shown.

Drum and Brake. Fig. 15. The analysis of the forces acting on the drum is simple, but its theoretical design is more complicated. It is evident that the drum acts as a beam of hollow circular cross section, and that its worst case of loading is when the rope is at or near the middle of the drum length. At the same time the metal of this circular cross section is in a state of torsion between the free end of the rope and the driving gear, due to the load on the gear tooth and the reaction of the rope. Also the wrapping of the rope around the drum tends to crush the metal of the section beneath it, the maximum effect of this action being near the free end of the rope where its tension has not been reduced by friction on the drum surface.

Now the "mechanics" to solve the problem of these three combined actions is rather complicated. It can be at least approximately solved, however, for it satisfies fairly well the case of combined compression and shear. But on a further study of this particular case, it is seen at once that the diameter of the drum is relatively large with respect to its length, which means that the thickness of the metal may be very small and yet give a large resisting area, or value of "I," both in direct bending as well as torsion; also it is so short that the external bending moment will be small. The practical condition now comes in, that the drum can be safely cast only when the thickness of the metal is at a minimum limit, for the core may be out of round, not set centrally, or by some other variation produce thin spots or even develop holes reaching out into the rope groove, discovered only when the latter is turned in the lathe.

Hence it seems reasonable and safe in this case to make the thickness of the drum depend simply upon the crushing caused by the wrapping of the rope around it, and we shall take the coil nearest the free end of the rope, assuming that it carries the full load of 5,000 pounds throughout one complete wrap around the drum.

The area resisting the crushing action may be considered to be that of the cross section of a ring, of width equal to the pitch

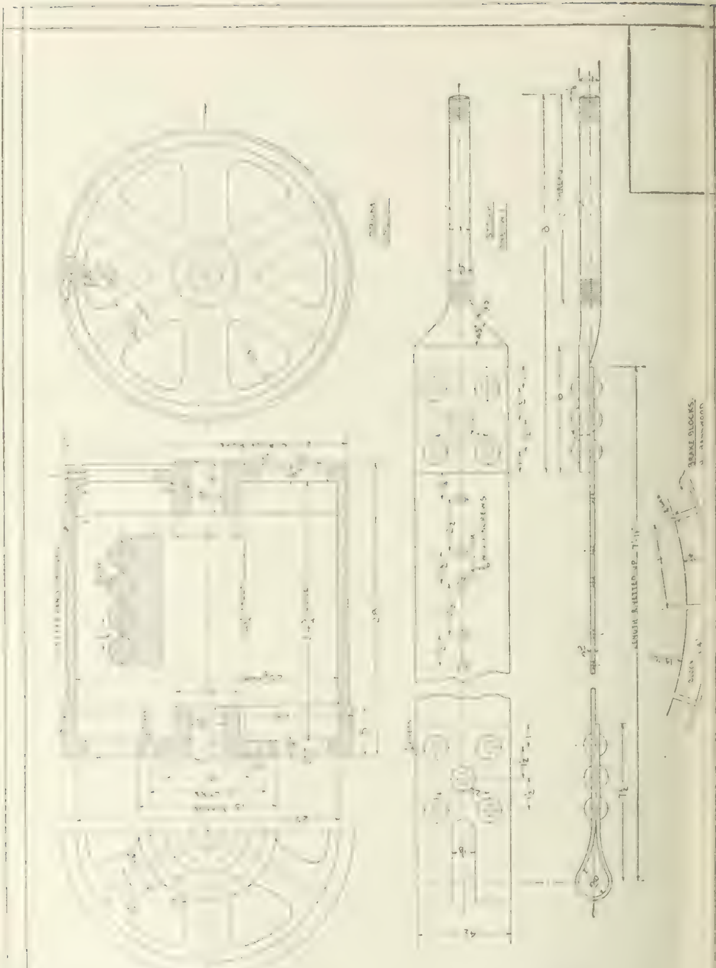


Fig. 15.

of the groove. Assuming that $\frac{5}{8}$ inch is the least thickness which can be safely allowed under the groove for casting purposes, let us figure the crushing fibre stress to see if this is sufficiently strong. Disregarding the small amount of metal existing above the bottom of the groove, this gives the area to resist the crushing $\frac{5}{8} \times \frac{3}{4} = \frac{15}{32}$, or .47 inch. Since there are two of these sections and the rope acts on both sides, the equation of forces is:

$$5{,}000 \times 2 = S \times .47 \times 2$$

$$S = \frac{5{,}000 \times 2}{.47 \times 2} = 10620 \text{ pounds per square inch.}$$

This, for cast iron, in pure crushing, allows plenty of margin for the extra bending and torsional stress, which for such a considerable thickness would be slight.

The above case indicates a method of reasoning much used in designing machinery, which while following out the specified routine of thought as previously given in these pages, stops short of elaborate and minute theoretical calculation when such is obviously unnecessary. If a drum of great length were to be designed, and of small diameter, the same method of reasoning would deduce the fact that the design should be based on the bending and the torsional moments, the thickness in such a case being so great to withstand these that the intensity of the crushing due to wrap of the rope becomes of inappreciable value.

The remaining points of design of the drum are determined from practical considerations and judgment of appearance. The ribs behind the arms are put in to give lateral stiffness and guard against endwise collapse. The arms are subject to the same bending as those of the gear, but as they are equally heavy it is not necessary to calculate them. The flange at the driving end is of course matched to that already designed for the gear. The rope is intended to be brought through the right-hand end with an easy bend and the standard form of button wedged on to prevent its pulling through.

This drum would probably be cast with its axis vertical, and the driving flange down to secure sound metal at that point. Heavy risers would be left at the other end to secure soundness where the rope is fastened. Drums are often cast with the axis horizontal, but the vertical method is more certain to produce a sound casting. The grooves should be turned from the solid metal, partly because it is a difficult matter to cast them, but principally because the rope should run on as smooth surface as possible to avoid undue wear. On drums which carry chain instead of wire rope the grooves are sometimes cast with success, although even in this case the turned groove is generally preferable.

The brake consists of a wrought-iron band to which are fastened wooden blocks, the iron band giving the requisite strength while the blocks give frictional grip on the drum surface and can be easily replaced when worn. As in the designing of a belt the object in view is the grip on the pulley surface by the leather to enable power to be transmitted from the belt to the pulley, so in the case of the brake if we put the proper tension in the strap it can be made to grip the brake drum so tightly that motion between it and the drum cannot occur. The latter case is really the reverse of the first, if the driven pulley be considered, but is identical with the case of the driving pulley, in which the power is transmitted from the pulley to the belt. Of course in the case of the brake no power is transmitted, as when the brake holds no motion occurs, but the principle of the relative tensions in the strap is the same as for the belt.

Since the brake drum surface is 28 inches in diameter, the load at that surface which the brake must hold is

$$P = \frac{5,000 \times 27}{14 \times 2} = 4,821 \text{ pounds.}$$

We have then the following calculation corresponding exactly to that of the belt given in Fig. 3.

$\log. \frac{T_n}{T_o} = 2.729 \times \mu \times n$ Let $\mu = .25$
    " $n = .75$

$T_n - T_o = P = 4,821$

$\log. \frac{T_n}{T_o} = 2.729 \times .25 \times .75 = 0.512$ (for which the natural number is 3.25).

Then $\frac{T_n}{T_o} = 3.25$ $T_o = \frac{T_n}{3.25}$

$T_n - T_o = 4,821$ $T_n - \frac{T_n}{3.25} = \frac{2.25 \times T_n}{3.25} = 4,821$

$T_n = \frac{4,821 \times 3.25}{2.25} = 6,963$ pounds (say 7,000)

$T_o = 6,963 - 4,821 = 2,142$ pounds (say 2,200)

The tight end of the strap must then be capable of carrying a load of 7,000 pounds, and since the width has already been taken at $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches, the problem is to find the necessary thickness. Equating the external load to the internal resistance we have

$$7{,}000 = A \times S$$

Let t = thickness

" S = fibre stress = 12,000

$$7{,}000 = 4.5 \times t \times 12{,}000$$

$$t = \frac{7{,}000}{4.5 \times 12{,}000} = .13 \text{ inch}$$

This, however, can be but a preliminary figure, for the riveting of the strap will take out some of the effective area, and the thickness will have to be increased to allow for this. Suppose on the basis of this figure we assume the thickness at a slightly increased value, say $\frac{3}{16}$ inch, and proceed to calculate the rivets.

A group of five rivets will work in well for this case, which gives $\frac{7{,}000}{5} = 1{,}400$ pounds per rivet. A safe shearing fibre stress is 6,000, hence the area necessary per rivet is $\frac{1{,}400}{6{,}000} = .23$ square inch. This comes nearest to the area $\frac{9}{16}$ diameter, but for the sake of using the more general size of rivet ($\frac{5}{8}$ inch) the latter is chosen, for which the area is .30.

We must now try these rivets in a $\frac{3}{16}$-inch plate for their safe bearing value. The projected area of a $\frac{5}{8}$-inch hole in a $\frac{3}{16}$-inch plate is $\frac{5}{8} \times \frac{3}{16} = .117$ square inch. $\frac{1.400}{.117} = 11{,}965$ (15,000 would be safe)

Taking out two $\frac{5}{8}$-inch rivets from the full width of $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches leaves $4\frac{1}{2} - (2 \times \frac{5}{8}) = 3.25$, and makes the net area of strap to take stress $3.25 \times \frac{3}{16} = .61$ square inches. Re-calculating the fibre stress for this area gives

$$7{,}000 = .61 \times S$$

$$S = \frac{7{,}000}{.61} = 11{,}475$$ (which approximates the previous value of 12,000).

The slack end of the strap has to take but 2,200 pounds, hence a different calculation might be made for this end giving smaller rivets; but as it is impractical to change the thickness of the strap to meet this reduced load, it is well to maintain the same proportion of joint as at the tight end. The spacing of the rivets in both

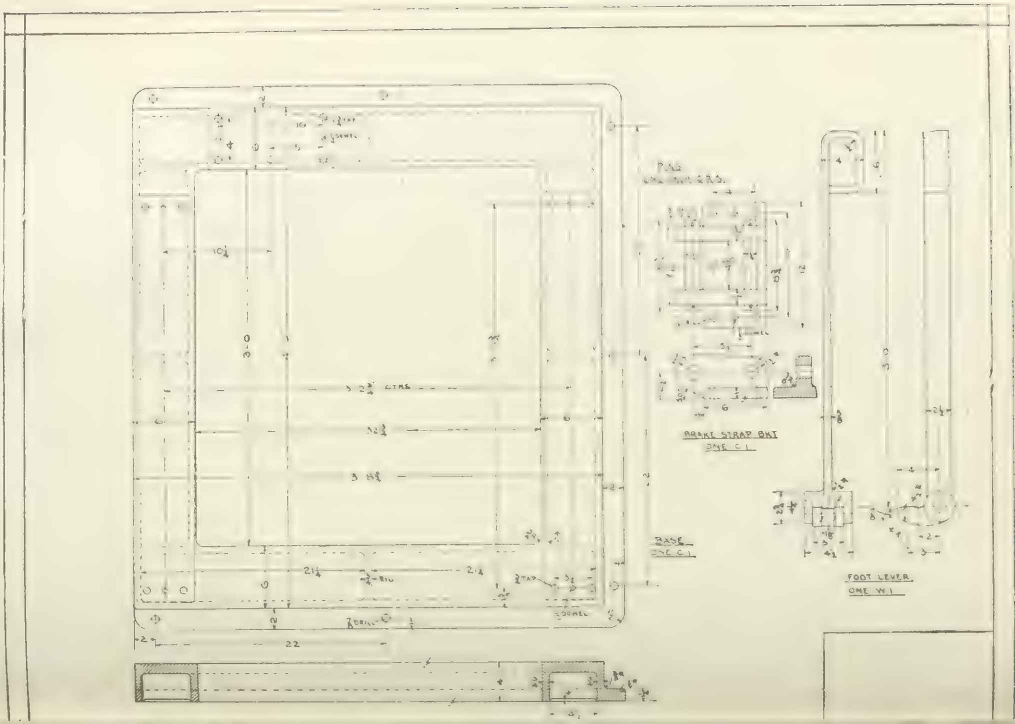

BRAKE STRAP BKT
ONE C.I.
BASE
ONE C.I.
FOOT LEVER
ONE W.I.
3 2¾ CIRS
32¾
3 8¾
3-0
10¼
22
21¼
¾ TAP
¾ DRILL
3-0

Fig. 16.

cases follows the ordinary rule allowing at least three times the diameter of the rivet as center distance, and one-half this value to the edge of the plate.

The threaded end of the forging on the strap also has to carry the load of 2,200 pounds, for which a size smaller than 1 inch would suffice. It is natural, however, for the sake of general proportion to make the bolt as strong as the strap, and a 1-inch bolt gives an area of .52 square inch, nearly equalling the value of .61 net area of strap noted above.

Base, Brake=Strap Bracket and Foot Lever. Fig 16. The base cannot be definitely calculated, and can best be proportioned by judgment. It must not distort, twist, or spring in any way to throw the shafts out of line. The area in contact with the foundation upon which it rests must be ample to carry the weight of the whole machine with a low unit pressure. Although the form shown is perfectly practicable to cast and machine, and is simple and rigid, yet it is questionable if a bolted-up construction, say of four pieces, might not be equally rigid and yet involve greater facility of production in both the foundry and machine shop on account of the reduced sizes of parts to be handled. This is a question which depends on the equipment and methods of the individual shop, and is an illustration of the practical control of design by manufacturing conditions.

The brake-strap bracket and foot lever, also shown in this figure, are examples of machine parts which are quite definitely loaded, and the designing of which is a simple matter. Further discussion of their design is not made, the student being given opportunity for some original thought in determining the forces and moments that control their design.

Gear Guard and Brake=Relief Spring. In exposed machinery of this character it is desirable to cover over the gears with a guard to prevent anything accidentally dropping between the teeth and perhaps wrecking the whole machine. This guard is not shown, as it involves little of an engineering nature to interest the student. It could readily be made of sheet metal or light boiler plate, bent to follow the contour of the gears and fastened to the top flange of the main bracket.

If the brake be not automatically supported at its top it will lie with considerable pressure, due to its own weight, on the brake surface when it is supposed to be free from it, and by the friction thereby created will produce a heavy drag and waste of power. A spring connection fastened to an overhead beam is a simple way of accomplishing the desired result. A flat supporting strap carried out from the gear guard, having some degree of spring in it, is a neater method of solving the problem. The spring should be just strong enough to counterbalance the weight of the strap and yet not resist to an appreciable degree the force applied to throw the brake on.

GENERAL DRAWING.

The last step in the process of design of a machine is the making of the assembled or general drawing. This should be built up piece by piece from the detail drawings, thereby serving as a last check on the parts going together. This drawing may be a cross section or an outside view. In any case it is not wise to try to show too much of the inside construction by dotted lines, for if this be attempted, the drawing soon loses its character of clearness, and becomes practically useless. A general drawing should clearly **hint at, but not specify**, detailed design. It is just as valuable a part of the design as the detail drawing, but it cannot be made to answer for both with any degree of success. A good general drawing has plenty of views, and an abundance of cross sections, but few dotted lines.

The general drawing of the machine under consideration is left for the student to work up from the complete details shown. It would look something like the preliminary layout of Fig. 10, if the same were carefully carried out to finished form. A plain outside view would probably be more satisfactory in this case than a cross section, as the latter would show little more of value than the former. The functions which the general drawing may serve are many and varied. Its principal usefulness is, perhaps, in showing to the workman how the various parts go together, enabling him to sort out readily the finished detail parts and assemble them, finally producing the complete structure. Otherwise the making of a machine, even with the parts all at hand, would be like the putting together of the many parts of an intricate puzzle, and much time would be wasted in trying to make the several parts fit, with perhaps never complete success in giving each its absolutely correct location.

The general drawing also gives valuable information as to the total space occupied by the completed machine, enabling its location in a crowded manufacturing plant to be planned for, its connection to the main driving element arranged, and its convenience of operation studied.

In some classes of work it is a convenient practice to letter each part on the general drawing, and to note the same letters on the specification or order sheet, thus enabling the whole machine to be ordered from the general drawings. This is a very excellent service performed by the general drawing in certain lines of work, but for such a purpose the drawing is quite inapplicable in others.

Merely as a basis for judgment of design, the general drawing fulfils an important function in any class of work, for it approaches the nearest possible to the actual appearance that the machine will have when finished. A good general drawing is, for critical purposes, of as much value to the expert eye of the mechanical engineer as the elaborate and colored sketch of the architect is to the house builder or landscape designer.

From the above it is readily understood that the general drawing, although a mere putting together of parts in illustration, is yet of great assistance in producing finished and exact machine design.

GENERAL COMMENTS ON PRECEDING PROBLEM.

After following through the detail of work as given in the preceding pages, it is worth while to stop for a moment and take a brief survey or review of the subject as illustrated therein.

If the text be carefully studied it will be seen that in every part to be designed the same routine method has been followed, regardless of the final outcome. In some cases it may seem a roundabout procedure to follow a train of thought that finally ends in a design apparently based on purely practical judgment, the theory having had but very little if any influence. The question at once arises—Why not use the empirical rule or formula in the first place? Why not make a good guess at once? Why not save all the time and energy devoted to a careful analysis and theory, if we are finally to throw them away and not base our design on them?

The principle to be noted in this connection is, that it is just as fatal to good design to rely upon bare experience and upon judgment alone, as it is to construct solely according to what pure theory tells us. There are many things in the operation of machinery that are totally inexplicable from the purely practical point of view, and will forever remain so until we analyze them and theorize on them. Many good things in machinery have been the result of what might be called "reversed" machine design. When a new machine is started, it frequently, or we might almost say always, fails to do its work just as it is expected to do it. This is because some little point of design is bad, owing to the inability of drawings, however good they may be, to show all that the machine itself in bodily form and in motion shows.

Now, if our analysis and theory have been good in the designing process, it is almost sure that we can very readily analyze and theorize on the trouble that exists when the machine is finished, can detect the weakness, and can correct it with comparatively small change in the general design. This is "reversed" machine design.

If, on the contrary, we have based our design purely on guesswork, allowing our fancy full and free play to work out the details without further basis, we may consider ourselves lucky if the machine runs at all. This, however, is not the worst of the situation. If the machine does actually operate, even as well as it might reasonably be expected to, but still has the usual difficulty of some little kink or hitch that was not expected, then, as a result of the method upon which the whole thing has been constructed, we have no definite plan of action to proceed upon. We must try first this, then that scheme to obviate the trouble. We may be fortunate enough to "strike it" the first time; we may never strike it. It is doubtful if the machine ever can be made to work at highest efficiency; and if fairly good results be finally obtained we never know the reason why, and have nothing on which to base any future action or design.

This haphazard process is not machine design at all, either in name or in result.

As has previously been stated in these pages, there is no such thing as too much analysis or theory in the designing of machinery. Even if we carefully analyze, theorize with rigorous exactness, and then practically modify our construction to such a point that the original theoretical shape is almost or entirely lost, the apparently roundabout process is not in vain, for we are in perfect control of our design. We know exactly what it has to take in the way of forces, blows and vibrations. We know what its ideal shape should be. We know where we can practically modify its form without weakening it excessively or adding excess of material. In other words we know all about it, and therefore know exactly what we can do with it ; and whether it follows in its shape the outline that pure theory gives it or some other outline, it is nevertheless well designed.

"Reversed" machine design, as described above, based on observation and experiment with regard to machines already in operation, is just as impossible without exact analysis and theory as is original design based merely on mechanical ideas in the abstract. The method once learned and made a habit of mind will produce results with equal facility in either case, and results are what the mechanical world is seeking.

Another point worth noting in the progress of the problem as given is the absolute necessity of possessing some knowlege of Mechanics. The more of this subject the designer can have at his finger ends, the more ready and successful will he be in all problems of Machine Design. However, the principles of forces and moments clearly understood, and the application of the same in the all-important subject, "Strength of Beams," constitute a fund of information that will give a splendid start and a good working basis for simple designs. It should always be remembered that a complicated design is little more than a combination of simple designs, and if one has the ability to dissect and analyze what seems at first like a bewildering maze of parts, complication is speedily changed to simplicity.

Common sense goes a long way in good designing. There is nothing mysterious about the process If the beginner will only avoid doing things that are foolish and ridiculous on their very face, if he will exercise the same judgment that he uses in the daily affairs of his life and will mix in something of mechanics and mechanical method, he will be on the direct road to success in the art.

Good drawing is an essential element of good design, and it is especially urged that the sketches and drawings as reproduced in the preceding text be studied with this in mind. By a good drawing is meant not a showy piece of work, finely shaded or artistically lettered, but an exact layout, definite and measurable, correctly dimensioned if in detail, and meaning exactly what it says. Machine design is an exact science, and the designer cannot shirk responsibility by permitting his work to be shiftless and loose. If he cannot delineate clearly and in definite form what he determines in his mind the structure should be, then it is purely good luck if he achieves success, and it may safely be asserted that the success is due to some subsequent care and finished design added to his feeble effort, rather than to any expertness of his own. Such success is of a very doubtful nature, and if not bordering on financial loss it is at least secured only at a low working efficiency.

As examples of good drawings the plates shown are not claimed to be anything extraordinary, but it will be noted that they are clean-cut and definite, and that even the sketches are unmistakable as to that which they are intended to illustrate. The information as to the design is all there; nothing is left to the imagination.

Classification of Machinery. It is intended to be made clear in all that has preceded, that the same method of attack and procedure may be applied to the designing of machinery, whatever may be the class or kind. This is a fundamental principle. When it is logically carried out, however, it produces very different results, as is evidenced by the characteristics of style peculiar to each of the classes of machinery to one or another of which all machines belong.

For example, an engine lathe has a style similar to a drill press, or a boring mill, or a screw machine, or a milling machine. It is very different, however, from the style of a steam engine, or a pump, or an air compressor, or a locomotive; it is still more different from the style of a rolling mill, or a link belt conveyor, or a coal crusher, or a stamp mill.

These classes of machinery are so distinctly marked that the novice is easily able to perceive that there is some controlling influence in each which marks its peculiar style. He should at the same time see that the very analysis that has been so strongly insisted upon in these pages is the direct cause of the marked characteristic in design. Each class of machinery must satisfy certain exacting conditions different from those of any other, and it is the careful study of these conditions, as fundamentally enforced, which leads to the strictly logical design.

A few of the most common classes are enumerated below, and their prominent features noted. It is hoped that a study of them will familiarize the student in a general way with the requirements of each, and serve as a guide to a more comprehensive study of their detail design than is possible in these pages.

Machine Tools. Examples: lathe, planer, milling machine, drill press, screw machine, boring mill, grinding machine, etc., etc.

The machines of this class are all utilized for the finishing of metal surfaces. They are really at the root of the production of machinery of all other classes. Accuracy is their prime characteristic—accuracy of construction, accuracy of operation, accuracy of adjustment. Any inaccuracy that exists primarily in a machine tool is reproduced in every piece upon which it produces a finished surface; and since the mere act of finishing a surface upon anything implies that a rough and inaccurate surface will not answer, the tool then fails of its purpose if it cannot produce a true surface: it does not accomplish that for which it was designed.

The effect that this element of accuracy has upon the design of a machine tool is to require long bearings, convenient and exact methods of adjustment, stiffness, excess of material to absorb vibration, special shapes to facilitate application of jigs, fixtures, and exact manufacturing devices insuring interchangeability of parts, dust guards, and automatic lubrication.

Machine tools are essentially machines of maximum output, and depend for their success, not only upon their accuracy as noted, but also upon their ability to do the greatest amount of work per square foot of space occupied, with the least amount of manual labor and attention on the part of the operator. This is especially true of automatic machinery, which perhaps might be classed by itself in this respect, but which is nevertheless included under the broad term of a machine for producing finished surfaces, being merely the highest and most refined form of same. For machines of this class the designer has to study every detail with the most minute attention, packing away the operating parts into the smallest space and yet providing ready means for access, removal, and repair. Clearances that would be too little for other kinds of machinery are permitted and provided for; material of high grade, strength, and wearing quality, though expensive in first cost, and requiring the most expert skill to finish and to fit into place, must be used in order to keep the machine compact and yet of large capacity, to make it reasonably light in weight and yet amply strong.

Another point which has a great influence on the design of a machine tool is that we can never tell in advance just what it will have to stand in work, for the variation in the material that it finishes, the uncertain skill of the operator who runs it, the crowding to its limit of capacity and even beyond in times of press of business, and the many other stresses that may suddenly and without warning be thrown upon it, must all be thought of and provided for.

The points above mentioned are but a few of those which the designer of machine tools has to meet, and are presented merely as illustrations to show the special skill required in this class of machinery. It is readily seen that while the machine tool designer has great latitude in choice of material and in expenditure of money for refinement of structure perhaps greater latitude than in any other class, yet he is held down as in no other to the final productive results, a small percentage of failure entirely throwing out the machine as a marketable product.

The style and external appearance of machine tools have a character of their own resulting from this extreme detailed care in design. Corners and fillets are carefully rounded; surfaces and intersections are definitely made; in short, the mechanical beauty of a machine tool is seen only from a near view and close inspection, and it is to this end that the design is constantly directed Appearance is a large factor in the sale of a fine tool, and the prestige of the American trade abroad in this respect is very noticeable.

Motive-Power Machinery. Examples:—Steam engine, gas engine, air compressor, steam pump, hydraulic machinery, etc., etc.

The element of heat enters into the design of all machinery in this class. The natural agents, air, gas, and water, in their various forms, are taken into the machine in the most efficient form in which it is possible to obtain them, are robbed of their energy to provide power, and are discharged in a form as weak and inert as the efficiency of the machine will determine.

In contrast to the class of machinery just studied, it should be noted that these machines do not produce any material thing; that is, they do not produce finished surfaces on metals, make screws or bolts, bore holes in castings, or turn line shafting. They merely take the energy of the natural agent, which is not in a form available for use, and transform it into motive power for general use.

Hence the element of accuracy as entering into the design of these machines is necessary only for their own efficient operation, and not for the quality of the thing which they produce, as in the case of machine tools. For example, the power furnished by one steam engine to drive a line shaft is as good as that of another as far as the rotating of the shaft is concerned, provided, of course, that both are equipped with the same quality of governing mechanism. The fact that one of the engines has a good adjusting device on the main bearing while the other has not is of no consequence from the standpoint of the line shaft, but it is, of course, of consequence respecting the efficient operation of the engines.

The design of steam engines and similar machines is of a rough nature compared with that of machine tools, as far as the detail of surface is concerned. General accuracy is nevertheless essential for the machine's own sake, but while in the machine tool we deal with thousandths of an inch, in the steam engine hundredths of an inch indicates fine work.

These machines are subject to extremes of temperature that have to be provided for in the design and arrangement of the parts. Being prime movers, controlling the operation of many machines, they must be certain to run during their period of work; hence design and adjustment must be positive, and when the latter cannot be made while running, it must be quickly and definitely accomplished when a stop is made. Simplicity of construction is essential, facilitating cheap and quick repairs. The design should be such that constant attention while running is avoided, the usual attention of the engineer being a safeguard rather than an implied factor of the original design. General rigidity and stiffness are important, also good balancing of the moving parts, and weight for absorption of vibration; otherwise under the constant daily run the machines will tear to pieces not only themselves but their foundations.

As far as external appearance goes in this and subsequent classes to be mentioned we are on a very different basis from that of machine tools. *General* mechanical symmetry of form is aimed at in the design, and the several smaller parts depend for their outline (aside from considerations of strength, which are, of course, always in order) upon the harmonious relation which they bear to the main and fundamental elements of the machine. Such machinery as air compressors, steam engines, pumps, and the like are viewed as a whole, and criticised, not detail by detail, as is the machine tool, but as to general effect of outline observed from some distance. To convey the desired effect to the eye the design must be bold and massive, connections simple and direct, and the smaller parts must not be so dwarfed in size as to appear like delicate ornaments instead of integral parts of the machine. The lines of connected parts must be continuous from one part to the other; and when interrupted by flanges, bosses, or lugs, the latter, which are merely incidental to the former must not be allowed to obscure wholly the main lines of the fundamental pieces.

It is attention to such points as these that marks the difference between well-designed motive-power machinery and that of the opposite character. Even though the little details of fillets and corners and surfaces may have their effect from a close point of view, the design will stand or fall in excellence on its bolder features, as noted above.

Structural Machinery. Examples:—Hoists, cranes, elevators, transfer tables, locomotives, cars, conveyors, cable-ways, etc., etc.

In the two preceding classes that have been noted, cast iron in the form of foundry castings enters as the principal material. Steel is utilized for shafts, studs, pins, and keys. Also special forgings, malleable iron and steel castings enter as factors in the production of the machinery discussed. Foundry castings, however, compose the great body of the material used, and the chief problems involved are those of the expert moulding of cast iron, and the handling and finishing of the same. For the operating parts, steel of fine grade is used in highly finished form, expensive because of its fineness, and yet a necessity to the extent it is used. Brass and bronze are used in the same way, generally in connection with the bearings for the shafts.

Structural machinery, on the contrary, uses steel as the basis of its construction. The fundamental structure is built up of plates, channels, beams, and angles; castings, though numerous, are relatively small, being riveted or bolted to the main structure and controlled in their design by its requirements.

Steel is used in this manner partly because the exclusive use of castings is prohibited on account of the excessive weight, and therefore expense, and partly because castings could not be made which would possess the necessary toughness and strength. In many cases the size of the machinery is such that castings, even if they could be made, would not support their own weight. Moreover, machinery of this class is subjected to rough service, and yet must be practically infallible under all conditions, neither being uncertain in operation at critical moments nor entirely failing under an extraordinary load.

The design of structural machinery is tied up to conditions existing largely outside of the locality in which the machinery is built. The steel plates and structural shapes required, being products of the rolling mill, have to conform to the latter's standards. The rivets, bolts and other fastenings have to be in accordance with the established practice of the structural iron worker, in order to permit punching, shearing and bending machinery of regular form to be utilized. Shipment on standard railway cars has to be considered, the design often requiring to be modified to permit this and nevertheless insure positive and accurate assembling in the field.

Steel castings, both large and small, find ready application in this class of work; also steel forgings, requiring to be worked under a heavy hammer and in many cases by specially devised processes.

In structural design less of the actual process of manufacture is under the eye of the designer than in the former classes of machinery which have been considered, and hence more allowance has to be made for things not coming exactly right to the fraction of an inch. It would be bad design to plan any structural piece of work with the same closeness of detail permitted, and in fact required, in the case of machine tools, or even in the case of motive-power machinery. In planning structural work the idea must be carried out, of certainty of operation in spite of roughness of detail and variations of construction. This does not necessarily imply inaccuracy, or shiftless, loosely constructed machinery; on the contrary, quite the reverse. The locomotive, for example, is one of the most refined pieces of mechanism that exists today; and yet the methods applied to the construction of machine tools would prove a failure on the locomotive. The design of a car axle box has to be just right else it will heat and destroy itself; the same is true of the spindle of a fine engine lathe; and yet how rough the former is compared with the latter, and how unsuited either would be for use on the service of the other.

As a general rule structural machinery can be more closely proportioned to theoretically calculated size than can the preceding types. The rolled material of which it is made is of a uniform and homogeneous nature owing to its process of manufacture, hence its every fibre may be counted on to sustain its share of the total load imposed upon it. This is in sharp contrast to the case of cast iron, which is of such a porous and irregular structure that we have to use a large factor of safety to cover this inherent defect.

Steel castings of both small and large size (which are quite apt to be utilized in this class of machinery for parts that can with difficulty be made out of rolled material), if properly designed of uniform thickness, with all corners well filleted and with the channels for the flow of the molten metal direct and ample, are nearly as reliable as rolled steel. In parts subject to excessive vibration, shocks, and sudden wrenchings, as, for example, the side frames or the connecting rod of a locomotive, the forged and hammered material is practically a necessity. This is especially the case when the possible breakage of the part would cause serious consequences involving heavy loss of life and property.

From the several points of view as above considered, it can be readily appreciated that, while structural work is in one sense rough and unpolished, yet it requires, from an engineering standpoint, quite as much breadth of experience and judgment as any of the other types. The fine-tool designer, least of all, perhaps, requires book theory, but does require an extended machine-shop experience. The designer of motive-power machinery needs pure physical theory and shop experience of a large and broad scope. The structural designer is least of all concerned with refined and minute finishing processes, but utilizes his theory absolutely, even though roughly.

Mill and Plant Machinery. Examples: Rolling mills, mining machinery, crushers, stamps, rock drills, coal cutters, the machinery of blast furnaces and steel mills, tube mills, etc., etc.

This machinery constitutes a class which in the roughness of its operation exceeds all others. Moreover, it is machinery which for the most part is in continuous operation—24 hours per day and 365 days in the year. Hence refinement, even such as might be permitted in the preceding class of Structural Machinery, would be fatal here. The conditions that surround plant machinery are unfavorable in the extreme to the life of any material or metal, and it is not possible to change these conditions or give more than partial protection to the operating parts. Hence the design of such machinery must proceed primarily on the assumption that abuse and neglect, grinding away of surfaces, chemical eating away of metal, flooding of parts with water gritty and corrosive, subjection to sudden bursts of flame and intense heat, etc., will in a relatively short time totally destroy, perhaps, the entire structure.

In view of the continuous nature of the working process, which must be kept up in spite of these almost insurmountable conditions, the problem in each case becomes one of expediency; and the designs and arrangement of machinery must be so worked out that operation, repair, construction, and installation can all go on simultaneously without stopping the continuous process, and with but a small degree of inconvenience to the operation of the plant.

This problem, difficult though it may seem, can be worked out successfully, as is evidenced by the great number of plants of the continuous character operating at high efficiency throughout the world. The engineering and designing skill required to accomplish this, is perhaps of the highest degree met with in modern practice, for in it is involved a working knowledge of the possibilities, if not the detailed designs of machinery included in all classes. And yet, as in the most elementary case of simple design that can be conceived, the result is accomplished in the same way, namely, by studying the conditions (analysis), developing an ideal application to those conditions (theory), and then reducing the ideal design to a practical basis (modification).

A Few Pointed Suggestions on Original Design. Original design deals with the development of original mechanical ideas. The prime requisite for the development of an idea is to understand thoroughly the idea in the rough. See distinctly the mark aimed at, and never lose sight of it. If a method of reaching it is already outlined, understand that also thoroughly and the principles involved. It is impossible to go ahead blindly and hope to come out right. No good machine was ever built that does not stand for hours of concentrated thought on the part of its designer. Good machines never *happen*, they always *grow*.

Just as soon as the object to be accomplished is clearly understood, begin to produce some visible work on the problem. Sketch something. Get some ideas on paper. Ideas on paper suggest other ideas. If the problem, for example, is one of lathe design, sketch a rectangle, and call it the headstock; another rectangle, and call it the footstock; a couple of scratches for the centers; some steps for the cone pulley; three or four lines for the bed; and as many more for the supports. There is now something on paper to look at; the design is begun.

It is much better to stare at this sketch, than into blank space trying to imagine the finished design. No matter how rough the sketch may be, a short study of it will develop some limiting conditions that before were not apparent. Guess at a few rough dimensions; put them on the sketch; develop another view—a plan or a side elevation—all still in the roughest style, without any regard to finished detail. Information will be growing all the while, and the problem will be opening up. At this stage it is probable that the sketch can easily be seen to be wrong in many respects. Perhaps the arrangement will not do at all.

This is a good sign. It shows that the design is progressing. It is a valuable thing to know that certain plans *cannot* be followed. Do not rub out part of the sketch already made and try to remedy it. Begin again. Make another sketch. Sketch paper is cheap. By and by it may prove to be very desirable to have that first rough outline available for comparison, or it may be that some of its ideas can be applied on other sketches. The second sketch may "show up" little or no better than the first. Make another, and another, and another, until the subject is thoroughly digested. It is wonderful how helpful it is to have some marks on paper relative to a design, even though they be of the utmost crudeness. They save imaginative power tremendously; and, even with them, all available powers of imagination will be needed before the design is perfected.

A careful comparison of one's sketches, rejecting here, and approving there, will, little by little, bring about a definite opinion, and the scale drawing can be begun.

As in the case of the first sketch, so in the case of the first scale drawing, get some lines on paper as quickly as possible. Draw something, even if it is nothing more than a straight horizontal line. Do not stare at blank paper for an hour trying to imagine how the tenth or eleventh line is going to be drawn in relation to the first line. Do not worry about the later lines until it is time for them Draw the first line at once; and, when the second line is drawn, if the first line proves to be wrong, make it right. As in the rough sketch, that first horizontal line is an immense relief from the great waste of blank paper of a fresh sheet. It is something to look at. It is the beginning of a detailed design. If it happens not to be the absolutely correct foundation to build upon, it at least is something to tear down. The main purpose of these preliminary drawings is to keep the mind active on the problem; and advance toward the final accomplishment of the design is often made quite as rapidly by discovering what to tear down as by consistently building up.

When a detail draftsman who has been used to having all his work laid out for him by an expert designer attempts to take up original work for himself, he encounters the drawing of that first line in a way he never did before. He is apt to worry for some time over the possible or impossible results of drawing that first line. If he continue this, he will be sure to fail. The second line is much easier to draw than the first, and the third than the second; and the next hundred will follow on in comparatively smooth sequence, all because of bold action on the first few lines.

And yet, just as the design appears to be progressing smoothly, and the advanced progress of the drawing seems cause for congratulation, careful consideration may disclose a "snag" not previously known to exist in the problem. Further study pursued along the line of this new discovery may show that the whole layout thus far has been radically wrong, and that a fresh start will have to be made. At such a time the young designer is apt to feel that his labor has all been thrown away, and he becomes discouraged. There is, however, no cause for discouragement. Machine Design might almost be defined to be the "successful elimination of snags." It takes some ability to discover an obstacle of this sort; to know a "snag" when an opportunity to see it is given. It takes a good designer to eliminate such a difficulty after it has been found. If there were no "snags" it would not require great ability to design machines. Many machines fail because in them there are a lot of undiscovered "snags." Others fail because the "snags," although discovered, were not eliminated by careful design.

Do not be afraid to make a lot of "first" drawings. It is just as important to digest the design thoroughly by means of scale drawings, as it was to digest it originally by means of the rough sketches. An attempt to make the first drawing of an original design absolutely right would, it is safe to say, produce a poor design, one that could be much improved by further trial. Let the drawings multiply, one after another, until the final one is reached, in which the perfection of detail will eliminate all the bad points of the preceding drafts and incorporate good ones of its own based on the study of the others.

And yet it is often true that the first design laid out, even after many others have been developed, may be found to possess features that render a return to it desirable. This is why it is always better to produce a collection of designs than to attempt to rub out and work over the first one. The best designers usually have a great number of sketches showing how to accomplish a single result. Likewise, they also have a series of layouts to scale, showing in detailed form the development of their various ideas. This is because, without a careful consideration of many methods, they themselves feel incompetent to judge of the best design possible for accomplishing a given result.

Sketches and original designs should always be dated and signed. Different designers may be working on the same problem, and priority of design will never be allowed except upon signed and witnessed papers. It is embarrassing to find, after months and perhaps years have passed since an original drawing was made, that one's rights have been preempted merely because there was no date or signature to define them.

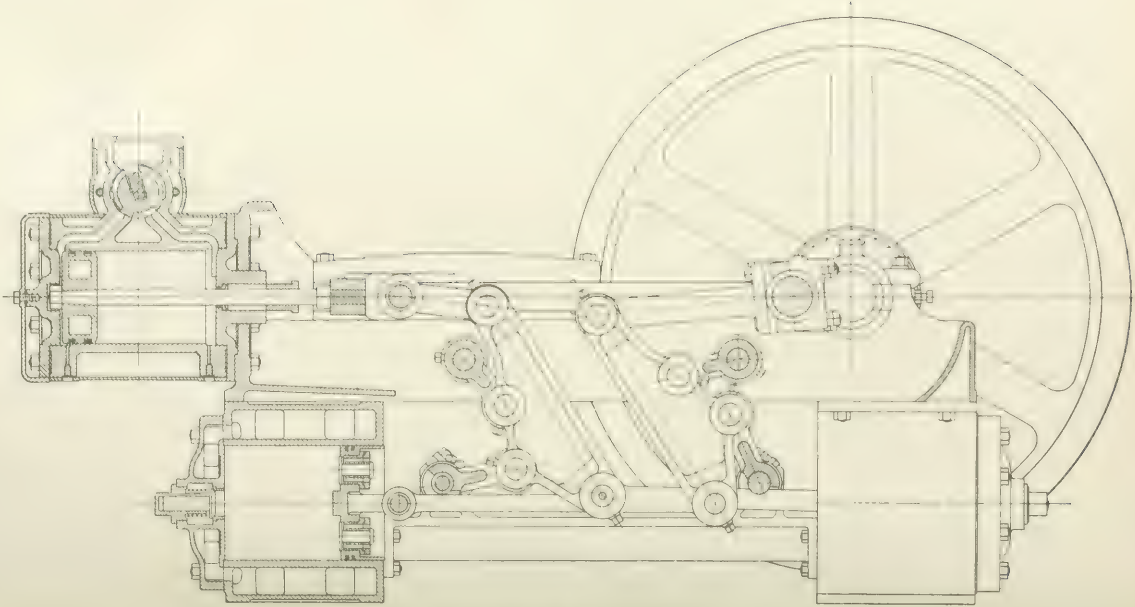
In redesigning or modifying an existing machine, never make a change merely for the sake of doing so. Give the good points of the machine a chance, and devote attention in the new design to correcting the bad points. It is in bad taste, if it be not actually childish, to "look wise and suggest a change" in details which happen to have been designed by another party, but which, nevertheless, are by common engineering judgment pronounced good for the special work intended. This element of unfair and selfish criticism has more than a moral bearing. When it is carried into the superintendence of designing work, it extinguishes the personality of the subordinate draftsman; his efficiency as an original thinker is lowered; and narrow designs are produced.

"The best way for a subordinate to dispose of what appears to be a poor suggestion from a superior, is to work it out to the best degree possible." If it turns out to be good the credit of working it out belongs to the man who did it. If it is actually bad, a careful working out will usually develop the fact beyond dispute, and save unprofitable argument. For the success or failure of a machine there is only one argument better than the detail drawings, and that is the machine itself in operation.

Detail drawings, however, are infinitely better prosecutors or defendants than a multitude of wordy counsel.

Summary. The above classification of machinery might be subdivided and extended indefinitely, and on the broad basis on which it is given it doubtless does not cover the entire field. As an illustration, however, not only of types of machinery, but of methods of design and study, it is hoped that it may be of assistance in giving a start to the student of machine design, in whatever class his interests may happen to lie.

It is the general principles of the art which it is important to master. It is not the designing of a locomotive, or a stationary steam engine, or a crane, or an engine lathe, or a rolling mill, which should be sought to be learned, but the designing of *any thing* that may confront us. Specializing is sure to come to the designer in the course of his experience, and when it does he merely fits to the particular specialty the principles he knows for all, and practically develops them along that individual line.



AIR COMPRESSOR N. Y. AIR BRAKE CO.)

General or Assembled Drawing

MACHINE DESIGN.

PART II.

Introduction. In Part I is illustrated a definite and systematic method of attacking the design of a *machine as a whole*. In Part II the same plan is followed with regard to the detail of its *component parts*, the machine elements which are chosen as illustrations of the method, being the simplest and most familiar forms in common use.

As before, the student must strive to grasp and absorb the *method* of design rather than any specific and established form of a machine part. Part II is not a compendium of design, does not attempt to be complete or exhaustive in any of its chapters, but is condensed and simplified in order to lead the student into systematic mechanical thinking and logical and definite action. Each chapter is intended to stimulate to further and more exhaustive study along lines broader than, and under conditions different from those that can be specified in a general discussion. But no matter how deeply investigation may be carried, or how specialized the study may become, the student must realize that his path of action in any case whatsoever must lie along the lines of *Analysis*, *Theory*, and *Practical Modification* systematically applied.

BELTS.

NOTATION. The following notation is used throughout the chapter on Belts:

A = Sectional area of belt (square inches) $= bh$.
b = Width of belt (inches).
F = Force of friction at pulley rim (lbs.).
h = Thickness of belt (inches)
μ = Coefficient of friction.
N = Number of revolutions of pulley per minute.
n = Fraction of circumference of pulley embraced by belt.
P = Driving force at pulley rim (lbs.) $= F$.
R = Radius of pulley (feet).
r = Radius of pulley (inches).
T = Initial tension (lbs.).
T_n = Total tension on tight side (lbs.).
T_o = Total tension on slack side (lbs.).
t = Working tension of belt (lbs. per square inch).
V = Velocity of belt (feet per minute).
w = Weight of belt per cubic inch (lbs.).
z = Factor due to centrifugal force.

ANALYSIS. When a belt is stretched over a pair of pulleys, is cut off at the proper length, and is laced together into an endless band, it is evident that as long as the belt is at rest there is a nearly uniform tension in it throughout its length, due to the tightness with which the lacing is drawn up. If the distance between the pulleys is considerable, the weight of the belt itself as it hangs between the pulleys will produce a slightly greater tension next to the pulleys than exists in the middle of the span. This increase of tension due to the weight of the belt would make but little difference in the unit stress in the material of which the belt is made; hence it may safely be assumed that the tension in the belt when at rest is uniform throughout its entire length.

When we start to transmit power through the belt by turning one of the pulleys, thereby driving the other pulley the condition of stress in the belt is at once materially changed. As the belt is a flexible member, we can transmit only a pull to the other pulley, thereby turning it around, the push which is at the same time given to the other side of the belt merely acting to make the belt sag or become slack. Hence the immediate effect of starting motion in a belt is to change the condition of equal tension throughout its length, to that of unequal tension in the two sides. The driving side is tight, while the other is loose, the former having gained as much tension as the latter has lost, and the sum of the two being practically equal to the sum of the tensions in the two sides of the belt when at rest. This is not strictly true, as will be shown later; but it is sufficiently accurate to form a good basis for the practical design, at least of slow-speed belts.

This condition of tight and slack sides is made possible by the fact that the belt, in being wrapped around the pulleys under tension, has friction on their surfaces. Thus, we can pull hard on one side without slipping the belt around the pulleys, but could not do this if the pulleys were perfectly smooth or frictionless, for in that case the slightest pull on one side would slip the belt around the pulleys. In fact, it would be impossible to produce any pull by means of the driving pulley, for the pulley would merely slip around inside the belt.

The amount of pull we can apply to the belt is therefore limited by the tension at which the belt slips around the pulley. Moreover, since the force of friction between the belt and pulley is dependent upon the normal force with which the belt is pressed against the pulley, and the coefficient of friction between the two, it is evident that the tighter the belt is laced up, and the rougher the surfaces of the pulley and belt, the greater is the force that can be transmitted through the belt. This leads to the conclusion that it would be possible to transmit any amount of power through any belt however small, if the belt were only laced up tight enough.

This conclusion is literally true; but the important fact now comes in, that the strength of the material of which the belt is made is limited, and while theoretically we might be able to accomplish the above, it would be impossible to do so in practice, for at a certain point the belt would break under the strain. Other practical considerations also come in, which fix this limit of power transmission at a point far below the breaking strength of the material.

The complete analysis is not quite as simple as the above, especially for high-speed belts. When the driving side of the belt becomes tight, it stretches and grows longer; and at the same time the other side of the belt becomes slack and grows shorter. But it is not true that the increase in the one side is the same as the decrease in the other, and this fact produces the condition that the sum of the tensions in motion is not quite the same as the sum of the tensions at rest.

Again, when the belt, as it passes around the pulley, changes its straight-line direction to circular motion, each particle of the belt—like a body whirling at the end of a cord about a center of rotation—tends by centrifugal force to fly away from the surface of the pulley, thereby decreasing the normal pressure, and hence the friction. This centrifugal force also changes somewhat the tensions in the belt between the pulleys. As the centrifugal force increases in proportion to the square of the linear velocity, it is evident that the effect is greater at high speeds than at moderate or low speeds.

A further circumstance that affects the driving power of a belt is the stiffness of the leather or other material of which the belt is made. As it passes around the pulley, the belt is bent to conform to the circumference of the pulley, and is again straightened out as it leaves the pulley. Hence the theoretically perfect action is modified somewhat according to the sharpness of the bending and the thickness or flexibility of the belt; in other words, a small pulley carrying a thick belt would be the worst case for successful calculation on a theoretical basis.

THEORY. The condition of the tight and loose sides of a belt transmitting power, is similar to that of the weighted strap and fixed pulley shown in Fig. 17. If motion is desired of the strap around the pulley, it is necessary to make the weight W_2 of such a magnitude that it will overcome not only the weight W_1, but also the friction between the strap and the pulley. The strap tension T_n is, of course, equal to W_2, and T_o to W_1. The equation showing the balance of forces for the condition when motion is about to occur, is:

$$T_n - T_o = F = P \text{ (driving force)}. \qquad (5)$$

If the pulley be free to turn on its axis, instead of being fixed as in Fig. 17, the strap by its friction on the pulley will turn the pulley, and the force of friction F becomes the driving force for the pulley as noted in equation 5 above.

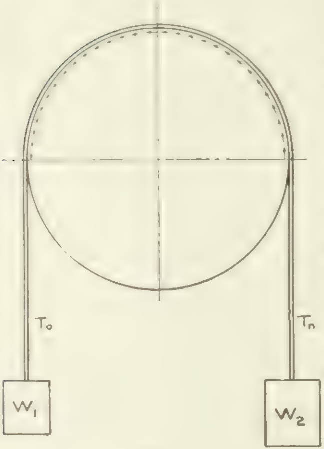


Fig. 17.

In Fig. 18, let us suppose that W is a weight representing the resistance to be overcome. The tensions T_n and T_o, equal at first owing to stretching the belt tightly over the pulleys at rest, change when an attempt is made to raise the weight by turning the larger pulley; and just as the weight leaves the floor, the equality of moments about the axis of the driven pulley gives the following equation:

$$(T_n - T_o) \times r = F \times r = P \times r = W \times r_1. \qquad (6)$$

This equality of moments remains as long as the motion of the weight is uniform, and represents closely the conditions under which belt pulleys work.

Although we know from the above what the *difference* of the belt tensions is, and what this difference will do when applied to the surface of a given pulley, we do not yet know what either T_n or T_o actually is; and until we do know, we cannot correctly proportion the belt. Hence we must find another relation between T_n and T_o which we can combine with equations 5 and 6. This relation is deduced by a process of higher mathematics, which results as follows:

$$\text{Common logarithm } \frac{T_n}{T_o} = 2.729\,\mu\,(1 - z)n. \qquad (7)$$

Treating equations 5 and 7 as simultaneous, values of both T_n and T_o can be found by the regular algebraic solution. As T_n is the larger, the actual area of belt to provide the necessary strength must be made to depend upon it.

The factor z in equation 7 depends upon the centrifugal force developed by the weight of the belt passing around the pulley. Its value, found from mechanics, is:

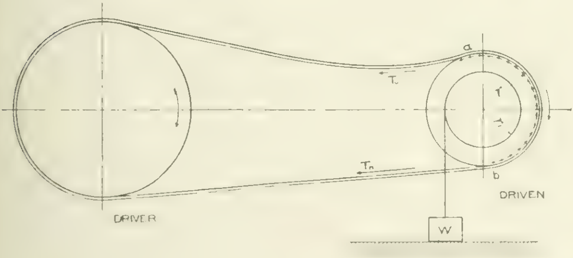


Fig. 18.

$$z = \frac{w \times V^2}{9{,}660 \times f}$$

Having found the maximum pull on the belt, it now remains to write the equation:

External force = Internal resistance;

or, $$T_n = b \times h \times t. \qquad (8)$$

Usually the most convenient way to handle this equation is to assume h and t, and then solve for b.

Summing up the theoretical treatment of belt design, we simply combine equations 5, 6, 7, and 8, and solve for the quantity desired. Discussion of the constants involved in these equations, and of the practical factors controlling them, is given in the following:

PRACTICAL MODIFICATION. The force of friction F, which is the same as driving force P, depends on:

Coefficient of friction (μ) between belt and pulley;

Tightness of the belt;

Centrifugal force of the belt;

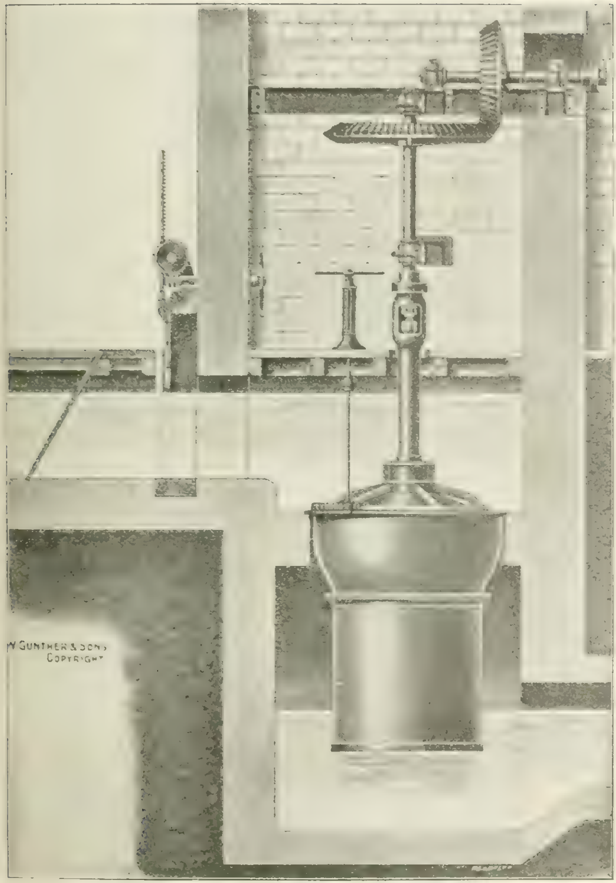
Angle of contact of belt with pulley.

The coefficient of friction (μ), according to experiments and observed operation of belts transmitting power, varies from .15 to .56 for leather on cast iron. An average value consistent with a reasonable amount of slip, the belt being in good running order, is .30. If the belt is oily, or likely to become so in use, a lower value should be taken.

The tighter the belt is drawn up, the greater is the pressure against the pulley, and hence the greater is the force of friction. But if we pull the belt up too tightly, when we begin to drive, T becomes too great, and the belt breaks or is under such stress that it wears out quickly. Moreover, the great side pressure on the bearings carrying the shaft produces excessive friction, and the drive is inefficient. This is why a narrow belt driven at high speed is more efficient than a wide belt at slow speed, for we cannot pull up the former as tightly as the latter without overstraining it, and yet it is possible to get the required power out of the narrow belt by running it at high speed.

The centrifugal force is of small importance for low speeds, say of 3,000 feet per minute and less; and it therefore may usually be neglected. The factor [illegible] then becomes zero in the expression 1 [illegible] in equation 7, and the second member of the equation stands simply $2.729 \cdot \mu \cdot n$.

The angle of contact of belt with pulley is important, as a large value gives a great difference between T_n and T_o; and it is desirable to make this difference as great as possible, because thereby the driving force is increased. The loose side of a horizontal belt should always be above, as then the natural sag of the loose



GENERAL ARRANGEMENT OF JONVAL TURBINE.
Central Engineering Works, Oldham, Eng.

side due to its slackness tends to increase the angle of contact with the pulley, while the tightening up of the lower side acts against its sag to make the loss of wrap as little as possible. Vertical belts which have the driving pulley uppermost, utilize the weight of the belt to increase the pressure against the surface of the pulley, slightly increasing its capacity for driving. The angle of contact may be artificially increased by a tightening pulley which presses the belt further around the pulley than it would naturally lie. It adds however, the friction of its own bearing, and impairs the efficiency of the drive. For ordinary horizontal belts, the angle of contact is but little more than 180°, and the value of n in equation 7 may be safely assumed at $\frac{1}{2}$ unless the pulleys are of relatively great difference of diameter and very close together.

Strength of Leather Belting. The breaking tensile strength of leather belting varies from 3,000 to 5,000 pounds per square inch. Joints are made by lacing, by metal fasteners, or by cementing. The strength of a laced joint may be about $\frac{7}{10}$, of a metal-fastened joint, about $\frac{1}{2}$, and of a cemented joint, about equal to the full strength of the belt cross-sectional area. The proper working strength of belting depends on the use to which the belt is put. A continuously running belt should have a low tension in order to have long life and a minimum loss of time for repairs. For double leather belting it has been shown that a working tension of 240 pounds per square inch of sectional area gives an annual cost — for repairs, maintenance, and renewals — of 14 per cent of first cost. At 400 pounds working tension, the annual expense becomes 37 per cent of first cost. These results apply to belts running continuously; larger values may be used where the full load comes on but a short time, as in the case of dynamos.

Good average values for working tensions of leather belts are:

Cemented joints,	400	pounds	per square	inch.
Laced joints,	300	"	"	"
Metal joints,	250	"	"	"

Horse-Power Transmitted by Belting. If P is the driving force in pounds at the rim of the pulley, and V is the velocity of the belt in feet per minute, the theoretical horse-power transmitted is evidently:

$$\text{H. P.} = \frac{\text{P} \times \text{V}}{33{,}000}. \tag{9}$$

It is evident from the above that the horse-power of a belt depends upon two things, the driving force P and the velocity V. If either of these factors is increased, the horse power is increased. Increasing P means a tight belt. Hence a tight belt and high speed together give maximum horse power. But a tight belt means more side strain on shaft and journal. Therefore, from the standpoint of efficiency, *use a narrow belt under low tension at as high a speed as possible.*

Empirical rules for horse-power of belting, if used with judgment, give safe results when applied to very general cases. A common rule used by American engineers is:

$$\text{H. P.} = \frac{b \times \text{V}}{1{,}000}. \tag{10}$$

For a double belt, assuming double strength, this becomes:

$$\text{H. P.} = \frac{b \times \text{V}}{500}. \tag{11}$$

With large pulleys and moderate velocities, this may hold good. With small pulleys and high velocities, however, the uncertain stresses induced by the bending of the fibers of the belt around the pulley, and the relatively great loss due to centrifugal force, modify this relation; and a safer value for a double belt of the ordinary kind is:

$$\text{H. P.} = \frac{b \times \text{V}}{540}; \tag{12}$$

or, still safer,

$$\text{H. P.} = \frac{b \times \text{V}}{700}. \tag{13}$$

If we compare the theoretical value of equation 9 with the empirical value of equation 10 by putting them equal to each other, thus:

$$\text{H. P.} = \frac{\text{P} \times \text{V}}{33{,}000} = \frac{b \times \text{V}}{1{,}000}.$$

and solve for P, we get :

$$P = 33b. \qquad (14)$$

This develops the fact that the empirical rule of equation 10 assumes a driving force of 33 pounds per inch of width of single belt.

Another way of expressing equation 10 is: A single belt will transmit one horse-power for every inch of width at a belt speed of 1,000 feet per minute.

Speed of Belting. The most economical speed is somewhere between 4,000 and 5,000 feet per minute. Above these values the life of the belt is shortened; also "flapping," "chasing," and centrifugal force cause considerable loss of power. The limit of speed with cast-iron pulleys is fixed at the safe limit for bursting of the rim, which may be taken at one mile per minute.

Material of Belting. Oak-tanned leather, made from the part of the hide which covers the back of the ox, gives the best results for leather belting. The thickness of the leather varies from .18 to .25 inch. It weighs from .03 to .04 pound per cubic inch. The average thickness of double leather belts may be taken as .33 inch, although a variation in thickness from $\frac{1}{4}$ inch to $\frac{7}{16}$ inch is not uncommon. Double leather belts may be ordered light, medium, or heavy.

In a single-thickness belt the grain or hair side should be next to the pulley, for the flesh side is the stronger and is, therefore better able to resist the tensile stress due to bending set up where the belt makes and leaves contact with the pulley face. Double leather belts are made by cementing the flesh sides of two thicknesses of belt together, leaving the grain side exposed to surface wear.

Raw hide and semi-raw hide belts have a slightly higher coefficient of friction than ordinary tanned belts. They are useful in damp places. The strength of these belts is about one and one-half times that of tanned leather.

Cotton, cotton-leather, rubber, and leather link belting are some of the forms on the market, each of which is especially adapted to certain uses. For their weights and their tensile and working strengths consult the manufacturers' catalogues.

A prominent manufacturer's practice in regard to the sizes of leather belting will be found useful for comparison, and is indicated in the table on page 12.

Initial Tension in Belt. On the assumption that the sum of the tensions is unchanged, whether the belt be at rest or driving, we should have the following relation:

$$T_n + T_o = 2T;$$

whence,

$$T = \frac{T_n + T_o}{2}. \qquad (15)$$

This is not strictly true, however, as is stated in the "Analysis of Belts." It has been found that in a horizontal belt working at about 400 lbs. tension per square inch on the tight side, and having 2 per cent slip on cast-iron pulleys (*i. e.*, the surface of the driven pulley moving 2 per cent slower than that of the driver), the increase of the sum of the tensions when in motion over the sum of the tensions at rest, may be taken at about $\frac{1}{3}$ the value of the tensions at rest. Expressing this in the form of an equation

Sizes of Leather Belting.

WIDTH.	THICKNESS.	
	Single.	Double.
1 inch	[illegible] inch.	[illegible] inch.
2 "	$\frac{3}{16}$ "	$\frac{5}{16}$ "
3 "	$\frac{7}{32}$ "	$\frac{3}{8}$ "
4 "	$\frac{7}{32}$ "	$\frac{3}{8}$ "
5 "	$\frac{7}{32}$ "	$\frac{3}{8}$ "
6 "	[illegible] "	$\frac{3}{8}$ "
10 "	$\frac{5}{16}$ "	$\frac{3}{8}$ "
12 "	……	$\frac{3}{8}$ "
14 "	……	$\frac{13}{32}$ "
20 "	……	$\frac{7}{16}$ "

$$T_n + T_o = \frac{4}{3}(2T) = \frac{8 \times T}{3}.$$

$$T = \frac{3}{8}(T_n + T_o). \qquad (16)$$

The value of T thus found would be the pounds initial tension to which the belt should be pulled up when being laced, in order to produce T_n and T_o when driving.

This value is not of very great practical importance, as the proper tightness of belt is usually secured by trial, by tightening pulleys, by pulley adjustment (as in motor drives), or by shortening the belt from time to time as needed. It is worth noting, however, that for the most economical life of the belt it would be very desirable in every case to weigh the tension by a spring balance when giving the belt its initial tension. This, however, is not always easy or even feasible; hence it is a refinement with which good practice usually dispenses, except in the case of large and heavy belts.

PROBLEMS ON BELTS.

1. Determine the belt tensions in a laced belt transmitting 50 horse-power at a velocity of 3,500 feet per minute. Suppose that the arc of contact is 180; weight of belt = .035 pound per cub. in.; and coefficient of friction 25 per cent.

2. What is the width of above belt if it is $\frac{3}{16}$ inch in thickness?

3. What initial tension must be placed on above belt?

4. The main drive pulley of a 120-horse-power water wheel is 6 feet in diameter. A cemented leather belt is to connect the main pulley to a 3-foot pulley on the line shafting in a mill. The horizontal distance between centers of shafting is 24 feet; coefficient of friction, 30 per cent; revolutions per minute of line shafting, 180. Design the belt for this drive.

5. An 8-inch double belt $\frac{3}{8}$ inch thick connects 2 pulleys of 30-inch and 20-inch diameter respectively. The horizontal distance between the centers is 12.5 feet. The coefficient of friction is 0.3, and the weight of belt per cubic inch is 0.035 pound. Working tension, 300 pounds per square inch. Speed of belt 5,000 feet per minute. Lower face of 30-inch pulley is the driving face. Required the H. P. which may be transmitted (theoretically).

6. Compare the theoretical horse-power in problem 5 with that obtained by the use of empirical formula.

PULLEYS.

NOTATION.—The following notation is used throughout the chapter on Pulleys:

A = Area of rim (sq. in.).
a = " " arm (" ").
b = Center of pulley to center of belt (inches), practically equal to R.
C_1 = Total centrifugal force of rim (lbs.).
c = Distance from neutral axis to outer fiber (inches).
D = Diameter of pulley (inches).
D_1 = " " hub (").
d_1 = " " bolt at root of thread (inches).
d = Diameter of bolt holes (inches).
g = Acceleration due to gravity (ft. per sec.).
[illegible] = Width of arm at any section (inches).
I = Moment of inertia.
L = Length of rim, center of bolt to bolt (inches).
L_1 = Length of rim flange of split pulley (inches).
l = Length of hub (inches).
N = Number of arms.
n = " " rim bolts, each side.
P = Driving force of belt (lbs.).
P_1 = Force at circumference of shaft (lbs.).
P_2 = Force at circumference of hub (lbs.).
p = Stress in rim due to centrifugal force (lbs. per sq. in.).
R = Radius of pulley (inches).
S = Fiber stress (lbs. per sq. in.).
s = Fiber stress in flange (lbs. per sq. in.).
t = Thickness of web (inches).
t_1 = " " rim (").
t_2 = " " bolt flange (inches).
T_1 = Tension of belt on tight side (lbs.).
T_2 = " " loose " (").
v = Velocity of rim (ft. per sec.).
w = Weight of material (lbs. per cub. in.).

ANALYSIS. If a flexible band be wrapped *completely* about a pulley, and a heavy stress be put upon each end of the band, the rim of the pulley will tend to collapse just like a boiler tube with steam pressure on the outside of it. A compressive stress is induced which is very nearly evenly distributed over the cross-section of the rim, except at points where the arms are connected thereto. At these points the arms, acting like rigid posts, take this compressive stress. Now, a pulley never has a belt wrapped *completely* round it, the fraction of the circumference embraced by the belt being usually about ½, and seldom, even with a tightener pulley, reaching ¾. Assuming the wrap to be ½ the circumference, and that all the side pull of the belt comes on the rim, none being transmitted through the arms to the hub, we then have one half of the rim pressed hard against the other half by a force equal to the resultant of the belt tensions, which, in this case, would be the sum of them. Dividing the pulley by a plane through its center and perpendicular to the belt, the cross-section of the rim cut by this plane has to take this compressive stress.

This analysis is satisfactory from an ideal standpoint only, for the intensity of stress due to the direct pull of the belt, with the usual practical proportions of rim, would be very small. Moreover, the element of speed has not been considered.

When the pulley is under speed, a set of conditions which complicates matters is introduced. The centrifugal force due to the weight of the rim and arms is no longer negligible, but has an important influence upon the design and material used. This centrifugal force acts against the effect of the belt wrap, tending to reduce the compressive stress, or, overcoming the latter entirely, sets up a tensional stress both in the rim and in the arms. It also tends to distort the rim from a true circle by bowing out the rim between the arms, thus producing a bending moment in the rim, maximum at the points where the rim joins each arm.

It can readily be imagined that the analysis in detail of these various stresses in the rim acting in conjunction with each other is quite complicated — far too much so in fact, to be introduced here. As in most cases of such design, however, one controlling influence can be separated out from the others, and the design based thereon with sufficient margin of strength to satisfy the more obscure conditions. This is rational treatment, and the "theory" will be studied accordingly.

The rim, being fastened to the ends of the arms, tends, when driving, to be sheared off, the resisting area being the areas of the cross-sections of the arms at their point of joining the rim. The force that produces this shearing tendency is the driving force of the belt, or the difference between the tensions of the tight and loose sides.

Again, at the point of connection of the arms to the hub, a shearing action takes place, so that, if this shearing tendency were carried to rupture, the hub would literally be torn out of the arms. Now, viewing the arms as beams loaded at the end with the driving force of the belt, and fixed at the hub, a heavy bending stress is set up, which is maximum at the point of connection to the hub. If the rim were stiff enough to distribute this driving force equally between the arms, each arm would take its proportional share of the load. The rim, however, is quite thin and flexible; and it is not safe to assume this perfect distribution. It is usual to consider that one-half the whole number of arms take the full driving force.

THEORY— Pulley Rim. Evidently it is practically impossible to make so thin a rim that it will collapse under the pull of a belt. As far as the *theory* of the rim is concerned, its proportion probably depends more upon the calculation for centrifugal force than upon anything else.

In order to separate this action from that of any other forces, let us suppose that the rim is entirely free from the arms and hub, and is rotating about its center. Every particle, by centrifugal force, tends to fly radially outward from the center. This condition is represented in Fig. 19. The tendency with which one-half of the rim tends to fly apart from the other is indicated by the force C_1; and the relation between C_1 and the small radial force c for each unit length of rim can readily be found from the principles of mechanics. The case is exactly like that of a boiler or a thin pipe subjected to uniform internal pressure, which, if carried to rupture, would split the rim along a longitudinal seam.

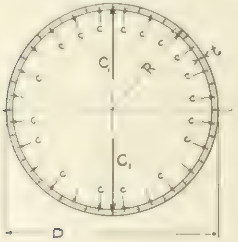


Fig. 19.

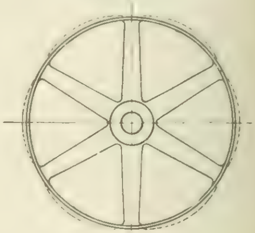


Fig. 20.

The tensile stress thus induced per square inch can be found by simple mechanics to be:

$$p = \frac{12wv^2}{g}; \qquad (17)$$

or, since $w = 0.26$ pound, and $g = 32.2$ feet per second,

$$p = 0.097\,v^2 \quad \left(\text{say } \frac{v^2}{10}\right); \qquad (18)$$

and, if p be taken equal to 1,000 pounds per square inch, which is as high as it is safe to work cast iron in this place,

$$v = 100 \text{ feet per second.} \qquad (19)$$

This shows the curious fact that the intensity of stress in the rim is directly proportional to the square of the linear velocity, and wholly independent of the area of cross section. It is also to be noted that 100 feet per second is about the limit of speed for cast-iron pulleys to be safe against bursting.

If we wish to consider theoretically the rim together with the arms as actually connected to it, we get a much more complicated relation. This condition is shown in Fig. 20, where the rim, expanding more than the arms, bulges out between them. This makes the rim act something like a continuous beam uniformly loaded; but even then the resulting stress is not clearly defined on account of the variable stretch in the arms. Investigation on this basis is not needed further than to note that it is theoretically better, in the case of a split pulley, to make the joint close to the arms, rather than in the middle of a span.

Pulley Arms. The centrifugal force developed by the rim and arms tends to pull the arms from the hub. On the belt side, this is balanced to some extent by the belt wrap, which tends to compress the arm and relieve the tension. On the side away from the belt, the centrifugal action has full play, but the arm is usually of such cross-section that the intensity of this stress is very low. It may safely be neglected.

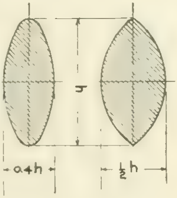


Fig. 21.

The rim being very thin in most cases, its distributing effect cannot be depended on, hence the driving force of the belt may be taken entirely by the arms immediately under the portion of the belt in contact with the pulley face. For a wrap of 180° this means that only one-half of the pulley arms can be considered as effective in transmitting the turning effort to the hub. Each of these arms is a lever fixed at one end to the hub and loaded at the other. A lever of this description is called a "cantilever" beam, its maximum moment existing at its fixed end. The load that each of these beams may be subjected to is $\frac{P}{\frac{N}{2}}$, and therefore the maximum external moment at the hub is $\frac{2PL}{N}$. From mechanics we know that the internal moment of resistance of any beam section is $\frac{SI}{c}$, and that equilibrium of the beam can be satisfied only when the external moment is equal to the internal moment of resistance of the beam section. Equating these two, we have:

$$\frac{2PL}{N} = \frac{SI}{c}. \qquad \textbf{(20)}$$

The arms of a pulley are usually of the elliptical or segmental cross-section, and may be of the proportions shown in Fig. 21. For either of these sections the fraction $\frac{I}{c}$ is approximately equal to $0.0393h^3$. For convenience (the error caused being on the safe side), L may be taken as equal to the full radius of the pulley R, whence

$$\frac{2PR}{N} = \frac{(T_1 - T_2)R}{N} = 0.0393Sh^3. \qquad \textbf{(21)}$$

in which S may be from 2,000 to 2,250 for cast iron

Taking moments about the center of the pulley, and solving for P_1, the force acting at the circumference of the hub, we have:

$$\frac{2PR}{N} = \frac{P_1 D}{2};$$

or

$$P_1 = \frac{4PR}{ND} \qquad \textbf{(22)}$$

The area of an elliptical section is π times the product of the half axes. With the proportions of Fig. 21, this becomes:

$$a = \pi \times 0.2h \times 0.5h = \frac{\pi h^2}{10} \qquad \textbf{(23)}$$

Equating the external force to the internal shearing resistance, we have:

$$\frac{4PR}{ND} = \frac{\pi h^2 S_s}{10},$$

or,

$$S_s = \frac{40PR}{DN\pi h^2}. \qquad \textbf{(24)}$$

in which the shearing stress S_s may run from 1,500 to 1,800 for cast iron.

Although both bending and shearing stresses as calculated above exist at the base of the arms, the bending is, in practically every case, the controlling factor in the design of the arms. An arm-section large enough to resist bending would have a very low intensity of shear.

If the number of arms be increased indefinitely, we come to a continuous arm or web, in which the bending action is eliminated. It may still shear off at the hub, where the area of metal is the least, at minimum circumference. In this case the area under shearing stress is $\pi D_1 T$; and the force at the circumference of the hub, is

$$\frac{PR}{\frac{D_1}{2}} = \frac{2PR}{D_1}$$

Equating external force to internal shearing resistance, we have:

$$\frac{2PR}{D_1} = \pi D_1 T S_s ;$$

$$\text{or,} \quad S_s = \frac{2PR}{\pi D_1^2 T} \qquad \textbf{(25)}$$

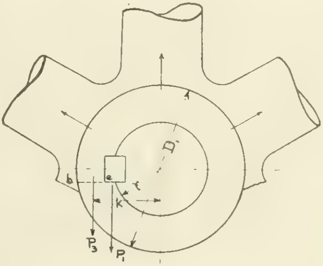


Fig. 22.

Pulley Hub. As in the case of the arms, centrifugal force does not play much part in the design of the hub of a pulley. The hub is designed principally to carry the key, and through it transmit the turning moment to the shaft. Considered thus, the hub may tear along the line of the key or crush in front of the key.

For example, in Fig. 22, if the connection with the lower arms be neglected, and the upper arms be held fast while a turning force P_1, at the surface of the shaft, is transmitted to the hub through the key, then the metal of the hub directly in front of the key is under crushing stress; and the metal along the line *eb*, from the corner to the outside, is under tensile stress. This condition is the worst that could possibly happen, because the bracing effect of the lower arms has been neglected, and the key is located between the arms.

Taking moments about the center of the shaft, the value of the force at the shaft circumference, or the "key pull," is:

$$P_1 = \frac{PR}{r}. \qquad (26)$$

Now $\frac{P_1}{P_2} = \frac{l}{r}$, l being the distance from the center of shaft to center of t_h, and the area of metal which is subjected to the tearing action P_2 is $l \times t_h$. Equating the external force to the internal resistance, and assuming that the stress is equally distributed over the area $l \times t_h$, we have:

$$P_2 = \frac{r}{l} P_1 = \frac{r}{l} \times \frac{PR}{r} = S \times l \times t_h;$$

or,

$$S = \frac{PR}{l \times l \times t_h}. \qquad (27)$$

The intensity of crushing on the metal in front of the key, due to force P_1, depends upon the thickness of the key, and is properly discussed later under "Keys."

PRACTICAL MODIFICATION—Pulley Rim. The theoretical calculation for the thickness of the rim may give a thickness that could not be cast in the foundry, and the section in that case will have to be increased. As light a section as can be readily cast will usually be found abundantly strong for the forces it has to resist. A minimum thickness at the edge of the rim is about $\frac{3}{16}$ inch; and as the pulleys increase in size, the rim also must be made thicker; otherwise the rim will cool so much more quickly than the arms, that the latter, on cooling, will develop shrinkage cracks at the point of junction.

For a velocity of 6,000 feet per minute, we find from equation 18 that the tension in pounds per square inch, in the rim, due to centrifugal force, is 970. Though this in itself is a low value, yet the uncertain nature of cast iron, its condition of internal stress, due to casting, and the likely existence of hidden flaws and pockets, have established the usage of this figure as the highest safe limit for the peripheral speed of cast-iron pulleys. It is easily remembered that *cast-iron pulleys are safe for a linear velocity of about one mile per minute.*

To prevent the belt from running off the pulley, a "crown" or rounding surface is given the rim. A tapered face, which is more easily produced in the ordinary shop, may be used instead. This taper should be as little as possible, consistent with the belt staying on the pulley; ½ inch per foot each way from the center is not too much for faces 4 inches wide and less; while above this width ¼ inch per foot is enough. As little as ½ inch total crown has been found to be sufficient on a 24-inch face, but this is probably too little for general service.

Instead of being "crowned," the pulley may be flanged at the edges; but flanged pulley rims chafe and wear the edge of the belt.

The inside of the rim of a cast-iron pulley should have a taper of ½ inch per foot to permit easy withdrawal from the foundry mould. This is known as "draft." If the pattern be of metal, or if the pulley be machine-moulded, the greater truth of the casting does not require that the inside of the rim be turned, as the pulley, at low speeds, will be in sufficiently good balance to run smoothly. For roughly moulded pulleys, and for use at high speeds, however, it is necessary that the rim be turned on the inside to give the pulley a running balance.

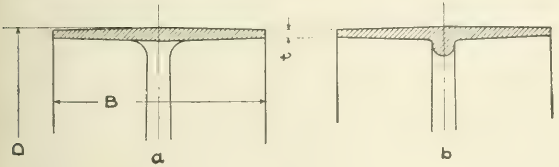


Fig. 23.

Fig. 23 shows a plain rim *a* also one stiffened by a rib *b*. Where heavy arms are used this rib is essential so that there will not be too sudden change of section at the junction of rim and arm, and consequent cracks or spongy metal.

Pulley Arms. The arms should be well filletted at both rim and hub, to render the flow of metal free and uniform in the mould. The general proportions of arms and connections to both hub and rim may perhaps be best developed by trial to scale on the drawing board. The base of the arm being determined, it may gradually taper to the rim, where it takes about the relation of $\frac{2}{3}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ the dimensions chosen at the hub. The taper may be modified until it looks right, and then the sizes checked for strength.

Six arms are used in the great majority of pulleys. This number not only looks well, but is adapted to the standard three-jawed chucks and common clamping devices found in most shops. Elliptical arms look better than the segmental style. The flat, rectangular arm gives a very clumsy and heavy appearance, and is seldom found except on the very cheapest work.

A double set of arms may be used on an excessively wide face, but it complicates the casting to some extent.

Although a web pulley may be calculated for shear at the hub, yet it will usually be found that with a thickness of web intermediate between the thickness of the rim and that of the hub, which will satisfy the casting requirements, the requirements as to strength will be fully met.

Pulley Hub. The hub should have a taper of $\frac{1}{2}$ inch per foot draft, similar to that of the inside of the rim. The length of the hub is arbitrary, but should be ample to prevent rocking on the shaft. A common rule is to make it about $\frac{3}{4}$ the face width of the pulley.

The diameter of the hub, aside from the theoretical consideration given above, must be sufficient to take the wedging action of a taper key without splitting. This relation cannot well be calculated. Probably the best rule that exists is the familiar one that the hub should be twice the diameter of the shaft. This rule, however, cannot be literally adhered to, as it gives too small hubs for small shafts and too large ones for large shafts. It is always well to locate the key, if possible, underneath an arm instead of between the arms, thus gaining the additional strength due to the backing of the arm.

SPLIT PULLEYS.

ANALYSIS and THEORY. The split pulley is made in halves and provided with bolts through flanges and bosses on the hub for holding the two halves together. When the pulley is in place on the shaft, bolted up as one piece, it is subjected to the same forces as the simple pulley. Hence its general design follows the same principles, and we need only study the fastening of the two halves, and the effect of this fastening on the detail of rim and hub.

The simplest stress we have to consider on the rim bolts is one of pure tension, due to the centrifugal force of the halves of the pulley. A safe assumption to make is that the rim is free from the arms and hub, as in the simple pulley, and that the centrifugal force developed by it has to be taken by the rim bolts alone. In other words, consider the rim bolts as belonging entirely to the rim, and make them as strong as the rim, leaving the hub bolts to take the centrifugal force of the arms and hub, and the spreading tendency due to the key.

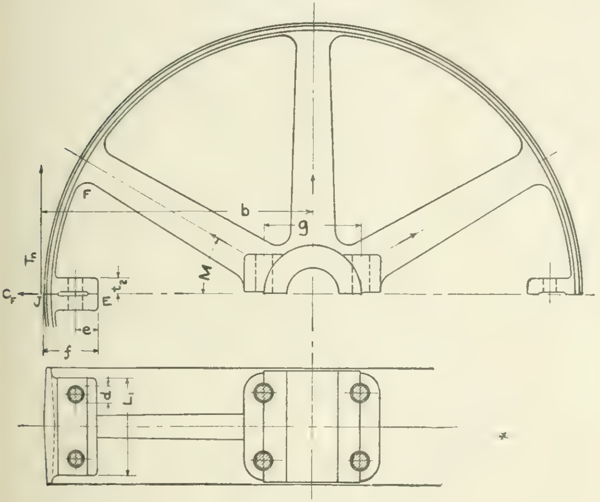


Fig. 24.

Another tensile stress is induced in the rim bolts by the fact, that, having made an open joint in the rim, and in addition placed the extra weight of lugs there, the centrifugal action at this point is increased, and at the same time a point of weakness in the rim introduced. Referring to Fig. 24, the rim flanges FJ tend to fly out due to the centrifugal force C_F. This tends to open the joint J at the outside of the rim; to throw a bending stress on the rim, maximum at the point F; and to "heel" the rim flanges about the point E. The rim bolts acting on the leverage e about the point E must resist these tendencies, and are thereby put in tension.

Referring to equation 18, we find the intensity of stress due to the centrifugal force of the rim in lbs. per square inch to be:

$$p = \frac{v^2}{10}.$$

If A is the sectional area of the rim in square inches, this means that the total strength of the rim is represented by $\frac{Av^2}{10}$. The strength of a bolt is represented by the expression $\frac{S\pi d_1^2}{4}$. If, now, there are n bolts in the flange, the total resisting force of the bolts is $\frac{nS\pi d_1^2}{4}$: and the equation representing equality of strength between rim and bolts is:

$$\frac{Av^2}{10} = \frac{nS\pi d_1^2}{4} \cdot \quad (28)$$

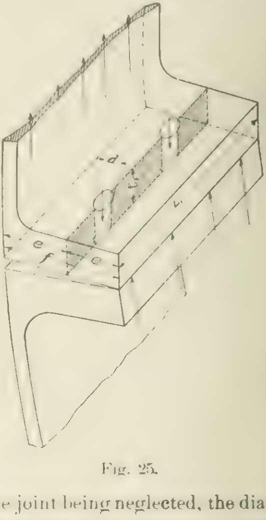
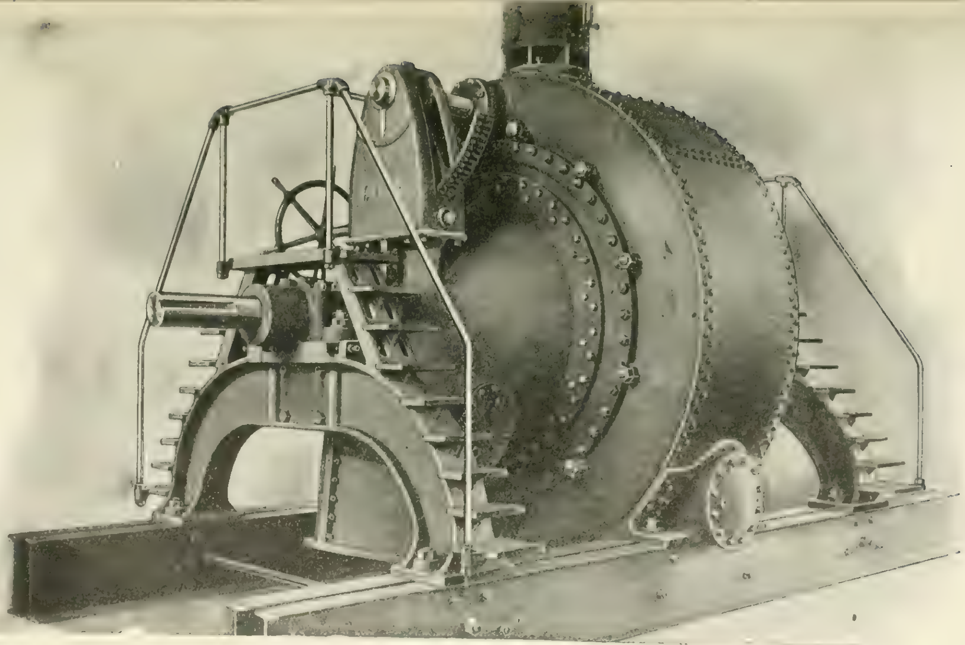


Fig. 25.

from which, by a proper assumption of the fiber stress S, which should be low, the opening-up tendency of the joint being neglected, the diameter at the root of the thread d_1 may be calculated, and the nominal bolt diameter chosen. Reference to the table for strength of bolts, given in the chapter on Bolts, Studs, etc., will be found convenient.



HIGH DUTY SAMPSON TURBINE. NIAGARA DESIGN.

James Leffel and Co.

It is very doubtful if the tension on the flange bolts, due to the "heeling" about E can be calculated with sufficient accuracy to be of much value. It is probably better to assume S at a low value, say 4,000, and, in addition, for large and high-speed pulleys, stiffen the rim by running a rib between the flange and the adjacent arm. It is evident that if we make the rim so stiff that it cannot deflect, there will be no "heeling" about E; and the bolts will be well proportioned by the preceding calculation, giving them equal strength to that of the rim section.

For the bolt flange itself, any tendency to open at the joint J would cause it to act like a beam loaded at some point near its middle with the bolt load, and supported at J and E. This condition is shown in Fig. 25. Probably the weakest section would be along the line of the bolt centers. We have just noted that the carrying capacity of the bolts is $\frac{nS\pi d_1^2}{4}$. Hence, assuming that $e = \frac{1}{2}r$, which is about the worst case which could happen, we have a beam of length r loaded at the middle with $\frac{nS\pi d_1^2}{4}$ and supported at the ends. Equating the external moment to the internal moment, we have:

$$\frac{nS\pi d_1^2}{4} \cdot \frac{r}{4} = s\frac{(L_1 - nd)t^2}{6}. \qquad (29)$$

from which the fiber stress s in the flange may be calculated and judged for its allowable value.

L_1 may be assumed a little narrower than the pulley face; and t from 1 inch to 2 inches or more, depending on the thickness of the rim.

The hub bolts doubtless assist the rim bolts in preventing the halves of the pulley from flying apart. They also clamp the hub tightly to the shaft, preventing any looseness on the key. Their function is a rather general one; and the specific stress which they receive is practically impossible to calculate. As a matter of fact, if the hub bolts were left out entirely, the pulley would still drive fairly well, but general rigidity and steadiness would be impaired. Hence the size of the hub bolts is more a practical question than one involving calculation. The rim bolts should be figured first, and their size determined on; then the hub bolts can be judged in proportion to the rim bolts, the diameter of shaft, the thickness and length of the hub, and the general form of the pulley. Often appearance is the deciding factor, it being manifestly inconsistent to associate small fastenings with large shafts or hubs, even though the load be actually small.

PRACTICAL MODIFICATION. Practical considerations are chiefly responsible for the location of the joint in a split pulley between the arms instead of directly at the end of an arm, where theoretically it would seem to be required. It is usually more convenient in the foundry and machine shop to have the joint between the arms; so we generally find it placed there, and strength provided to permit this. It is possible, however, to provide a double arm, or a single split arm, in which case the joint of the pulley comes at the arm, and the "heeling" action of the rim flanges is prevented.

The rim bolts should be crowded as close as possible to the rim in order to reduce the stress on them, and also the stress in the flange itself. The practical point must not be forgotten, however that the bolts must have sufficient clearance to be put into place beneath the rim.

While it is evident that the rim bolts are most effective in taking care of the centrifugal action of the halves, yet in small split pulleys it is quite common to omit the rim bolts and to use the hub bolts for the double purpose of clamping the shaft and holding the two halves together. The pulley is cast with its rim continuous throughout the full circle, and it is machined in this form. It is then cracked in two by a well-directed blow of a cold chisel, the casting being especially arranged for this along the division line by cores so set that but a narrow fin of metal holds the two parts together. This provides sufficient strength for casting and turning, but permits the cold chisel to break the connection easily.

SPECIAL FORMS OF PULLEYS.

The plain cast-iron pulley has been used in the foregoing discussion as a basis of design. A pulley is, however, such a common commercial article, and finds such universal use, that special forms which can be bought in the open market, are not only cheaper but better than the plain cast-iron pulley, at least for regular line-shaft work.

Cast iron is a treacherous and uncertain material for rims of pulleys. It is not well suited to high fiber stresses; hence the range of speed permissible for pulley rims of cast iron is limited. Steel and wrought iron, having several times the tensional strength of cast iron, and being, moreover, much more nearly homogeneous in texture, are well suited for this work; one of the best pulleys on the market consists of a steel rim riveted to a cast iron spider. Such an arrangement combines strength and lightness, without increasing complication or expense.

The all-steel pulley is a step further in this direction. Here the rim, arms, and hub are each pressed into shape by specially devised machinery, then riveted and bolted together. This pulley is strictly a manufactured article, which could not compete with the simpler forms unless built in large quantities, enabling automatic machinery to be used. Large numbers of pulleys are built in this way, and are put on the market at reasonable prices.

Wood-rim pulleys have been made for many years, and, except for their clumsy appearance, are excellent in many respects. The rim is built up of segments in much the same way as an ordinary pattern is made, the segments being so arranged that they will not shrink or twist out of shape from moisture. The hubs may be of cast iron, bolted to wooden webs, and carrying hard wood split bushings, which may be varied in bore within certain limits so as to fit different sizes of shafting. The wooden pulley is readily and most often used in the split form, thus enabling it to be put in position easily at any point of a crowded shaft. It is often merely clamped in place, thus avoiding the use of keys or set screws, and not burring or roughening the shaft in any way.

PROBLEMS ON PULLEYS.

1. Calculate the tensile stress due to centrifugal force in the rim of a cast-iron pulley 30 inches in diameter, at 500 revolutions per minute.

2. The driving force of a belt on a 36-inch pulley is 800 lbs., and the belt wrap about 180°. Calculate proportions of el-

liptical arms to resist bending, the allowable fiber stress being 2,000.

3. A pulley 12 inches in diameter, $\frac{5}{8}$-inch web, 4-inch diameter hub, transmits 25 horse-power at a belt speed of 3,000 ft. per minute. Calculate the maximum shearing stress in the web.

4. In Fig. 24 assume the following data: L_1 = 7 inches; c = 1 inch; s = $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches; f = 3 inches; area of rim = 3 sq. in.; allowable tensile stress in rim 1,000 lbs. per sq. in. Calculate the diameter of the rim bolts.

5. Calculate the fiber stress in the rim bolt flange along the line of the bolts.

SHAFTS.

NOTATION. The following notation is used throughout the chapter on Shafts.

A = Angular deflection (degrees).
B = Simple bending moment (inch-lbs.).
B_e = Equivalent bending moment (inch-lbs.).
c = Distance from neutral axis to outer fiber (inches).
d, d_0, d_2, d_3, d_4 = Diameters of shaft (inches).
d_1 = Internal diameter of shaft (inches).
E = Direct modulus of elasticity (a ratio).
e = Transverse deflection (inches).
G = Transverse modulus of elasticity (a ratio).
H = Horse-power (33,000 ft.-lbs. per minute).
I = Moment of inertia.
K = Distance between bearings (inches).
L = Length along shaft (inches).
L_1, L_2 = Length of bearings (inches).
M = Distance between bearings (feet).
N = Number of revolutions per minute.
P = Driving force of belt (lbs.).
P_1 = Load applied as stated (lbs.).
R = Radius at which load as stated acts (inches).
S = Fiber stress, tension, compression, or shearing (lbs. per sq. in.).
T = Simple twisting moment (inch-lbs.).
T_e = Equivalent twisting moment (inch-lbs.).
T_n = Tension in tight side of belt (lbs.).
T_o = Tension in loose side of belt (lbs.).
W = Load applied as stated (lbs.).

ANALYSIS. The simplest case of shaft loading is shown in Fig. 26. The equal forces W, similarly applied to the disc at the distance R from its center, tend to twist the shaft off, the tendency being equal at all points of the length L between the disc and the post, to which the shaft is rigidly fastened. The fastening to the post, of course, in this ideal case, takes the place of a resisting member of a machine. A state of pure torsion is induced in the shaft; and any element, such as *ca*, is distorted to the position *cb*, *aob* being the angular deflection for the distance L.

The case of Fig. 27 is illustrative of what occurs when a belt pulley is substituted for the simple disc. Here the twisting action is caused by the driving force of the belt, which is $T_n - T_o = P$.

acting at the radius R. Torsion and angular deflection exist in the shaft, as in Fig. 26. In addition, however, another stress of a different kind has been introduced; for not only does the shaft tend to be twisted off, but the forces T_n and T_o, acting together, tend to bend the shaft, the bending moment varying with every section of the shaft, being nothing at the point , and maximum at the point c. This combined action is the most common of any that we find in ordinary machinery, occurring in nearly every case with which we have to deal.

In Fig. 27, if the forces T_n and T_o be made equal, there will be no tendency at all to twist off the shaft, but the bending will remain, being maximum at the point c. This condition is illustrative of the case of all ordinary pins and studs in machines. In this sense, a pin or a stud is simply a shaft which is fixed to the frame of the machine, there being no tendency to turning of the pin or stud itself. The same condition would be realized if the disc in Fig. 27 were loose upon the shaft. In that case, the bending moment would be caused by $T_n + T_o$ acting with the leverage L. Of course there would have to be some resistance for $T_n - T_o$ to work against, in order that torsion should not be transmitted through the shaft. This condition might be introduced by having a similar disc lock with the first one by means of lugs on its face, thus receiving and transmitting the torsion.

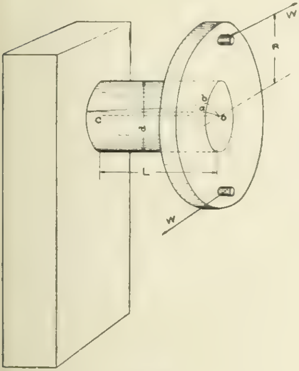


Fig. 26.

If the distance L becomes very great, both the angular deflection due to twisting, and the sidewise deflection due to bending, become excessive, and not permissible in good design. This trouble is remedied by placing a bearing at some point closer to the disc, which, as it decreases L, of course, decreases the bending moment and therefore the transverse deflection. The angular deflection can be decreased only by bringing the resistance and load nearer together.

The above implies, of course, that the diameter of the shaft is not changed; it being obvious that increase of diameter means increase of strength and corresponding decrease of both angular and transverse deflection.

If the speed of the shaft be very high, and the distance between bearings, represented by L, be very great, the shaft will take a shape like a bow string when it is vibrated, and smooth action cannot be maintained.

It is necessary to carry the cases of Figs. 26 and 27 but a single step farther to illustrate the actual working conditions of shafting in machines. Suppose the rigid post to have the shaft passing clear through it, and to act as a bearing, so that the shaft can freely rotate in it, the resistance being exerted somewhere beyond. The twisting moment will be unchanged, also the bending moment; but the effect of the bending moment will be on each particle of the shaft in succession, now putting compression on a given particle, and then tension, then compression again, and so on, a complete cycle being performed for each revolution. This

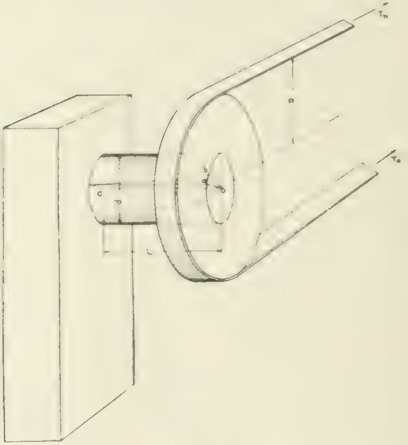


Fig. 27.

brings out a very important difference between the bending stress in pins and the bending stress in rotating shafts. In the one case the bending stress is non-reversing; in the other, reversing; and a much higher fiber stress is permissible in the former than in the latter.

THEORY—Simple Torsion. In the case of simple torsion the stress induced in the shaft is a shearing one. The external moment acts about the axis of the shaft, or is a polar moment; hence in the expression for the moment of the internal forces, the polar moment of inertia must be used. Now, from mechanics we have:

$$T = \frac{SI}{c};$$

and $$\frac{I}{c} = \frac{d^3}{5.1} \text{ (for circular section of diameter } d\text{)};$$

therefore, $$T = \frac{Sd^3}{5.1}, \qquad (30)$$

from which the diameter for any given twisting moment and fiber stress can readily be found.

For a hollow shaft this expression becomes:

$$T = \frac{S(d_0^4 - d_1^4)}{5.1 d_0}. \qquad (31)$$

Simple Bending. The stresses induced in a pin or shaft under simple bending are compression and tension. The external moment in this case is transverse, or about an axis across the shaft; hence the direct moment of inertia is applicable to the equation of forces.

$$B = \frac{SI}{c};$$

and $$\frac{I}{c} = \frac{d^3}{10.2} \text{ (for circular section of diameter } d\text{)};$$

therefore, $$B = \frac{Sd^3}{10.2}. \qquad (32)$$

For a hollow shaft or pin this expression becomes:

$$B = \frac{S(d_0^4 - d_1^4)}{10.2 d_0}. \qquad (33)$$

Combined Stresses. In the greater number of cases met with in practice, we find two or more simple stresses acting at the same time, and, although the shaft may be strong enough for any one of them alone, it may fail under their combined action. The most common cases are discussed below.

Tension or Pressure Combined with Bending. In Fig. 28, the load W produces a tension acting over the whole area of d, due to its direct pull. It also produces a bending action due to the leverage R, which puts the fibers at B in tension and those at the opposite side in compression. It is evident, therefore, that by taking the algebraic sum of the stresses at either side we shall obtain the net stress. It is also evident that the greatest and controlling stress will occur on the side where the stresses add, or on the tension side. Hence, from mechanics,

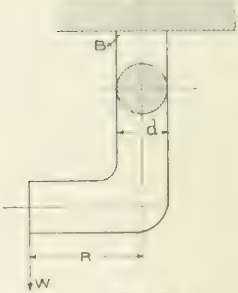


Fig. 28.

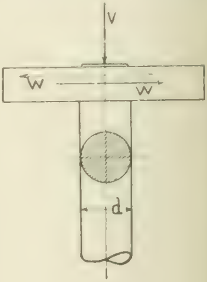


Fig. 29

$$W = \frac{\pi d^2 S}{4};$$

or, $$S = \frac{4W}{\pi d^2} \text{ (due to direct tension).} \qquad \mathbf{(34)}$$

Also, $$WR = \frac{Sd^3}{10.2};$$

or, $$S = \frac{10.2\ WR}{d^3} \text{ (due to bending).} \qquad \mathbf{(35)}$$

Hence the combined tensional stress acting at the point B, or, in fact, at any point on the extreme outside of the vertical shaft toward the force W, is:

$$S = \frac{4W}{\pi d^2} + \frac{10.2\ WR}{d^3}. \qquad (36)$$

If W acted in the opposite direction, the greatest stress would still be at the side B, but would be a compression instead of a tension, of the same magnitude as before.

Tension or Compression Combined with Torsion. In Fig. 29, V might be the end load on a vertical shaft; and the two forces W might act in conjunction with it as in the case of Fig. 26, at the radius R. This case is not very often met with. It is usually possible to combine the moments, find an equivalent moment of a simple kind, and use the corresponding simple fiber stress. In the case in question we have a direct stress to be combined with a shearing stress, and mechanics gives us the following solution:

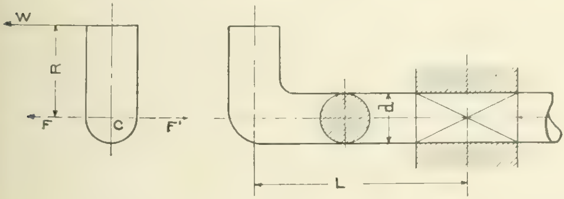


Fig. 30.

Let S_s = simple shearing stress (lbs. per sq in.).
Let S_c = simple compressive stress (lbs. per sq. in.).
Let S_{rs} = resultant shearing stress (lbs. per sq. in.).
Let S_{rc} = resultant compressive stress (lbs. per sq. in.).

We then have :

$$2WR = \frac{S_s d^3}{5.1};$$

or,

$$S_s = \frac{5.1(2WR)}{d^3}. \qquad (37)$$

Also,

$$V = \frac{\pi d^2 S_c}{4};$$

or,
$$S_c = \frac{4}{\pi d^2} V. \qquad (38)$$

Now, from a solution given in simplest form in "Merriman's Mechanics"—which the student may consult, if desired—values for the resultant stresses can be found. Whichever of these is the critical one for the material used, should form the basis for its diameter:

$$S_{rs} = \sqrt{S_s^2 + \frac{S_c^2}{4}}. \qquad (39)$$

Also,
$$S_{rc} = \frac{S_c}{2} + \sqrt{S_s^2 + \frac{S_c^2}{4}}. \qquad (40)$$

Bending Combined with Torsion. In Fig. 30, the load W acts not only to twist the shaft off, but also presses it sidewise against the bearing. As it is usually customary to figure the maximum moment as taking place at the center of the bearing, the length L, which determines the bending moment, is taken to that point. The theory of the stress induced in this case is complicated. In órder to make the magnitude of the moments clearer, let us introduce the two equal and opposite forces F and F', each equal to W, at the point C. We can evidently do this without changing the equilibrium of the shaft in any way. We now see that W and F' act as a couple giving a twisting moment WR, and that F acts with a leverage L, producing a bending moment FL = WL, at the middle of the bearing.

If, now, we find an equivalent twisting moment, or an equivalent bending moment, which would produce the same effect on the fibers of the shaft as the two combined, we can treat the calculation of the diameter as a simple case, and proceed as in the cases of simple torsion and simple bending considered above. This relation is given us in mechanics:

$$B_e = \frac{B}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{B^2 + T^2}. \qquad (41)$$

$$T_e = B + \sqrt{B^2 + T^2}. \qquad (42)$$

These expressions are true in relation to each other, on the assumption that the allowable fiber stress S is the same for tension, compression, and shearing. For the material of which shafts are usually made, this is near enough to the truth to give safe and practical results. Using the expressions for internal moments of resistance as previously noted for circular sections, we then have:

$$B_e = \frac{Sd^3}{10.2}. \qquad (43)$$

Also, $$T_e = \frac{Sd^3}{5.1}. \qquad (44)$$

Either equation may be used; the diameter d will result the same whichever equation is taken. For the sake of simplicity, equation 42 is generally preferred, equation 44 being taken in conjunction with it.

The expression $\sqrt{B^2 + T^2}$ is one that would be a long and tedious task to calculate. By inspection it is readily seen that this quantity can be graphically represented by means of a right-angled triangle having B and T as the sides. We may then lay down on a piece of paper, to some convenient scale, the moments B and T as the sides of a right-angled triangle, when, upon measuring the hypothenuse, we can easily read off to the same scale $\sqrt{B^2 + T^2}$. Even if the drawing is made to a small scale, the accuracy of the reading will be sufficient to enable the value for d to be solved very closely. This graphical method is illustrated in Part I.

Deflection. For a shaft subjected to pure torsion, as in Fig. 26, the angular deflection due to the load may be carried to a certain point before the limit of working fiber stress is exceeded. The equation worked out from mechanics for this condition, is:

$$A = \frac{584\ TL}{Gd^4}, \qquad (45)$$

which at once gives the number of degrees of angular deflection for a shaft whose modulus of elasticity, torsional moment, and length are known.

The shearing modulus of elasticity of ordinary shaft steel runs from 10,000,000 to 13,000,000, giving as an average about 12,000,000.

By the well-known relation of "Hooke's law" (stresses proportional to strains within the elastic limit of the material), we have:

$$\frac{A}{360} = \frac{SL}{\pi G d};$$

or

$$S = \frac{A \pi G d}{360\ L}. \qquad (46)$$

A twist of one degree in a length of twenty diameters is a usual allowance. Substituting A = 1, L = 20d, and G = 12,000,000, we have:

$$S = 5{,}240 \text{ (nearly)}. \qquad (47)$$

This is a safe value for shearing fiber stress in steel. In fact, in calculations for strength, even for reversing stresses, the usual figure is 8,000 (lbs. per square inch), thus indicating that the relation of one degree to twenty diameters is well within the limit of strength.

For a hollow shaft the above formula becomes:

$$A = \frac{584\ TL}{(G d_0^4 - d_1^4)}. \qquad (48)$$

Transverse deflection occurs when the shaft is subjected to a bending moment. It may therefore exist alone or in conjunction with angular deflection. Transverse deflection of shafts, however, rarely exists up to the point of limiting fiber stress, because before that point is reached the alignment of the shaft is so disturbed that it is not practicable as a device for transmitting power. A transverse deflection of .01 inch per foot of length is a common allowance; but it is impossible to fix any general limit, as in many cases this figure, if exceeded, would do no harm, while in others—such as heavily loaded or high-speed bearings—even the figure given might be fatal to good operation.

The formula for transverse deflection, deduced from mechanics, varies with the system of loading. The three most common conditions only are given below, reference to the handbook being necessary if other conditions must be satisfied:

Fixed at one end, loaded at the other.

$$e = \frac{WL^3}{3\ EI}. \qquad (49)$$

Supported at ends, loaded in middle,

$$= \frac{WL^3}{48EI}. \qquad (50)$$

Supported at ends, loaded uniformly,

$$= \frac{5WL^3}{384EI}. \qquad (51)$$

For transverse deflection the direct modulus of elasticity must be used, for the fibers are stretched or compressed, instead of being subjected to a shearing action. The most usual value of the direct modulus of elasticity for ordinary steel is 30,000,000, and is denoted in most books by the symbol E. Both the shearing and direct moduli of elasticity are really nothing but the ratio of the stress to the strain produced by that stress, it being assumed that the given material is perfectly elastic. A material is supposed to be perfectly elastic up to a certain limit of stress, and it is within this limit that the relation as above holds good.

Expressed in the form of an equation this would be:

$$E = \frac{S}{\frac{l}{L}} = \frac{SL}{l}. \qquad (52)$$

Centrifugal Whirling. If a line shaft deflect but slightly, due to its own weight, or the weight or pressure of other bodies upon it, and then be run at a high speed, the centrifugal force set up increases the deflection, and the shaft whirls about the geometrical line through the centers of the bearings, causing vibration and wear in the adjoining members. It is evident that the practical remedy for this tendency in a shaft of given diameter and speed is to locate the bearings sufficiently close to render the action of small effect.

Many formulæ might be given for this relation, each being based on different assumptions. Perhaps as widely applied and as simple as any, is the "Rankine" formula, which sets the limit of length between bearings for shafts not greatly loaded by intermediate pulleys or side strains:

$$M = 175\sqrt{\frac{d}{N}}. \qquad (53)$$

Horse Power of Shafting. Horse power is a certain specific rate of doing work, *viz.*, 33,000 foot pounds per minute. Hence, to find the horse power that a shaft will transmit, we must first find the work done, and then relate it to the speed. Take, for example, the case of a pulley, the symbols being the same as before, namely, P = driving force at rim of pulley (lbs.); R = radius of pulley (inches); N = number of revolutions per minute; and H = horse power. Then,

Work = force × distance = P (2 π R N) = H × 33,000 × 12;

$$\text{or,} \qquad PR = \frac{63{,}025H}{N}. \qquad \textbf{(54)}$$

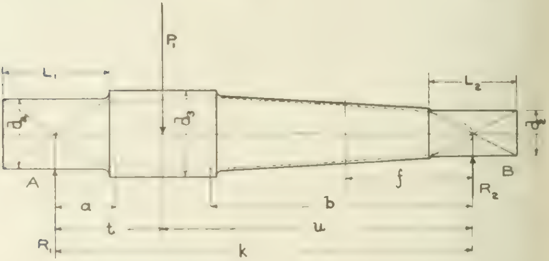


Fig 31.

This is one of the most useful equations for calculations involving horse power. By it the number of inch pounds torsion for any horse-power can be at once ascertained.

It should be clearly noted, however, that in this equation the bending moment does not enter at all. Hence any shaft based in size on *horse power alone*, is based on *torsional moment alone*, bending moment being entirely neglected. In many cases the bending moment is the controlling one as to limiting fiber stress. Hence empirical shafting formulæ depending upon the horse power relation are unsafe, unless it is definitely known just what torsional and bending moments have been assumed.

The only safe way to figure the size of a shaft is to find accurately what torsional moment and bending moment it has to sustain, and then combine them according to equation 41 or 42 introducing the element of speed as basis for assumption of a high or low working fiber stress.

PRACTICAL MODIFICATION. The practical methods of handling the theoretical shaft equations have reference to the fit of the shaft within the several pieces upon it. The running fit of shaft in a bearing is usually considered to be so loose that the shaft could freely deflect to the center of the bearing. This is doubtless an extreme view of the case, but it is the only safe assumption. Hence a shaft running in bearings (see Fig. 31) is supposed to be supported at the centers of those bearings, and its theoretical strength is based on this supposition.

For a tight or driving fit upon the shaft, a safe assumption to make is that there is looseness enough at the ends of the fit to permit the shaft to be stressed by the load a short distance within the faces of the hub, say from ½ inch to 1 inch. For example, referring to Fig. 31, suppose P_1 to be the transverse load, exerted through a hub fast upon the part of the shaft d_3. Taking moments about the center of one bearing, and solving for the reaction at the center of the other, we have:

$$P_1 u = R_1 K;$$

or,

$$R_1 = \frac{P_1 u}{K}. \qquad (55)$$

Also,

$$P_1 t = R_2 K;$$

or,

$$R_2 = \frac{P_1 t}{K}. \qquad (56)$$

Now, as far as the part of shaft d_3 is concerned, it may depend for its size on the bending moment $R_2 b$, or on $R_1 a$. The reason the lever arm is not taken to the point directly under the load P_1, is because it is not practically possible to break the shaft at that point, on account of the reinforcement of the hub, which is tightly fitted upon it. Trying these moments to see which is the greater, we shall find that the greater moment always occurs in connection with the longer lever arm. Hence $R_2 b$ will be greater than $R_1 a$. We then write the equation of *external moment = internal moment:*

$$R_2 b = \frac{S d_3^3}{10.2};$$

or,
$$d_3 = \sqrt[3]{\frac{10.2\ R\,l}{S}}. \qquad (57)$$

For the size of bearing A we have the maximum bending moment:

$$R_1 \frac{L_1}{2} = \frac{S\,d_4^3}{10.2};$$

or,
$$d_4 = \sqrt[3]{\frac{10.2\ R_1 L_1}{2\,S}}. \qquad (58)$$

For the size of bearing B we have the maximum moment:

$$R_2 \frac{L_2}{2} = \frac{S\,d_5^3}{10.2};$$

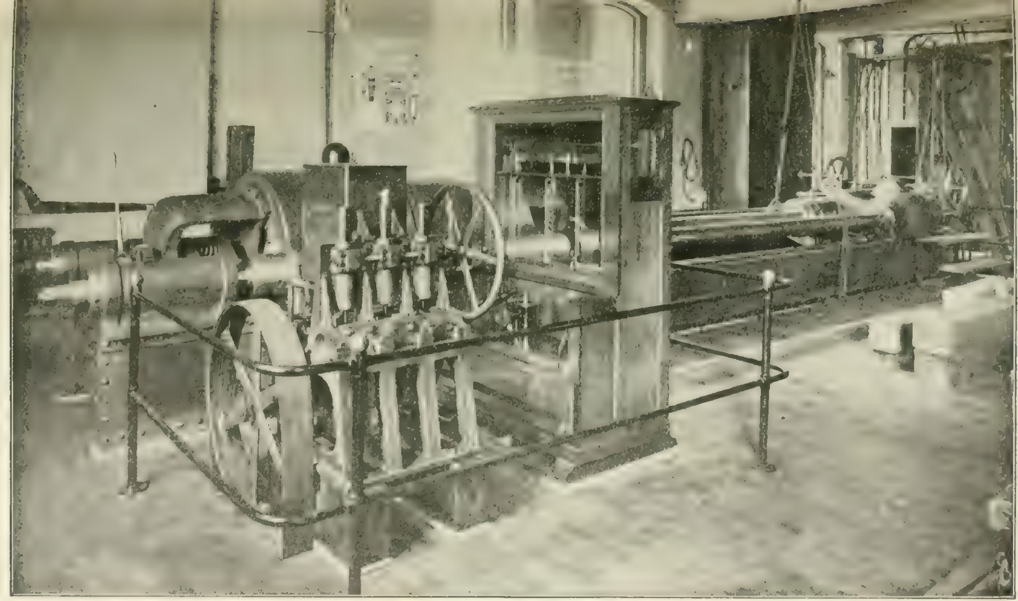
or,
$$d_5 = \sqrt[3]{\frac{10.2\ R_2 L_2}{2\,S}}. \qquad (59)$$

The above calculations are, of course, on the assumption that no torsion is transmitted either way through this axle. We should in that case have combined torsion and bending. This has been made sufficiently clear in preceding paragraphs and in Part I, to require no further illustration.

The dotted line in Fig. 31 shows the theoretical shape the axle should take under the assumed conditions. The practical modification of this shape is obvious. At the shoulders of the shaft the corners should not be sharp, but carefully filleted, to avoid the possible starting of a crack at those points.

Often the diameter of certain parts of a shaft may be larger than strength actually calls for. For example, in Fig. 31, the part d_3 need only be as large as the dotted line; but it is obvious that unless the key is sunk in the body of the shaft, the hub could not be slipped into place over the part d_4. If, however, the diameter d_3 be made large enough so that the bottom of the key will clear d_4, the rotary cutter which forms the key way in d_3 will also clear d_4, and the key way can be more easily produced.

In cases where fits are not required to be snug, a straight shaft of cold-rolled steel is commonly used. Here any parts fastened on the middle of the shaft have to be driven over a considerable length of the shaft before they reach their final position. Moreover, there is no definite shoulder to stop against, and measurement has to be resorted to in locating them.



EMERY TESTING MACHINE.

Mechanical Engineering Department, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

It does not pay to turn any portion of a cold-rolled shaft, unless it be the very ends, for relieving the "skin tension" in such material is sure to throw the shaft out of line and necessitate subsequent straightening.

Turned-steel shafts for machines may with advantage be slightly varied in diameter wherever the fit changes; and although the production of shoulders costs something, yet it assists greatly in bringing the parts to their exact location, and enables the workman to concentrate his best skill on the fine bearing fits, and to save time by rough-turning the parts that have no fits.

Hollow shafts are practicable only for large sizes. The advantages of removing the inner core of metal, aside from some specific requirement of the machine, are that it eliminates all possibility of cracks starting from the checks that may exist at the center, permits inspection of the material of a shaft, and, in case of hollow-forged shafts, gives an opening for the forging mandrel. In the last case, the material is improved by a rolling process.

The material most common for use in machine shafting is the ordinary "Machinery Steel," made by the Bessemer process. This steel is apt to be "seamy," and often contains checks and flaws that are detected only upon sudden and unexpected breakage of a part apparently sound. This characteristic is a result of the process employed in the manufacture of the steel, and thus far has never been wholly eliminated. **Bessemer steel** is, nevertheless, a very useful material, and the above weakness is not so serious but that this kind of steel can be used with success in the great majority of cases.

When a more homogeneous shaft is desired, **open-hearth steel** is available. This is a more reliable material to use than the Bessemer, and costs somewhat more. It makes a stiff, true, fine-surfaced shaft, high-grade in every respect. It is usually specified for armature shafts of dynamos and motors.

Steels of special strength, toughness, and elasticity are made under numerous processes. **Nickel steel** is perhaps the most conspicuous example. While for this steel a high price has to be paid, yet its great strength, in connection with other valuable qualities, makes it a material extremely valuable for service where light weight is essential, or where contracted space demands small size.

The range of strength of these various steels is so great that it is well nigh useless to go into a discussion of it here. Reference should be had to the extended discussions of the handbooks, and to special trade pamphlets. A study of the possibilities of steel in its various forms for use in shafting, is very valuable as a basis for design, as it can almost be said that a machine consists chiefly of a "collection of shafts with a structure built round them." The shafts are like a core, and evidently the size of the core determines the shell about it.

PROBLEMS ON SHAFTS.

1. Required the twisting moment on a shaft that transmits 30 horse-power at 120 revolutions per minute.

2. Find the diameter of a steel shaft designed to transmit 50 horse-power at 150 revolutions per minute.

3. Assuming same data as in Problem 1, find the diameters of a hollow shaft for a value of S = 8,000.

4. A belt on an idler pulley embraces an angle of 120 degrees. Assuming tension of belt 1,000 pounds on each side, and pulley located midway between bearings, which are 30 inches from center to center, what is the diameter of shaft required?

5. Calculate the diameter of a steel shaft designed to transmit a twisting moment of 400,000 inch-pounds and also to take a bending moment of 300,000 inch-pounds.

6. Find the angular deflection in a 4-inch shaft 20 feet long when subjected to a load of 5,500 pounds applied to an arm of 30 inch radius. Assume transverse modulus of elasticity equal to 12,000,000.

7. The overhung crank of a steam engine has a force of 32,000 lbs. at the center of the crank pin, which is 12 inches from the center of the shaft bearing, measured parallel to the shaft. The radius of crank arm is 10 inches. Assume S equal to 10,000. Calculate the diameter of the crank shaft.

8. On a short, vertical steel shaft the load is 5,000 pounds. A gear, 36 teeth, 1½ diametral pitch, at top of shaft, transmits a load of 1,000 pounds at the pitch line. Safe shear = 7,500. What is the diameter of the shaft?

SPUR GEARS.

NOTATION.—The following notation is used throughout the chapter on Spur Gears:

b = Breadth of rectangular section of arm (inches).

M, M_1 = Revolutions per minute.

μ = Coefficient of friction between teeth.

C =Width of arm extended to pitch line (inches).
c =Distance from neutral axis to outer fiber (inches).
D=Pitch diameter of gear (inches).
F =Face of gear (inches).
f =Clearance of tooth at bottom (inches).
G=Thickness of arm extended to pitch line (inches).
H=Thickness of tooth at any section (inches).
h =Depth of rectangular section of arm (inches).
I =Moment of inertia.
K=Thickness of rim (inches).
L =Distance from top of tooth to any section (inches).
N =Number of teeth.
n =Number of arms.
P =Diametral pitch (teeth per inch of diameter).
P^1=Circular pitch (inches).
Q, Q_1 =Normal pressure between teeth (lbs.).
R, R_1 =Resultant pressure between teeth (lbs.).
r, r_1=Radius of pitch circles (inches).
S =Fiber stress of material (lbs. per sq. in.).
s =Addendum of tooth (inches)=Dedendum of tooth.
t =Thickness of tooth at pitch line (inches).
W =Load at pitch line (lbs.).
y =Coefficient for "Lewis" formula.

ANALYSIS. If a cylinder be placed on a plane surface, with its axis parallel to the plane, an attempt to rotate the cylinder about its axis would cause it to roll on the plane.

Again, if two cylinders be provided with axial bearings, and be slightly pressed together, motion of one about its axis will cause a similar motion of the other, the two surfaces rolling one on the other at their common tangent line. If moved with care, there will be no slipping in either of the above cases—which is explained by the fact that no matter how smooth the surfaces may appear to be, there is still sufficient roughness to make the little irregularities interlock and act like minute teeth.

The magnitude of the force possible to be transmitted depends not only on the roughness of the surfaces, but on the amount of pressure between them. Suppose that one cylinder is a part of a hoisting drum, on which is wound a rope with a weight attached. We can readily make the weight so great that, no matter how hard we press the two cylinders together, the driving cylinder will not turn the hoisting cylinder, but will slip past it. If now, instead of increasing the pressure, which is detrimental both to cylinders and bearings of same, we increase the coarseness of the surfaces, or, in other words, put teeth of appreciable size on these surfaces, we attain the desired result of positively driving without excessive side pressure.

These artificial projections, or teeth, must fit into one another; hence the surfaces of the original cylinders, having been broken up into alternate projections and hollows, have entirely disappeared to the eye; they nevertheless exist as ideal or imaginary surfaces, which roll together with the same surface velocities as if in bodily form, provided that the curves of the teeth are correctly formed. Several mathematical curves are available for use as tooth outlines, but in practice the **involute** and **cycloidal curves** are the only ones used for this purpose.

The ideal surfaces are known as **pitch cylinders** or **pitch circles.** In Fig. 32 is shown an end view of such a pair of cylinders in contact at their pitch point P. In gear calculations we assume that there is no slip between the pitch circles, acting as driving cylinders; hence the speeds of the two pitch circles at the

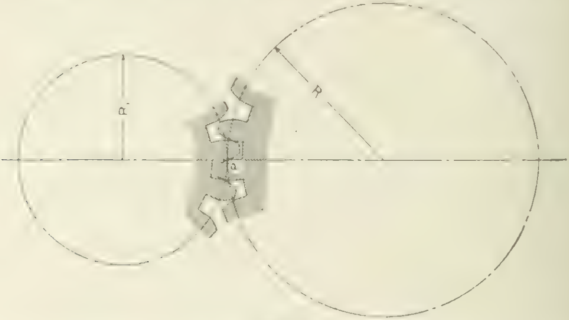


Fig. 32.

pitch point are equal. If M and M_1 be the revolutions per minute of the cylinders respectively, r and r_1 their radii, then

$$2 \pi r M = 2 \pi r_1 M_1;$$

or,

$$\frac{M}{M_1} = \frac{r_1}{r}. \qquad (60)$$

That is, the number of revolutions varies inversely as the radii.

The simple calculation as above is the key to all calculations involving gear trains in reference to their speed ratio.

Fig. 33 represents cycloidal teeth in the two extreme positions of beginning and ending contact. The normal pressure Q or Q_1 between the teeth in each position acts through the pitch point O, as it must always do in order to insure the condition of ideal rolling of the pitch circles, and the velocity ratio proportional to $\frac{r_1}{r}$ As the surfaces of the teeth slide together, frictional resistance is produced at their point of contact. This force is widely variable, depending on the material and condition of the tooth surfaces, whether smooth and well lubricated, or rough and gritty. As this resistance acts in conjunction with the normal force between the teeth, we may construct a parallelogram of forces on these two as a base, the resultant pressure between the teeth being slightly changed thereby, as shown in Fig 33.

Assuming a coefficient of friction μ, the force of friction is μ Q or μ Q_1 and the resultant pressure R or R_1.

Tooth B of the FOLLOWER is therefore under a heavy bending moment measured by the product RL, L being the perpendicular distance from the center of the tooth at its base to the line of the force. This tooth also has a relatively small compressive stress due to the resolved part of R along the radius, and a relatively small shearing stress due to the resolved part of R along a tangent to the pitch circle.

Tooth D of the driven wheel or FOLLOWER has a relatively large shearing stress, a small bending moment, and practically no direct compressive stress.

Tooth A of the driving wheel or DRIVER has a relatively large shearing stress, a small bending moment, and small compressive stress.

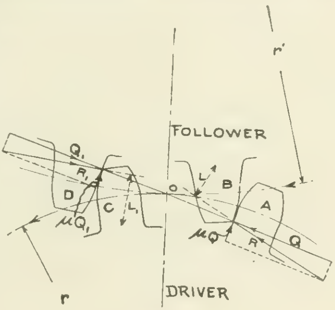


Fig. 33.

Tooth C of the DRIVER has a large bending moment, but small compressive and shearing stresses.

The conditions as noted above are not those of every pair of gears, in fact they vary with every difference of pitch circle, or of detail and position of tooth. It is true, however, that in nearly all cases in practice the bending stress is the controlling one from a theoretical standpoint. Moreover, the designer must consider the form and strength of the tooth when it is under the condition of maximum moment. This evidently, from the above, occurs at the beginning of contact, for the follower teeth; and at the end of contact, for the driver teeth. In the particular case illustrated in

Fig. 33, if the material in both gears were the same, tooth C, being the weaker at the root, would probably break before B; but if C were of steel, and B of cast iron, B might break first.

It will be noticed that R is nearly parallel to the top of the tooth; and it may easily happen that the friction may become of such a value that it will turn the direction of R until it lies along the top of the tooth exactly, which is the condition for maximum moment. For strength calculations it is usual to consider this condition as existing in all cases.

At the beginning of contact there is more or less shock when the teeth strike together, and this effect is much more evident at high speeds. There is also at the beginning of contact a sort of chattering action as the driving tooth rubs along the driven tooth.

Uniform distribution of pressure along the face of the tooth is often impaired by uneven wear of the bearings supporting the gear shafts, the pressure being localized on one corner of the tooth. The same effect is caused by the accidental presence of foreign material between the teeth. Again, in cast gearing, the spacing may be irregular, or, on account of draft on the pattern, the teeth may bear at the high points only. While it is usual to consider that the load is evenly distributed along the face of the tooth, yet the above considerations show that *an ample margin of strength must always be allowed* on account of these uncertainties.

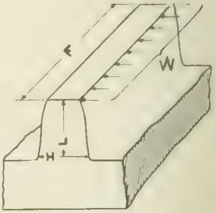


Fig. 34.

When the number of teeth in the mating gears is high, the load will be distributed between several teeth ; but, as it is almost certain that at some time the proper distribution of load will not exist, and that one tooth will receive the full load, it is considered that practically the only safe method is so to design the teeth that a single tooth may be relied upon to withstand the full load without failure.

THEORY. Based on the Analysis as given, the theory of gear teeth assumes that one tooth takes the whole load, and that this load is evenly distributed along the top of the tooth and acts parallel with its base, thus reducing the condition of the tooth to that of a cantilever beam. The magnitude of this load at the top of the tooth is taken for convenience the same as the force transmitted at the pitch circle. This condition is shown in Fig. 34. Equating the external moment to the internal moment, we then have, from mechanics:

$$W \cdot L = \frac{SI}{c} = \frac{SFH^2}{6}. \qquad (61)$$

The thickness H is usually taken either at the pitch line or at the root of the tooth just before the fillet begins; and L, of course, is dependent on the tooth dimensions. The formula is most readily used when the outline of the tooth is either assumed or known, a trial calculation being made to see if it will stand the load, and a series of subsequent calculations followed out in the same way until a suitable tooth is found. This method is pursued because there are certain even pitches which it is desirable to use; and it is safe to say that any calculation figured the reverse way would result in fractional pitches. The latter course may be used, however, and the nearest even pitch chosen as the proper one.

As stated under "Analysis," there are a great many circumstances attending the operation of gears which make impossible the purely theoretical application of the beam formulae. For this reason there is no one element of machinery which depends so much on experience and judgment for correct proportion as the tooth of a gear. Hence it is true that a rational formula based on the theoretical one is really of the greater practical value in tooth design.

If we examine formula 61, we find that in a form solved for W, we have:

$$W = \frac{SFH^2}{6L}. \qquad (62)$$

Of these quantities, H and L are the only variables, for we can make the others what we choose. H and L depend upon the circular pitch P^1 and the curvature and outline of the tooth. If now we could settle on a standard system of teeth, we could establish a coefficient to be used to take the place of the variable part of H and L, which depends on the outline of tooth, and we should thus have an empirical formula which would be on a theoretical basis.

This, Mr. Wilfred Lewis has done; and it is safe to say that this formula is more universally used and with more satisfactory practical results than any other formula, theoretical or practical, that has ever been devised. His coefficient is known as y, and was determined from many actual drawings of different forms of teeth showing the weakest section. This coefficient is worked out for the three most common systems as follows:

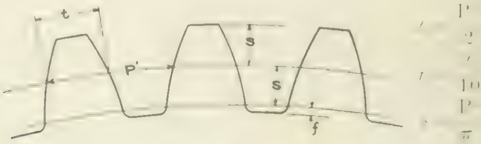


Fig. 35.

$$\text{For } 20^\circ \text{ involute, } y = 0.154 - \frac{0.912}{N}. \qquad (63)$$

$$\text{For } 15^\circ \text{ involute and cycloidal, } y = 0.124 - \frac{0.684}{N}. \qquad (64)$$

$$\text{For radial flanks, } y = 0.075 - \frac{0.276}{N}. \qquad (65)$$

The tooth upon which the above is based is the American standard or Brown & Sharpe tooth, for which the proportions are shown in Fig. 35.

The "Lewis" formula* is:

$$W = SP'Fy \qquad (66)$$

A table indicating the value of S for different speeds follows:

Safe Working Stresses for Different Speeds.

Speed of teeth in ft. per min.	100	200	300	600	900	1200	1800	2400
Cast iron	8000	6000	4800	4000	3000	2400	2000	1700
Steel	20000	15000	12000	10000	7500	6000	5000	4300

*Note.—A more convenient statement of the Lewis formula will be found in "Kent's Pocket Book."

A usual relation of F to P^1 is:

For cast teeth, $F = 2P^1$ to $3P^1$. (66)

For cut teeth, $F = 3P^1$ to $4P^1$. (67)

The usual method of handling these formulæ is as follows:

The pitch circles of the proposed gears are known or can be assumed; hence W can readily be figured, also the speed of the teeth, whence S can be read from the table. The desired relation of F to P^1 can be arbitrarily chosen, when P^1 and y become the only unknown quantities in the equation. A shrewd guess can be made for the number of teeth, and y calculated therefrom. Then solve the equation for P^1 which will undoubtedly be fractional. Choose the nearest even pitch, or, if it is desired to keep an even diametral pitch, the fractional pitch that will bring an even diametral pitch. Now, from this final and corrected pitch, and the diameter of the pitch circle, calculate the number of teeth N in the gear. Check the assumed value of y by this positive value of N.

Another good way of using this formula is to start with the pitch and face desired, and the diameter of the pitch circle. In this case W is the only unknown quantity, and when found can be compared with the load required to be carried. If too small, make another and successive calculations until the result approximates the required load.

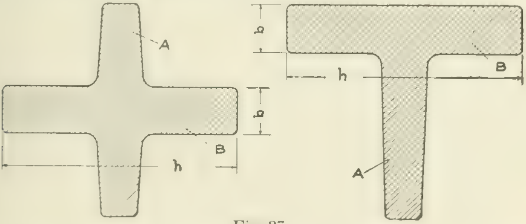


Fig. 37.

SPUR GEAR RIM, ARMS, AND HUB.

ANALYSIS and THEORY. The rim of a gear has to transmit the load on the teeth to the arms. It is thus in tension on one side of the teeth in action, and in compression on the other. The section of the rim, however, is so dependent on other practical considerations which call for an excess of strength in this respect, that it is not considered worth while to attempt a calculation on this basis.

Gears seldom run fast enough to make necessary a calculation for centrifugal force ; and in general it can be said that the design of the rim is entirely dependent on practical considerations. These will appear later under "Practical Modification."

The arms of a gear are stressed the same as pulley arms, the same theory answering for both, except that a gear rim always being much heavier than a pulley rim, the distribution of load amongst the arms is better in the case of a gear than of a pulley, and it is usually safe to assume that each arm of a gear takes its full proportion of load ; or, for an oval section, equating the external moment to the internal moment as in the case of pulleys, we have :

$$\frac{WD}{n2} = 0.0393\, Sh^3. \qquad (68)$$

Heavy spur gears have the arms of a cross or T section (Fig.

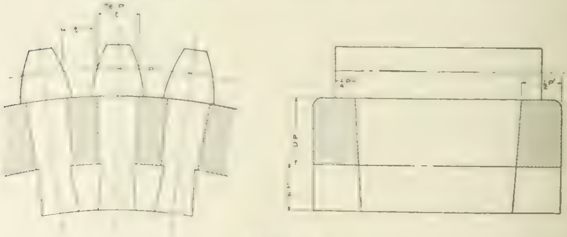


Fig. 38.

37), the latter being especially applicable to the case of bevel gears where there is considerable side thrust. The simplest way of treating such sections is to consider that the whole bending moment is taken by the rectangular section whose greater dimension is in the direction of the load. The rest of the section, being close to the neutral axis of the section, is of little value in resisting the direct load, its function being to give sidewise stiffness. The equation for the cross or T style of arm, then is :

$$\frac{W}{n} \cdot \frac{D}{2} = \frac{Sbh^2}{6}. \qquad (69)$$

Either b or h may be assumed, and the other determined. As a guide to the section, h may be taken at about the thickness of the tooth.

Gear hubs are in no wise different from the hubs of pulleys or other rotating pieces. The depth necessary for providing sufficient strength over the key to avoid splitting is the guiding element, and can usually be best determined by careful judgment.

PRACTICAL MODIFICATION. The practical requirements, which no theory will satisfy, are many and varied. Sudden and severe shock, excessive wear due to an atmosphere of grit and corrosive elements, abrupt reversal of the mechanism, the throwing-in of clutches and pawls, the action of brakes these and many other influences have an important bearing on gear design, but not one that can be calculated. The only method of procedure in such cases is to base the design on analysis and theory as previously given, and then add to the face of gear, thickness of tooth, or pitch an amount which judgment and experience dictate as sufficient.

Excessive noise and vibration are difficult to prevent at high speeds. At 1,000 feet per minute, gears are apt to run with an unpleasant amount of noise. At speeds beyond this, it is often necessary to provide **mortise teeth,** or teeth of hard wood set into a cast-iron rim (see Fig. 38). Rawhide pinions are useful in this regard. Fine pitches with a long face of tooth run much more smoothly at high speeds than a coarse pitch and narrow-faced tooth of equal strength. Greater care in alignment of shafts, however, is necessary, also stiffer supports.

Should it be impracticable to use a standard tooth of sufficient strength, there are several ways in which we can increase the carrying capacity without increasing the pitch. These are:

1. Use a stronger material, such as steel.
2. Shroud the teeth.
3. Use a hook tooth.
4. Use a stub tooth.

Shrouding a tooth consists in connecting the ends of the teeth with a rim of metal. When this rim is extended to the top of the tooth, the process is called "full-shrouding" (Fig. 39); and when carried only to the pitch line, it is termed "half-shrouding" (Fig. 40). The theoretical effect of shrouding is to make the tooth act like a short beam built in at the sides; and the tooth will practically have to be sheared out in order to fail. This modification of gear design requires the teeth to be cast, as the cutter cannot pass through the shrouding. The strength of the shrouded gear is estimated to be from 25 to 50 per cent above that of the plain-tooth type.

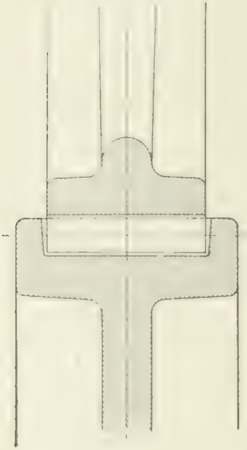


Fig. 39.

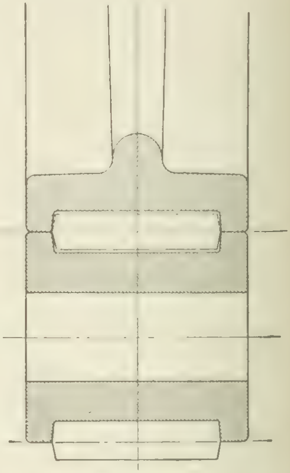


Fig. 40.

The **hook-tooth gear** (Fig. 41) is applicable only to cases where the load on the tooth does not reverse. The working side of the tooth is made of the usual standard curve, while the back is made of a curve of greater obliquity, resulting in a considerable increase of thickness at the root of the tooth. A comparison of strength between this form and the standard may be made by drawing the two teeth for a given pitch, measuring their thickness just at top of the fillet, and finding the relation of the squares of these dimensions. The truth of this relation is readily seen from an inspection of formula 61.

The **stub tooth** merely involves the shortening of the height of the tooth in order to reduce the lever arm on which the load acts, thus reducing the moment, and thereby permitting a greater load to be carried for the same stress.

The rim of a gear is dependent for its proportions chiefly on questions of practical moulding and machining. It must bear a certain relation to the teeth and arms, so that, when it is cooling in the mould, serious shrinkage stresses will not be set up, forming pockets and cracks. Moreover, when under pressure of the cutter in the producing of the teeth, it must not chatter or spring. This condition is quite well attained in ordinary gears when the thickness of the rim below the base of the tooth is made about the same as the thickness of the tooth.

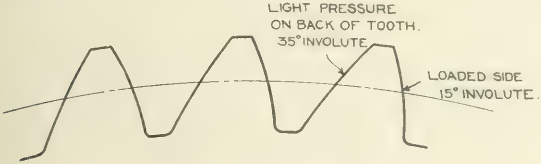


Fig. 41.

The stiffening ribs and arms must all be joined to the rim by ample fillets, and the cross-section must be as uniform as possible, to prevent unequal cooling and consequent pulling-away of the arms from the rim or hub. Often the calculated size of the arms at both rim and hub has to be modified considerably to meet this requirement.

The arms are usually tapered to suit the designer's eye, a small gear requiring more taper per foot than a large one. Both rim and hub should be tapered $\frac{1}{2}$ inch per foot to permit easy drawing-out from the mould.

The proportions given in the following table have been used with success as a basis of gear design in manufacturing practice. The table will serve as an excellent guide in laying out, and can be closely followed, in most cases with but slight modification. **Web gears** are introduced for small diameters where the arms begin to look awkward and clumsy.

Gear Design Data.

Measurements given in inches. Letters refer to Fig. 12.

Diametral pitch ..	P	1½	1¾	2	2½	3	3½	4	5	6	8
Face............	F	6¼	5½	4¾	3¾	3¼	2¾	2½	2¼	1⅞	1½
Thickness of arm when extended to pitch line....	G	1½	1¼	1⅛	1	⅞	13/16	¾	11/16	⅝	½
Width of arm when extended to pitch line	C	4	3½	3	2½	2¼	2	1¾	1½	1⅜	1⅛
Thickness of rim..	K	2¾	2½	2¼	1¾	1½	1⅜	1¼	1	⅞	¾
Depth of rib......	E	2	1¾	1½	1¼	1	⅞	¾	⅝	½	⅜
Thickness of web.	T	1⅛	1	⅞	¾	⅝	9/16	½	7/16	⅜	5/16

Number of arms, 6.

Give inside of rims and hub a draft of ½ inch per foot.

BEVEL GEARS.

NOTATION. The following notation is used throughout the chapter on Bevel Gears:

A = Apex distance at pitch element of cone (inches).
A' = Apex distance at bottom element of tooth (inches).
B = Angle of bottom of tooth (degrees).
C = Pitch angle (degrees).
D = Pitch diameter (inches).
E = Radius increment of gear (inches).
F = Face of gear (inches).
f = Clearance at bottom (inches).
G = Angle of face (degrees).
H = Cutting angle (degrees).
I = Radius increment of pinion (inches).
N = Number of teeth.
N' = Formative number of teeth, or the number corresponding to the radius on which the outline of tooth is made.
O.D. = Outside diameter (inches).
P = Diametral pitch related to pitch diameter (teeth per inch).
P^1 = Circular pitch measured on the circumference of D (inches).
S = Working strength of material (lbs. per sq. in.).
s = Addendum, or height of tooth above pitch line (inches).
$s+f$ = Depth of tooth below pitch line (inches).
T = Angle of top of tooth (degrees).
t = Thickness of tooth at pitch line (inches).
W = Working load at pitch line (lbs.).
y = Factor in "Lewis" formula.

ANALYSIS. It is possible to consider bevel gears as the general case of which spur gears are a special form. The pitch surfaces of spur gears described above as cylinders, mathematically considered, are cones whose vertices are infinitely distant, while bevel gears likewise are based on pitch cones, but with a vertex at some finite point, common to the mating pair. Hence, as we might expect, the laws of tooth action are similar in bevel gears to those in the case of spur gears. The profile of the tooth in the former case, however, is based, not on the real radius of the pitch cone, but on the radius of the normal cone; and in the development of the outline the latter is treated just as though it were the radius of a spur gear. The tooth thus formed is wrapped back upon the normal cone face, and becomes the large end of the tapering bevel-gear tooth (see Fig. 44).

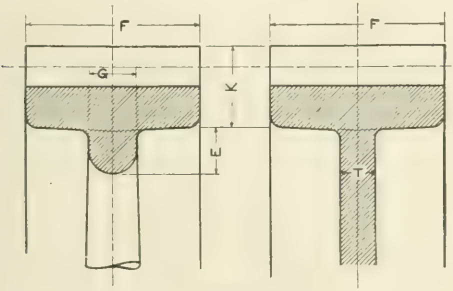


Fig. 42.

The teeth of bevel gears, being simply projections with bases on the pitch cones, have a varying cross-section decreasing toward the vertex; also a trapezoidal section of root, the latter section acting as a beam section to resist the cantilever moment due to the tooth load.

The arms must, as in the case of spur gears, transmit the load from the tooth to the shaft: in addition, the arms of a bevel gear are subjected to a side thrust due to the wedging action of the cones. Hence sidewise stiffness of the arms is more essential in this type of gear than in the case of the spur gear.

THEORY. It is evident that the calculation of tooth strength based on a trapezoidal section of root would be somewhat compli-

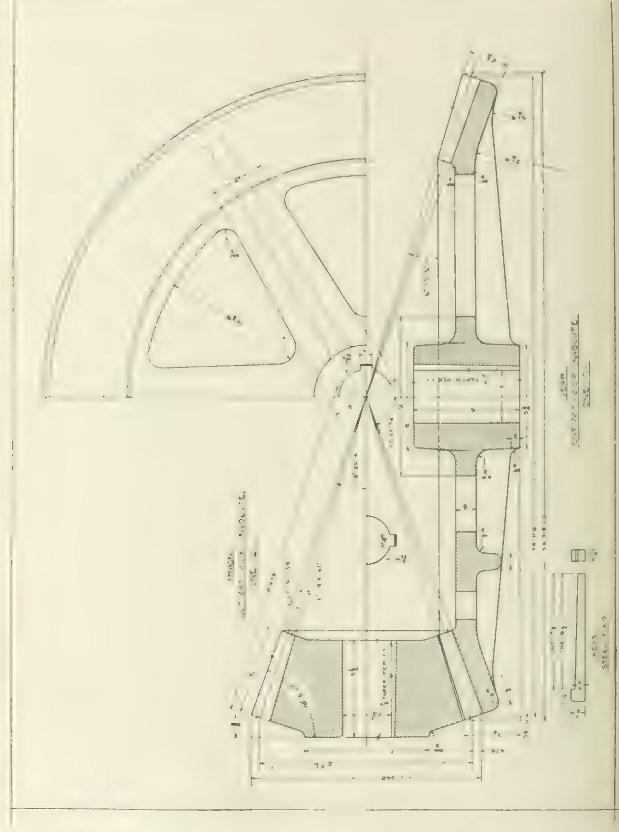


Fig. 13.

cated; also that the trapezoid in most cases would be but little different from a true rectangle. Hence the error will be but slight if the average cross-section of the tooth be taken to represent its strength, and the calculation made accordingly.

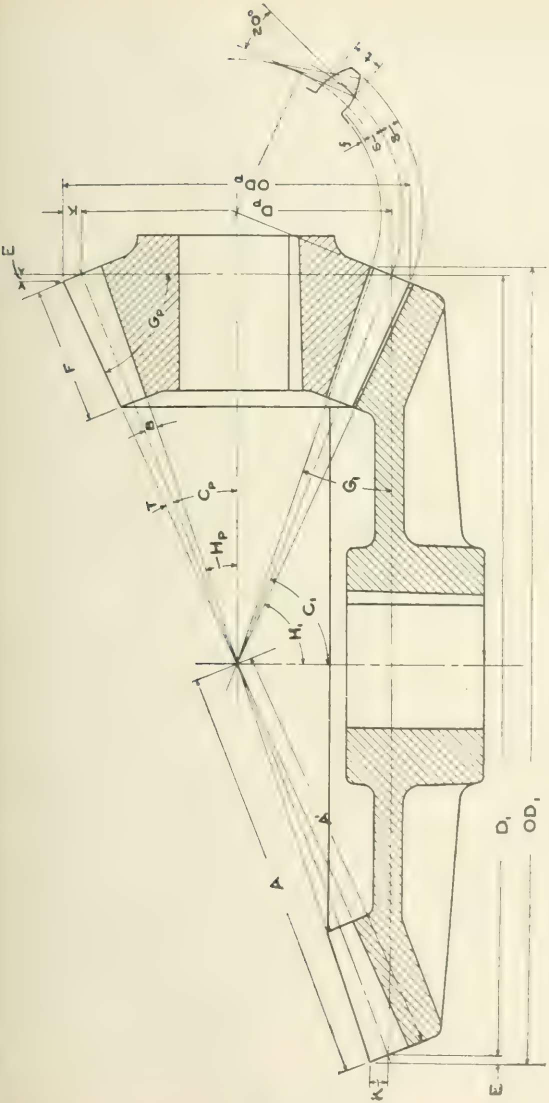


Fig. 44.

Fig. 45 shows a bevel-gear tooth with the average cross section in dotted lines. For the purpose of calculation, the assumption is made that the section A is carried the full length of the face of the gear, and that the load which this average tooth must carry is the calculated load at the pitch line of section A. This is equivalent to saying that the strength of a bevel gear tooth is equal to that of a spur-gear tooth which has the same face, and a section identical with that cut out by a plane at the middle of the bevel tooth. The load, as in the case of the spur gear, should be taken at the top of the tooth; and its magnitude can be conveniently calculated at the mean pitch radius of the bevel face, without appreciable error.

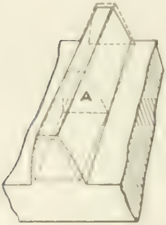


Fig. 45.

This similarity to spur gears being borne in mind, the calculation for strength needs no further treatment. Once the average tooth is assumed or found by layout, a strict following out of the methods pursued for spur-gear teeth will bring consistent results.

The detail design of a pair of bevel gears involves some trigonometrical computations in order properly to dimension the drawing for use in finishing the blanks and subsequently in cutting the teeth, or, in the case of cast gears, in making the pattern. These calculations, although simple, are yet apt to be tedious; and inaccuracies are likely to creep in if a definite system of relations be not maintained. Hence the results of these calculations are given below in condensed and reduced form. The deduction of these formulæ is a simple and interesting exercise in trigonometry; and it is urged that they be worked out by the student from the figure, in which case he will feel greater confidence in their use.

Axes of Gears at 90 Degrees.

Use suffix g for gear, p for pinion. Letters refer to Fig. 44.

$$P = \frac{N}{D} = \frac{\pi}{p'}. \qquad (70)$$

$$s = \frac{1}{P} = \frac{p'}{\pi}. \qquad (71)$$

$$t = \frac{p'}{2} = \frac{\pi}{2P}. \qquad (72)$$

$$f = \frac{t}{10} = \frac{P^1}{20} = \frac{\pi}{20P}. \qquad (73)$$

$$\tan C_1 = \frac{N_p}{N_1};\ \tan C_p = \frac{N_1}{N_p}. \qquad (74)$$

$$\tan T = \frac{s}{A} = \frac{2 \sin C}{N}. \qquad (75)$$

$$\tan B = \frac{s + f}{A} = \frac{2.314 \sin C}{N}. \qquad (76)$$

$$s + f = A \tan B = \frac{1.157}{P} = 0.368P^1. \qquad (77)$$

$$A = \frac{N}{2P \sin C} = \frac{1}{2P}\sqrt{N_1^2 + N_p^2} = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{D_1^2 + D_p^2}. \qquad (78)$$

$$A^1 = \frac{A}{\cos B} = \frac{N}{2P \cos B \sin C}. \qquad (79)$$

$$G_1 = 90 - (C_1 + T);\ G_p = 90 - (C_p + T). \qquad (80)$$

$$E = S \cos C_1 = S \sin C_p. \qquad (81)$$

$$K = S \cos C_p = S \sin C_1. \qquad (82)$$

PRACTICAL MODIFICATION. The practical requirements to be met in transmission of power by bevel gears are the same as for spur gears; but in the case of bevel gears even greater care is necessary to provide stiffness, strength, true alignment, and rigid supports. As far as the gears themselves are concerned, a long face is desirable; but it is much more difficult to gain the advantage of its strength than in the case of spur gears, because full bearing along the length of the tooth is hard to guarantee.

The rim usually requires a series of ribs running to the hub to give required stiffness and strength against the side thrust which is always present in a pair of bevel gears. Instead of arms, the tendency of bevel-gear design, except for very large gears, is toward a web on account of the better and more uniform connection thereby secured between rim and hub. This web may be lightened by a number of holes, so that the resultant effect is that of a number of wide and flat arms.

The hubs naturally have to be fully as long as those of spur gears, because there is greater tendency to rock on the shaft, due to the side thrust from the teeth, mentioned above.

The teeth on small gears are cut with rotary cutters, at least two finishing cuts being necessary, one for each side of the tapering tooth. The more accurate method is to plane the teeth on a special gear planer, and this method is followed on all gears of any considerable size. The practical requirement here is that no portion of the hub shall project so as to interfere with the stroke of the planer tool. The requirements of gear planers vary somewhat in this regard.

Finally, after all that is possible has been done in the design of the gear itself to render it suitable to withstand the varied stresses, especial attention must be paid to the rigidity of the supporting shafts and bearings. Bearings should always be close up to the hubs of the gears, and, if possible the bearing for both pinion and gear should be cast in the same piece. If this is not done, the tendency of the separate bearings to get out of line and destroy the full bearing of the teeth is difficult to control. Thrust washers are desirable against the hubs of both pinion and gear; also proper means of well lubricating the same.

With these considerations carefully met, bevel gears are not the bugbear of machine design that they are sometimes claimed to be. The common reason why bevel gears cut and fail to work smoothly, is that the gears and supports are not designed carefully enough in relation to each other. This is also true of spur gears, but the bevel gear will reveal imperfections in its design far the more quickly of the two.

WORM AND WORM GEAR.

NOTATION. The following notation is used throughout the chapter on Worm and Worm Gear:

D = Pitch diameter of gear (inches).
E = Efficiency between worm shaft and gear shaft (per cent).
[illegible] = Clearance of tooth at bottom (inches).
[illegible] = [illegible] of worm thread (1 for single, 2 for double, etc.).
L = Lead of worm thread (inches).
M = Revolutions of gear shaft per minute.
M_w = Revolutions of worm shaft per minute.
N = Number of teeth in gear.
P = Circular pitch = Pitch of worm thread (inches).
R = Radius of pitch circle of worm gear (inches).
s = Addendum of tooth (inches).
T = Twisting moment on gear shaft (inch-lbs.).
T_w = Twisting moment on worm shaft (inch-lbs.).
t = Thickness of tooth at pitch line (inches).
W = Load at pitch line (lbs.).

ANALYSIS. The simplest way of analyzing the case of the worm and worm gear is to base it upon an ordinary screw and nut. Take, for example, the lead screw of a common lathe. The carriage carries a nut, through which the lead screw passes. By the rotation of the screw, the carriage, being constrained by the guides to travel lengthwise of the ways, is moved. This motion is, for a single threaded screw, a distance per revolution equal to the lead of the screw.

Now, suppose that the carriage, instead of sliding along the ways, is compelled to turn about an axis at some point below the ways. Also, suppose the top of the nut to be cut off, and its length made endless by wrapping it around a circle struck from the center about which the carriage rotates. This reduces the nut to a peculiar kind of spur gear, the partial threads of the nut now having the appearance of twisted teeth.

This special form of spur gear, based on the idea of a threaded nut, is known as a **worm gear,** and the screw is termed a **worm.** The teeth are loaded similarly to those of a spur gear, but with the additional feature of a large amount of sliding along the tooth surfaces. This, of course, means considerable friction; and it is in fact possible to utilize the worm and worm gear as an efficient levice, only by running the teeth constantly in a bath of oil. Even then the pressures have to be kept well down to insure the required term of life of the tooth surfaces.

It is evident that for one revolution of a single-threaded worm, one tooth of the gear will be passed. The speed ratio between the worm gear and worm shaft will then be equal to the number of teeth in the gear, which is relatively great. Hence the worm and worm gear are principally useful in giving large speed reduction in a small amount of space.

THEORY. The theory of worm-wheel teeth is complicated and obscure. The production of the teeth is simple, a dummy worm with cutting edges, called a "hob," being allowed to carve its way into the worm-gear blank, thus producing the teeth and at the same time driving the worm gear about its axis.

It is clear that if we know the torsional moment on the worm-gear shaft, and the pitch radius of the worm gear, we can find the load on the teeth at the pitch line by dividing the former by the latter. Expressed as an equation:

$$WR = T; \text{ or } W = \frac{T}{R}. \qquad (83)$$

How we shall consider this value of W as distributed on the teeth, is a question difficult to answer. The teeth not only are curved to embrace the worm, but are twisted across the face of the gear, so that it would be practically impossible to devise a purely theoretical method of exact calculation. The most reasonable thing to do is to assume the teeth as being equally as strong as spur-gear teeth of the same circular pitch, and to figure them accordingly. It is probably true, however, that the load is carried by more than one tooth, especially in a hobbed wheel; so we shall be safe in assuming that two—and, in case of large wheels, three—teeth divide the load between them. With these considerations borne in mind, the case reduces itself to that of a simple spur-gear tooth calculation, which has already been explained under the heading "Spur Gears."

The worm teeth, or threads, are probably always stronger than the worm-gear teeth; so no calculation for their strength need be made.

The twisting moment on the worm shaft is not determined so directly as in the case of spur gears. The relative number of revolutions of the two shafts depends upon the "lead" of the worm thread and the number of teeth in the gear.

Lead (L) is the distance parallel to the axis of the worm which any point in the thread advances in one revolution of the worm. **Pitch** (P') is the distance parallel to the axis of the worm between corresponding points on adjacent threads. The distinction between lead and pitch should be carefully observed, as the two are often confounded, one with the other.

The thread may be single, double, triple, etc., the index of the thread z, being 1, 2, 3, etc., in accordance therewith. The relation between lead and pitch may then be expressed by an equation, thus:

$$L = z P'. \tag{84}$$

When the index of the thread is changed the speed ratio is changed, the relation being shown by the equation:

$$\frac{M}{M_w} = \frac{z}{N} \tag{85}$$

If the efficiency were 100 per cent between the two shafts, the twisting moments would be inversely as the ratio of the speeds thus:

$$\frac{T_w}{T} = \frac{M}{M_w} = \frac{\gamma}{N};$$

or,

$$T_w = \frac{T\gamma}{N}; \qquad (86)$$

but for an efficiency E the equation would be:

$$\frac{T_w}{T} = \frac{\gamma}{EN};$$

or,

$$T_w = \frac{T\gamma}{EN}. \qquad (87)$$

The diameter of the worm is arbitrary. Change of this diameter has no effect on the speed ratio. It has a slight effect on the efficiency, the smaller worm giving a little higher efficiency. The diameter of the worm runs ordinarily from 3 to 10 times the circular pitch, an average value being 4P' or 5P'.

A longitudinal cross-section through the axis of the worm cuts out a rack tooth, and this tooth section is usually made of the standard 14½ involute form shown in Fig. 46 for a rack.

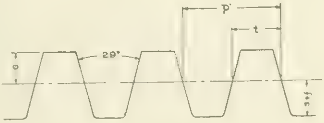


Fig. 46.

The end thrust, of a magnitude practically equal to the pressure between the teeth, has to be taken by the hub of the worm against the face of the shaft bearing. A serious loss of efficiency from friction is likely to occur here. This is often reduced, however, by roller or ball bearings. With two worms on the same shaft, each driving into a separate worm gear, it is possible to make one of the worms right-hand thread, and the other left-hand, in which case the thrust is self-contained in the shaft itself, and there is absolutely no end thrust against the face of the bearing. This involves a double outfit throughout, and is not always practicable.

There are few mathematical equations necessary for the dimensioning of a worm and worm gear. The formulæ for the tooth parts as given on page 120 apply equally well in this case.

PRACTICAL MODIFICATION. The discussion of the efficiency E of the worm and worm gear is more of a practical than of a theoretical nature. It seems to be true from actual operation, as well as theory, that the steeper the threads the higher the efficiency. In actual practice we seldom have opportunity to change the slope of the thread to get increased efficiency. The slope is usually settled from considerations of speed ratio, or available space, or some other condition. The usual practical problem is to take a given worm and worm gear, and to make out of it as efficient a device as possible. With hobbed gears running in oil baths, and with moderate pressures and speeds, the efficiency will range between 40 per cent and 70 per cent. The latter figure is higher than is usually attained.

To avoid cutting and to secure high efficiency, it seems essential to make the worm and the gear of different materials. The worm thread surfaces being in contact a greater number of times than the gear teeth, should evidently be of the harder material. Hence we usually find the worm of steel, and the gear of cast iron, brass, or bronze. To save the expense of a large and heavy bronze gear, it is common to make a cast-iron center and bolt a bronze rim to it.

The worm, being the most liable to replacement from wear, it is desirable so to arrange its shaft fastening and general accessibility that it may be readily removed without disturbing the worm gear.

The circular pitch of the gear and the pitch of the worm thread must be the same, and the practical question comes in as to the threads per inch possible to be cut in the lathe in the production of the worm thread. The pitch must satisfy this requirement; hence the pitch will usually be fractional, and the diameter of the worm gear, to give the necessary number of teeth, must be brought to it. While it would perhaps be desirable to keep an even diametral pitch for the worm gear, yet it would be poor design to specify a worm thread which could not be cut in a lathe.

The standard involute of $14\frac{1}{2}^\circ$, and the standard proportions of teeth as given on page 120 are usually used for worm threads. This system requires the gear to have at least 30 teeth, for if fewer teeth are used the thread of the worm will interfere with the flanks of the gear teeth. This is a mathematical relation, and there are methods of preventing it by change of tooth proportions or of angle of worm thread; but there are few instances in which less than 30 teeth are required, and it is not deemed worth while to go into a lengthy discussion of this point.

The angle of the worm embraced by the worm-gear teeth varies from 60° to 90°, and the general dimensions of rim are made about the same as for spur gears. The arms, or the web, have the same reasons for their size and shape. Probably web gears and cross-shaped arms are more common than oval or elliptical sections.

Worm gears sometimes have cast teeth, but they are for the roughest service only, and give but a point bearing at the middle of the tooth. An accurately hobbed worm gear will give a bearing clear across the face of the tooth, and, if properly set up and cared for, makes a good mechanical device although admittedly of somewhat low efficiency.

Fig. 47 shows a detail drawing of a standard worm and worm gear. It should serve as a suggestion in design, and an illustration of the shop dimensions required for its production.

PROBLEMS ON SPUR, BEVEL, AND WORM GEARS.

1. Calculate proportions of a standard Brown & Sharpe gear tooth of 1½ diametral pitch, making a rough sketch and putting the dimensions on it.

2. Suppose the above tooth to be loaded at the top with 5,000 lbs. If the face be 6 inches, calculate the fiber stress at the pitch line, due to bending.

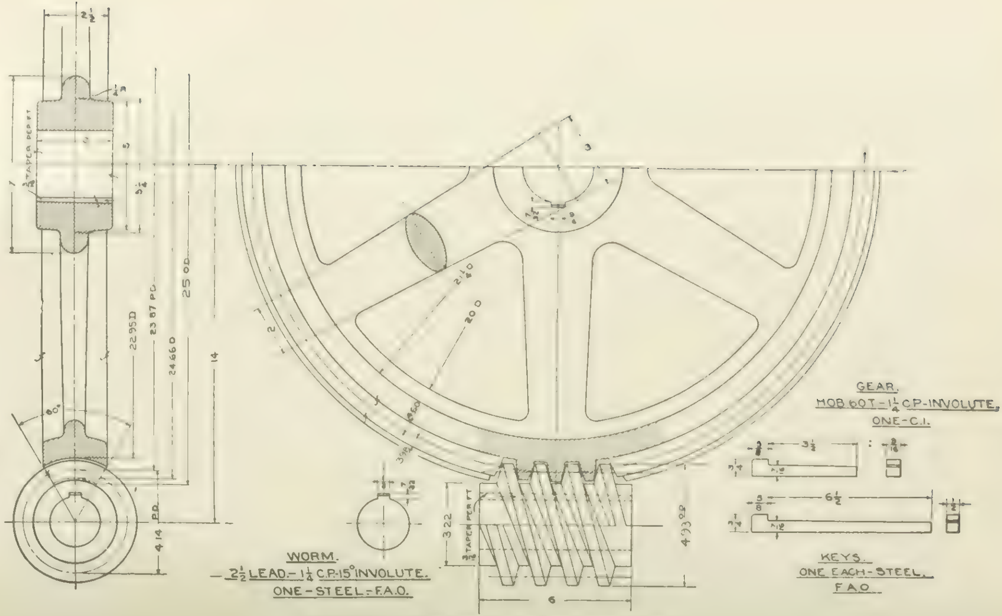
3. A tooth load of 1,200 lbs. is transmitted between two spur gears of 12-inch and 30-inch diameter, the latter gear making 100 revolutions per minute. Calculate a suitable pitch and face of tooth by the "Lewis" formula.

4. Assuming a ½-inch web on the 12-inch gear, calculate the shearing fiber stress at the outside of a hub 4 inches in diameter

5. Design elliptical arms for the 30-inch gear, allowing $S = 2{,}200$.

6. Design cross-shaped arms for 30-inch gear.

7. Calculate the dimensions shown in formulæ 70 to 82 inclusive for a pair of bevel gears of 20 and 60 teeth respectively, 2 diametral pitch, and 4-inch face. (The use of logarithmic tables makes the calculation much easier than with the natural functions.)



SECTION AND ELEVATION OF WORM GEAR.
Fig 47

8. A worm wheel has 40 teeth, 3 diametral pitch, and double thread. Calculate (a) its lead; (b) its pitch diameter.

FRICTION CLUTCHES.

NOTATION—The following notation is used throughout the chapter on Friction Clutches

α = Angle between clutch face and axis of shaft (degrees)
H = Horse power (33,000 ft.-lbs. per minute).
μ = Coefficient of friction (per cent).
N = Number of revolutions per minute.
P = Force to hold clutch in gear to produce W (lbs.).
R = Mean radius of friction surface (inches).
T = Twisting moment about shaft axis (inch-lbs.).
V = Force normal to clutch face (lbs.).
W = Load at mean radius of friction surface (lbs.).

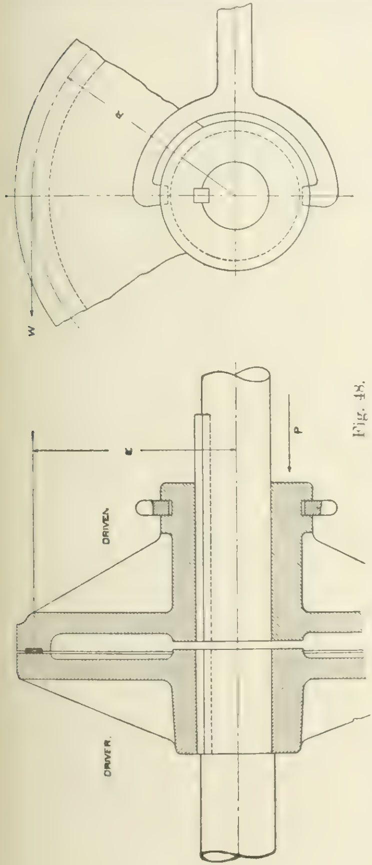


Fig. 48

ANALYSIS. The friction clutch is a device for connecting at will two separate pieces of shaft, transmitting an amount of power between them to the capacity of the clutch. The connection is usually accomplished while the driving shaft is under full speed, the slipping between the surfaces which occurs during the throwing-in of the clutch, permitting the driven shaft to pick up the speed of the other gradually, without appreciable shock. The disconnection is made in the same manner, the amount of slipping which occurs depending on the suddenness with which the clutch is thrown out.

The force of friction is the sole driving element, hence the problem is to secure as large a force of friction as possible. But friction cannot be secured without a heavy normal pressure between surfaces having a high coefficient of friction between them. The many varieties of friction clutches which are on the market or designed for some special purpose, are all devices for accomplishing one and the same effect, *viz.*, the production of a heavy normal force or pressure between surfaces at such a radius from the driven axis, that the product of the force of friction thereby created and the radius shall equal the desired twisting moment about that axis.

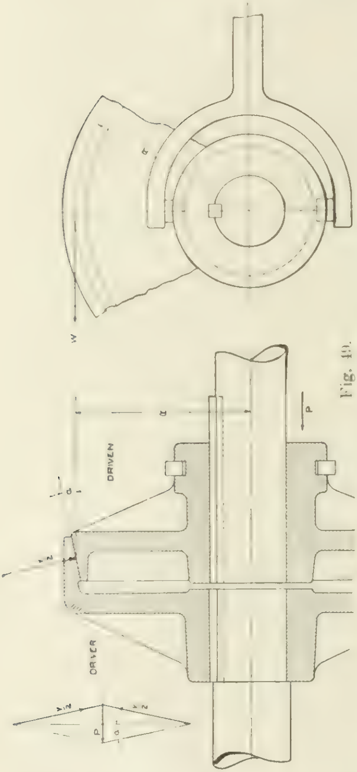


Fig. 49.

Three typical methods of accomplishing this are shown in Figs. 48, 49, and 50. None of these drawings is worked out in operative detail. They are merely illustrations of principle, and are drawn in the simplest form for that purpose.

In Fig. 48 the normal pressure is created in the simplest possible way, an absolutely direct push being exerted between the discs, due to the thrust P of the clutch fork.

In Fig. 49 advantage is taken of the wedge action of the inclined faces, the result being that it takes less thrust P to produce the required normal pressure at the radius R.

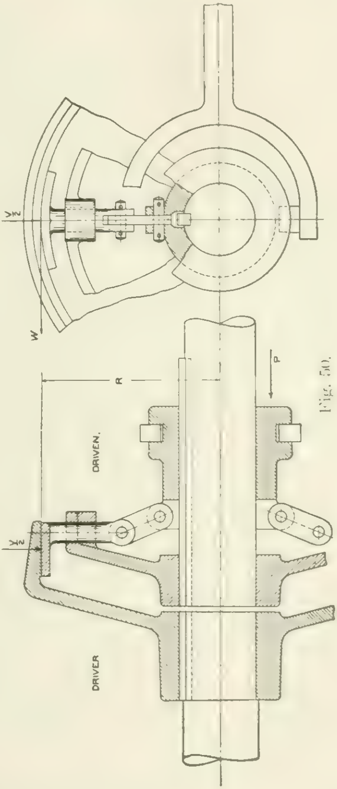


Fig. 50.

In Fig. 50 the inclination of the faces is carried so far that the angle a of Fig. 49 has become zero; and by the toggle-joint action of the link pivoted to the clutch collar, the normal force produced may be very great for a slight thrust P. By careful adjustment of the length of the link so that the jaw takes hold of the clutch surface, when the link stands nearly vertical, a very easy operating device is secured, and the thrust P is made a minimum.

THEORY. Referring to Fig. 48 in order to calculate the twisting moment, we must remember that the force of friction between two surfaces is equal to the normal pressure times the coefficient of friction. This, in the form of an equation, using the symbols of the figure, is :

$$W = \mu P. \qquad (88)$$

Hence we may consider that we have a force of magnitude μP acting at the mean radius R of the clutch surface. The twisting moment will then be :

$$T = WR = \mu PR. \qquad (89)$$

Referring to equation 54, which gives twisting moment in terms of horse-power, and putting the two expressions equal to each other, we have :

$$T = \frac{63{,}025H}{N} = \mu PR;$$

or,

$$H = \frac{\mu NPR}{63{,}025}. \qquad (90)$$

This expression gives at once the horse power that the clutch will transmit with a given end thrust P.

In Fig. 49 the equilibrium of the forces is shown in the little sketch at the left of the figure. The clutch faces are supposed to be in gear, and the extra force necessary to slide the two together is not considered, as it is of small importance. The static equations then are :

$$P = 2\frac{V}{2}\sin\alpha;$$

or,

$$V = P\operatorname{cosec}\alpha. \qquad (91)$$

$$W = \mu V = \mu P\operatorname{cosec}\alpha. \qquad (92)$$

$$T = WR = \mu PR\operatorname{cosec}\alpha. \qquad (93)$$

$$T = \frac{63{,}025H}{N} = \mu PR\operatorname{cosec}\alpha;$$

or,

$$H = \frac{\mu NPR\operatorname{cosec}\alpha}{63{,}025}. \qquad (94)$$

In Fig. 50, P would of course be variable, depending on the inclination of the little link. The amount of horse-power which this clutch would transmit would be the same as in the case of the device illustrated in Fig. 49, for an equal normal force V produced.

The further theoretical design of such clutches should be in accordance with the same principles as for arms and webs of pulleys, gears, etc. The length of the hubs must be liberal in order to prevent tipping on the shaft as a result of uneven wear. The end thrust is apt to be considerable; and extra side stiffness must be provided, as well as a rim that will not spring under the radial pressure.

PRACTICAL MODIFICATION. It is desirable to make the most complicated part of a friction clutch the driven part, for then the mechanism requiring the closest attention and adjustment may be brought to and kept at rest when no transmission of power is desired.

Simplicity is an important practical requirement in clutches. The wearing surfaces are subjected to severe usage; and it is essential that they be made not only strong in the first place, but also capable of being readily replaced when worn out, as they are sure to be after some service.

The form of clutch shown in Fig. 50 is the most efficient form of the three shown, although its commercial design is considerably different from that indicated. Usually the jaws grip both sides of the rim, pinching it between them. This relieves the clutch rim of the radial unbalanced thrust.

Adjusting screws must be provided for taking up the wear, and lock nuts for maintaining their position.

Theoretically, the rubbing surfaces should be of those materials whose coefficient of friction is the highest; but the practical question of wear comes in, and hence we usually find both surfaces of metal, cast iron being most common. For metal on metal the coefficient of friction μ cannot be safely assumed at more than 15 per cent, because the surfaces are sure to get oily.

A leather facing on one of the surfaces gives good results as to coefficient of friction, μ having a value, even for oily leather, of 20 per cent. Much slipping, however, is apt to burn the leather; and this is most likely to occur at high speeds.

Wood on cast iron gives a little higher coefficient of friction for an oily surface than metal on metal. Wood blocks can be so set into the face of the jaws as to be readily replaced when worn, and in such case make an excellent facing.

The angle α of a cone friction clutch of the type shown in Fig. 49, may evidently be made so small that the two parts will wedge together tightly with a very slight pressure P; or it may

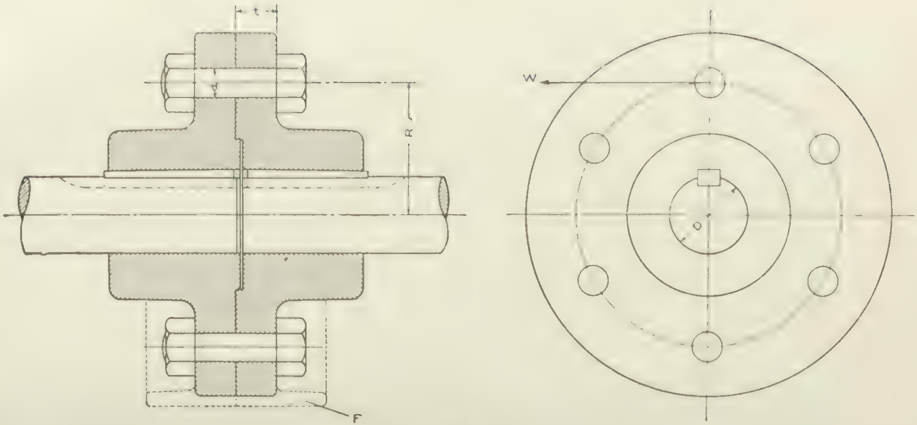


Fig. 51.

be so large as to have little wedging action, and approach the condition illustrated in Fig. 48. Between these limits there is a practical value which neither gives a wedging action so great as to make the surfaces difficult to pull apart, nor, on the other hand, requires an objectionable end thrust along the shaft in order to make the clutch drive properly.

For a = about 15°, the surfaces will free themselves when P is relieved.
" a = " 12, " " require slight pull to be freed.
" a = " 10, " " cannot be freed by direct pull of the hand, but require some leverage to produce the necessary force P.

PROBLEMS ON FRICTION CLUTCHES.

1. With what force must we hold a friction clutch in to transmit 30 horse-power at 200 revolutions per minute, assuming working radius of clutch to be 12 inches; coefficient of friction 15 per cent; angle $a = 10°$?

2. How much horse-power could be transmitted, other conditions remaining the same, if the working radius were increased to 18 inches ?

3. What force would be necessary in problem 1, if the angle a were 15°, other conditions remaining the same ?

COUPLINGS.

NOTATION.—The following notation is used throughout the chapter on Couplings.

D = Diameter of shaft (inches).
d = Diameter of bolt body (inches).
n = Number of bolts.
R = Radius of bolt circle (inches).
S = Safe shearing fiber stress (lbs. per sq. in.).
S_c = Safe crushing fiber stress (lbs. per sq. in.).
T = Twisting moment (inch-lbs.).
t = Thickness of flange (inches).
W = Load on bolts (lbs.).

ANALYSIS. Rigid couplings are intended to make the shafts which they connect act as a solid, continuous shaft. In order that the shaft may be worked up to its full strength capacity, the coupling must be as strong in all respects as the shaft, or, in other words, it must transmit the same torsional moment. In the analysis of the forces which come upon these couplings, it is not considered that they are to take any side load, but that they are to act purely as torsional elements. It is doubtless true that in many cases they do have to provide some side strength and stiffness, but this is not their natural function, nor the one upon which their design is based.

Referring to Fig. 51, which is the type most convenient for analysis, we have an example of the simplest form of **flange coupling.** It consists merely of hubs keyed to the two portions, with flanges driving through shear on a series of bolts arranged concentrically about the shaft. The hubs, keys, and flanges are subject to the same conditions of design as the hubs, keys, and web of a gear or pulley, the key tending to shear and be crushed in the hub and shaft, and the hub tending to be torn or sheared from the flange. The driving bolts, which must be carefully fitted in reamed holes, are subject to a purely shearing stress over their full area at the joint, and at the same time tend to crush the metal in the flange, against which they bear, over their projected area. This latter stress is seldom of importance, the thickness of the flange, for practical reasons, being sufficient to make the crushing stress very low.

THEORY. The theory of hubs, keys, and flanges, being like that already given for pulleys and gears, need not be repeated for couplings. The shearing stress on the bolts is the only new point to be studied.

In Fig. 51, for a twisting moment on the shaft of T, the load at the bolt circle is $W = \frac{T}{R}$. If the number of bolts be n, equating the external force to the internal strength, we have:

$$W = \frac{T}{R} = \frac{S\pi d^2}{4}n. \qquad (95)$$

Although the crushing will seldom be of importance, yet for the sake of completeness its equation is given, thus:

$$W = \frac{T}{R} = Sdtn. \qquad (96)$$

The internal moment of resistance of the shaft is $\frac{SD^3}{5.1}$; hence the equation representing full equality of strength between the shaft and the coupling, depending upon the shearing strength of the bolts, is:

$$\frac{SD^3}{5.1R} = \frac{S\pi d^2}{4}n. \qquad (97)$$

The theory of the other types of couplings is obscure, except as regards the proportions of the key, which are the same in all cases. The shell of the clamp coupling, Fig. 52, should be thick enough to give equal torsional strength with the shaft; but the exact function which the bolts perform is difficult to determine. In general the bolts clamp the coupling tightly on the shaft and provide rigidity, but the key does the principal amount of the driving. The bolt sizes, in these couplings, are based on judgment and relation to surrounding parts, rather than on theory.

PRACTICAL MODIFICATION. All couplings must be made with care and nicely fitted, for their tendency, otherwise, is to spring the shafts out of line. In the case of the flange coupling, the two halves may be keyed in place on the shafts, the latter then swung on centers in the lathe, and the joint faced off. Thus the joint will be true to the axis of the shaft; and, when it is clamped in position by the bolts, no springing out of line can take place.

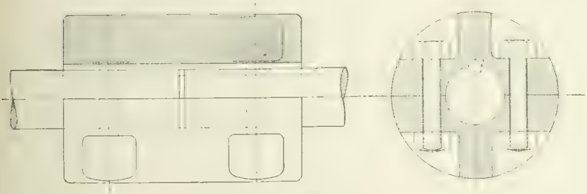


Fig. 52.

A flange F (see Fig. 51) is sometimes made on this form of coupling, in order to guard the bolts. It may be used, also, to take a light belt for driving machinery; but a side load is thereby thrown on the shaft at the joint, which is at the very point where it is desirable to avoid it.

The simplest form of rigid coupling consists of a plain sleeve slipped over from one shaft to the other, when the second is butted up against the first. This is known as a **muff coupling.** When once in place, this is a very excellent coupling, as it is perfectly smooth on the outside, and consists of the fewest possible parts, merely a sleeve and a key. It is, however, expensive to fit, difficult to remove, and requires an extra space of half its length on the shaft over which to be slipped back.

The **clamp coupling** is a good coupling for moderate sized shafts, where the flange type of Fig. 51 would be unnecessarily expensive. The clamp coupling, Fig. 52, is simply a muff coupling split in halves, and recessed for bolts. It is cheap and is easily applied and removed, even with a crowded shaft. If bored with a piece of paper in the joint, when it is clamped in position it will pinch the shaft tightly and make a rigid connection. It is desirable to have the bolt heads protected as much as possible, and this may be accomplished by making the outside diameter large enough so that the bolts will not project. Often an additional shell is provided to encase the coupling completely after it is located.

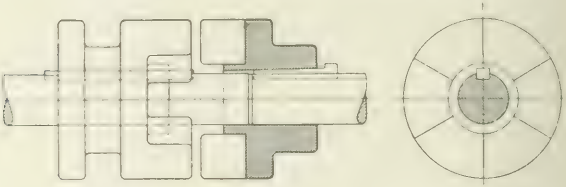


Fig. 53.

There are many other special forms of couplings, some of them adjustable. Most of them depend upon a wedging action exerted by taper cones, screws, or keys. Trade catalogues are to be sought for their description.

The **claw coupling**, Fig. 53, is nothing but a heavy flange coupling with interlocking claws or jaws on the faces of the flanges, to take the place of the driving bolts. This coupling can be thrown in or out as desired, although it usually performs the service of a rigid coupling, as it is not suited to clutching-in during rapid motion, like a friction clutch.

Flexible couplings, which allow slight lack of alignment, are made by introducing between the flanges of a coupling a flexible disc, the one flange being fastened to the inner circle of the disc, the other to the outer circle. This is also accomplished by providing the faces of the flange coupling with pins that drive by pressure together or through leather straps wrapped round the pins. These devices are mostly of a special and often uncertain nature, lacking the positiveness which is one essential feature of a good coupling.

PROBLEMS ON COUPLINGS.

1. A flange coupling of the type of Fig. 51 is used on a shaft 2 inches is diameter. The hub is 3 inches long, and carries a standard key, of proportions indicated below in the table of "Proportions for Gib Keys" (page 166). The bolt circle is 7 inches in diameter, and it is desired to use $\frac{5}{8}$-inch bolts. How many bolts are needed to transmit 60,000 inch-lbs., for a fiber stress in the bolt of 6,000?

2. Using 6 bolts, what diameter of bolt would be required?

3. If four $\frac{3}{4}$-inch bolts were used on a circle of 8 inches diameter, what diameter of shaft would be used in the coupling to give equal strength with the bolts?

BOLTS, STUDS, NUTS, AND SCREWS.

NOTATION—The following notation is used throughout the chapter on Bolts, Studs, Nuts, and Screws:

d = Diameter of bolt (inches).
d_1 = Diameter at root of thread (inches).
H = Height of nut (inches).
I = Initial axial tension (lbs.).
k = Allowable bearing pressure on surface of thread (lbs. per sq. in.).
L = Lead, or distance nut advances along axis in one revolution (inches).
l = Length of wrench handle (inches).
n = Number of threads in nut = $\frac{H}{p}$.
P = Axial load (lbs.).
p = Pitch of thread, or distance between similar points on adjacent threads, measured parallel to axis (inches).
S = Fiber stress (lbs. per sq. in.).
W = Load on bolt (lbs.).

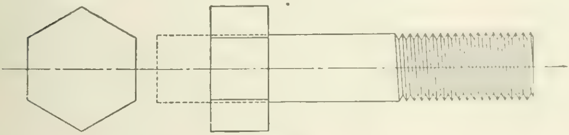


Fig. 54.

ANALYSIS. A **bolt** is simply a cylindrical bar of metal upset at one end to form a head, and having a thread at the other end, Fig. 54. A **stud** is a bolt in which the head is replaced by a thread; or it is a cylindrical bar threaded at both ends, usually having a small plain portion in the middle, Fig. 55. The object of bolts and studs is to clamp machine parts together, and yet permit these same parts to be readily disconnected. The bolt passes through the pieces to be connected, and, when tightened, causes surface compression between the parts, while the reactions on the head and nut produce tension in the bolt. Studs and tap bolts pass through one of the connected parts and are screwed into the other, the stud remaining in position when the parts are disconnected.

As all materials are elastic within certain limits, the action of a bolt in clamping two machine parts together, more especially if there is an elastic packing between them, may be represented diagrammatically by Fig. 56, in which a spring has been introduced to take the compression due to screwing up the nut. Evidently the tension in the bolt is equal to the force necessary to compress the spring. Now, suppose that two weights, each equal to $\frac{1}{2}$ W, are placed symmetrically on either side of the bolt, then the tension in the bolt will be increased by the added weights if the bolt is perfectly rigid. The bolt, however, stretches; hence some of the compression on the spring is relieved and the total tension in the

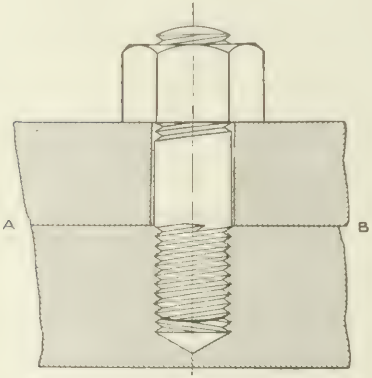


Fig. 55.

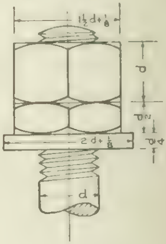


Fig. 55a.

bolt is less than W I, by an amount depending on the relative elasticity of the bolt and spring.

Suppose that the stud in Fig. 55 is one of the studs connecting the cover to the cylinder of a steam engine, and that the studs have a small initial tension; then the pressure of the steam loads each stud, and, if the studs stretch enough to relieve the initial pressure between the two surfaces, then their stress is due to the steam pressure only; or, from Fig. 56, when I W; the initial pressure due to the elasticity of the joint is entirely relieved by the assumed stretch of the studs. Except to prevent leakage, it is seldom necessary to consider the initial tension, for the stretch of the bolt may be counted on to relieve this force, and the working tension on the bolt is simply the load applied.

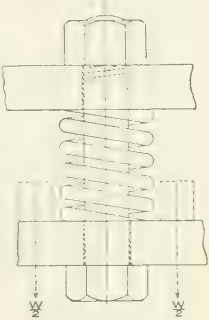


Fig. 56.

For shocks or blows, as in the case of the bolts found on the marine type of connecting-rod end, the stretch of the bolts acts like a spring to reduce the resulting tensions. So important is this feature that the body of the bolt is frequently turned down to the diameter of the bottom of the thread, thus uniformly distributing the stretch through the full length of the bolt, instead of localizing it at the threaded parts.

In tightening up a bolt, the friction at the surface of the thread produces a twisting moment, which increases the stress in the bolts, just as in the case of shafting under combined tension and torsion; but the increase is small in amount, and may readily be taken care of by permitting low values only for the fiber stress.

In a flange coupling, bolts are acted upon by forces perpendicular to the axis, and hence are under pure shearing stress. If the torque on the shaft becomes too great, failure will occur by the bolts shearing off at the joint of the coupling.

A bolt under tension communicates its load to the nut through the locking of the threads together. If the nut is thin, and the number of threads to take the load few, the threads may break or shear off at the root. With a V thread there is produced a component force, perpendicular to the axis of the bolt, which tends to split the nut.

In screws for continuous transmission of motion and power, the thread may be compared to a rough inclined plane, on which a small block, the nut, is being pushed upward by a force parallel to the base of the plane. The angle at the bottom of the plane is the angle of the helix, or an angle whose tangent is the lead divided by the circumference of the screw. The horizontal force corresponds to the tangential force on the screw. The friction at the surface of the thread produces a twisting moment about the axis of the screw, which, combined with the axial load, subjects the screw to combined tension and torsion. Screws with square threads are generally used for this service, the sides of the thread exerting no bursting pressure on the nut. The proportions of screw thread for transmission of power depend more on the bearing pressure than on strength. If the bearing surface be too small and lubrication poor, the screw will cut and wear rapidly.

THEORY. A direct tensile stress is induced in a bolt when it carries a load exerted along its axis. This load must be taken by the section of the bolt at the bottom of the thread. If the area at the root of the thread is $\frac{\pi d_1^2}{4}$, and if S is the allowable stress per square inch, then the internal resistance of the bolt is $\frac{S\pi d_1^2}{4}$. Equating the external load to the internal strength we have:

$$W = \frac{S\pi d_1^2}{4}. \tag{98}$$

For bolts which are used to clamp two machine parts together so that they will not separate under the action of an applied load, the initial tension of the bolt must be at least equal to the applied load. If the applied load is W, then the parts are just about to separate when $I = W$. Therefore the above relation for strength is applicable. As the initial tension to prevent separation should be a little greater than W, a value of S should be chosen so that there will be a margin of safety. For ordinary wrought iron and steel, S may be taken at 6,000 to 8,000.

If, however, the joints must be such that there is no leakage between the surfaces, as in the case of a steam cylinder head, and supposing that elastic packings are placed in the joints, then a much larger margin should be made, for the maximum load which may come on the bolt is $I + W$, where W is the proportional share of the internal pressure carried by the bolt. In such cases $S = 3{,}000$ to $5{,}000$, using the lower value for bolts of less than $\frac{3}{4}$-inch diameter.

The table given on page 154 will be found very useful in proportioning bolts with U. S. standard thread for any desired fiber stress.

To find the initial tension due to screwing up the nut, we may assume the length of the handle of an ordinary wrench, measured from the center of the bolt, as about 16 times the diameter of the bolt. For one turn of the wrench a force F at the handle would pass over a distance $2\pi l$, and the work done is equal to the product of the force and space, or $F \times 2\pi l$. At the same time the axial load P would be moved a distance p along the axis. Assuming that there is no friction, the equation for the equality of the work at the handle and at the screw is:

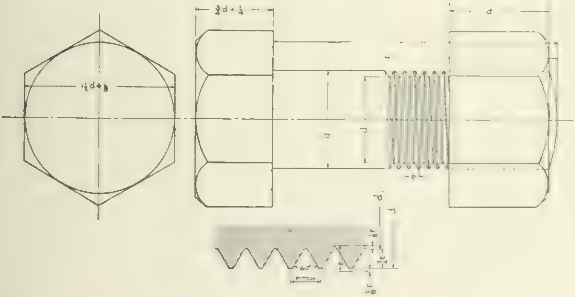


Fig. 56*a*.

$$F 2\pi l = P p. \qquad (99)$$

Friction, however, is always present; hence the ratio of the useful work (Pp) to the work applied ($F 2\pi l$) is not unity as above re-

TABLE FOR STRENGTH OF BOLTS. U. S. Standard Thread.

Bolt.		Diameters.		Areas.		Approximate Tensile Strength at Bottom of Thread. (In Hundreds of Pounds.)					Approximate Shearing Strength at Full Diameter. (In Hundreds of Pounds.)			
Diameter, Inches.	Threads per Inch.	Bottom of Thread.	Tap Drill.	Bolt Body.	Bottom of Thread.	At 4,000 lbs. per sq. in.	At 5,000 lbs. per sq. in.	At 6,000 lbs. per sq. in.	At 7,000 lbs. per sq. in.	At 10,000 lbs. per sq. in.	At 4,000 lbs. per sq. in.	At 5,000 lbs. per sq. in.	At 6,000 lbs. per sq. in.	At 7,000 lbs. per sq. in.
¼	20	.18	[illegible]	.05	.03	[illegible]	[illegible]	1.60	[illegible]	[illegible]	1.96	[illegible]	[illegible]	3.43
5/16	18	.24	[illegible]	.08	.04	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	5.37
⅜	16	.29	[illegible]	.11	.07	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	7.73
7/16	14	.34	[illegible]	.15	.09	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	10.52
½	13	.40	[illegible]	.20	.13	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	12.60	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	14
9/16	12	.45	[illegible]	.25	.16	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	17
⅝	11	.51	[illegible]	.31	.20	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	21
¾	10	.62	[illegible]	.44	.30	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	31
⅞	9	.73	[illegible]	.60	.42	[illegible]	21	25	[illegible]	42	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	42
1	8	.84	[illegible]	.78	.55	[illegible]	[illegible]	33	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	55
1⅛	7	.94	[illegible]	.99	.69	[illegible]	34	41	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	70
1¼	7	1.06	[illegible]	1.23	.89	[illegible]	44	53	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	86
1⅜	6	1.16	[illegible]	1.48	1.05	42	53	[illegible]	[illegible]	105	[illegible]	[illegible]	89	104
1½	6	1.28	[illegible]	1.77	1.29	[illegible]	64	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	106	124
1⅝	5½	1.39	[illegible]	2.07	1.51	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	124	145
1¾	5	1.49	[illegible]	2.40	1.74	[illegible]	88	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	144	168
1⅞	5	1.61	[illegible]	2.76	2.05	81	[illegible]	[illegible]	143	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	165	193
2	4½	1.71	[illegible]	3.14	2.30	92	[illegible]	138	161	230	[illegible]	[illegible]	188	220
2¼	4½	1.96	[illegible]	3.98	3.02	125	156	[illegible]	211	302	159	[illegible]	238	278
2½	4	2.17	[illegible]	4.91	3.72	148	185	222	260	[illegible]	196	[illegible]	294	344
2¾	4	2.42	[illegible]	5.94	4.62	184	230	276	323	461	237	[illegible]	356	416
3	3½	2.63	[illegible]	7.07	5.43	218	272	326	380	544	283	[illegible]	424	495
3¼	3½	2.88	[illegible]	8.29	6.51	264	330	396	455	[illegible]	332	[illegible]	498	581
3½	3¼	3.10	[illegible]	9.62	7.55	302	376	452	528	754	385	[illegible]	577	673
3¾	3	3.32	[illegible]	11.04	8.64	344	430	516	604	[illegible]	442	[illegible]	662	773
4	3	3.57	[illegible]	12.57	9.99	396	495	594	699	[illegible]	503	[illegible]	754	880
4¼	2⅞	3.80	[illegible]	14.19	11.33	452	566	678	793	[illegible]	567	[illegible]	851	993
4½	2¾	4.03	[illegible]	15.90	12.74	507	634	760	888	[illegible]	636	[illegible]	953	1 113
4¾	2⅝	4.25	[illegible]	17.72	14.22	567	709	851	[illegible]	1 420	709	[illegible]	1 063	1 240
5	2½	4.48	[illegible]	19.63	15.76	630	788	946	1 103	[illegible]	785	982	1 178	1 374
5½	2⅜	4.95	[illegible]	23.76	19.27	770	962	1 154	1 347	1 924	950	1 188	1 425	1 663
6	2¼	5.42	[illegible]	28.27	23.09	923	1 159	1 384	1 617	2 307	1 128	[illegible]	1 696	1 979

lations assume. From numerous experiments on the friction of screws and nuts, it has been found that the efficiency may be as low as 10 per cent. Introducing the efficiency in above equation, it may be written:

$$\frac{Pp}{F2\pi l} = \frac{1}{10}. \qquad (100)$$

Assuming that 50 pounds is exerted by a workman in tightening up the nut on a 1-inch bolt, the equation above shows that P = 4,021 pounds; or the initial tension is somewhat less than the tabular safe load shown for a 1-inch bolt, with S assumed at 10,000 pounds per sq. inch.

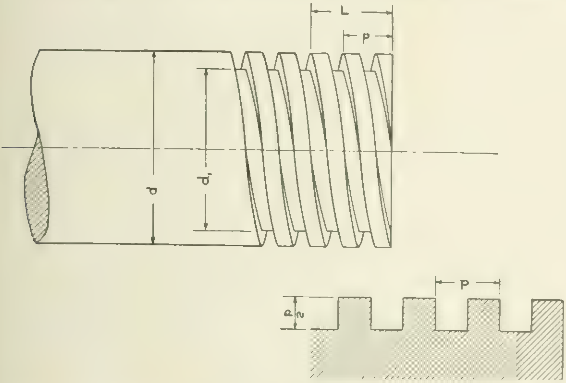


Fig. 58.

For shearing stresses the bolt should be fitted so that the body of the bolt, not the threads, resists the force tending to shear off the bolt perpendicular to its axis. The internal strength of the bolt to resist shear is the allowable stress S times the area of the bolt in shear, or $\frac{S\pi d^2}{4}$. If W represents the external force tending to shear the bolt the equality of the external force to the internal strength is:

$$W = \frac{S\pi d^2}{4}. \qquad (101)$$

Reference to the table on page 154 for the shearing strength of bolts, may be made to save the labor of calculations.

Let Fig. 58 represent a square thread screw for the transmission of motion. The surface on which the axial pressure bears, if n is the number of threads in a nut, is $\frac{\pi}{4}(d^2 - d_1^2)\,n$. Suppose that a pressure of k pounds per square inch is allowed on the surface of the thread. Then the greatest permissible axial load P must not exceed the allowable pressure; or, equating,

$$P = k\,\frac{\pi}{4}(d^2 - d_1^2)\,n \qquad \textbf{(102)}$$

The value of k varies with the service required. If the motion be slow and the lubrication very good, k may be as high as 900. For rapid motion and doubtful lubrication, k may not be over 200. Between these extremes the designer must use his judgment, remembering that the higher the speed the lower is the allowable bearing pressure.

PRACTICAL MODIFICATION. It will be noted in the formulae for bolt strengths that different values for S are assumed. This is necessary on account of the uncertain initial stresses which are produced is setting up the nuts. For cases of mere fastening, the safe tension is high, as just before the joint opens the tension is about equal to the load and yet the fastening is secure. On the other hand, bolts or studs fastening joints subjected to internal fluid pressure must be stressed initially to a greater amount than the working pressure which is to come on the bolt. As this initial stress is a matter of judgment on the part of the workman, the designer, in order to be on the safe side, should specify not less than [illegible] inch or $\frac{3}{4}$-inch bolts for ordinary work, so that the bolts may not be broken off by a careless workman accidentally putting a greater force than necessary on the wrench handle. In making a steam-tight joint, the spacing of the bolts will generally determine their number; hence we often find an excess of bolt strength in joints of this character.

Through bolts are preferred to studs, and studs to tap bolts or cap screws. If possible, the design should be such that through bolts may be used. They are cheapest, are always in standard stock, and well resist rough usage in connecting and disconnecting. The threads in cast iron are weak and have a tendency to crumble; and if a through bolt cannot be used in such a case, a stud, which can be placed in position once for all, should be employed -not a tap bolt, which injures the thread in the casting every time it is removed.

The plain portion of a stud should be screwed up tight against the shoulder, and the tapped hole should be deep enough to prevent bottoming. To avoid breaking off the stud at the shoulder, a neck, or groove, may be made at the lower end of the thread entering the nut.

To withstand shearing forces the bolts must be fitted so that no lost motion may occur, otherwise pure shearing will not be secured.

Nuts are generally made hexagonal, but for rough work are often made square. The hexagonal nut allows the wrench to turn through a smaller angle in tightening up, and is preferred to the square nut. Experiments and calculations show that the height of the nut with standard threads may be about $\frac{1}{2}$ the diameter of the bolt and still have the shearing strength of the thread equal to the tensile strength of the bolt at the root of the thread. Practically, however, it is difficult to apply such a thin wrench as this proportion would call for on ordinary bolts. More commonly the height of the nut is made equal to the diameter of the bolt so that the length of thread will guide the nut on the bolt, give a low bearing pressure on the threads, and enable a suitable wrench to be easily applied. The standard proportions for bolts and nuts may be found in any handbook. Not all manufacturers conform to the United States standard; nor do manufacturers in all cases conform to one another in practice.

If the bolt is subject to vibration, the nuts have a tendency to loosen. A common method of preventing this is to use double nuts, or **lock nuts**, as they are called (see Fig. 55 A). The under nut is screwed tightly against the surface, and held by a wrench while the second nut is screwed down tightly against the first. The effect is to cause the threads of the upper nut to bear against the under sides of the threads of the bolt. The load on the bolt is sustained therefore by the upper nut, which should be the thicker of the two; but for convenience in applying wrenches the position of the nuts is often reversed.

The form of thread adapted to transmitting power is the square thread, which, although giving less bursting pressure on the nut, is not as strong as the V thread for a given length, since the total section of thread at the bottom is only ½ as great. If the pressure is to be transmitted in but one direction, the two

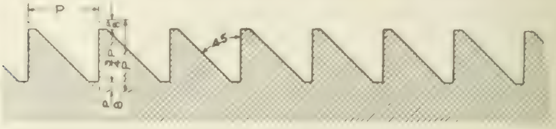


Fig. 59.

types may be combined advantageously to form the buttress thread of the proportions shown in Fig. 59. Often, as in the carriage of a lathe, to allow the split nut to be opened and closed over the lead screw, the sides of the thread are placed at a small angle, say 15°, to each other, as illustrated in Fig. 60.

The practical commercial forms in which we find screwed fastenings are included in five classes, as follows:

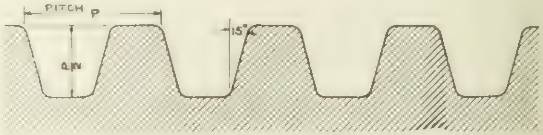


Fig. 60.

1. **Through bolts** (Fig. 61), usually rough stock, with square upset heads, and square or hexagonal nuts.

2. **Tap bolts** (Fig. 62), also called **cap screws**. These usually have hexagonal heads, and are found both in the rough form, and finished from the rolled hexagonal bar in the screw machine.

3. **Studs** (Fig. 63), rough or finished stock, threaded in the screw machine.

4. **Set screws** (Fig. 64), usually with square heads, and case-hardened points. Many varieties of set screws are made, the

principal distinguishing feature of each being in the shape of the point. Thus, in addition to the plain beveled point, we find the "cupped," rounded, conical, and "teat" points.

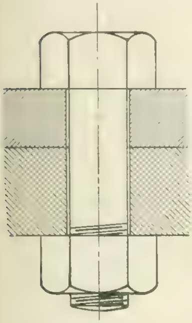


Fig. 61.

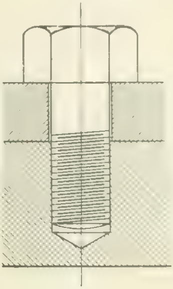


Fig. 62.

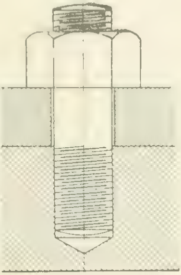


Fig. 63.

5. **Machine screws** (Fig. 64), usually round, "button," or countersunk head. Common proportions are indicated relative to diameter of body of screw.

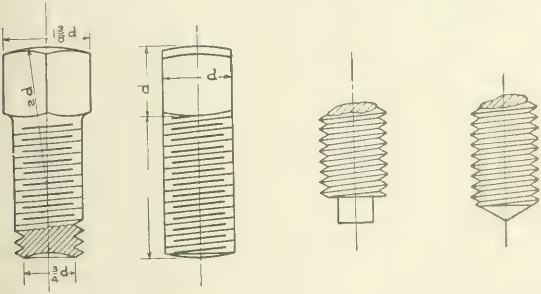


Fig. 64.

PROBLEMS ON BOLTS, STUDS, NUTS, AND SCREWS.

1. Calculate the diameter of a bolt to sustain a load of 5,000 lbs.

2. The shearing force to be resisted by each of the bolts of a flange coupling is 1,200 lbs. What commercial size of bolt is required?

3. With a wrench 16 times the diameter of the bolt, and an efficiency of 10 per cent, what axial load can a man exert on a standard $\frac{3}{4}$ inch bolt, if he pulls 40 lbs. at the end of the wrench handle?

4. A single, square threaded screw of diameter 2 inches, lead $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, depth of thread $\frac{1}{8}$ inch, length of nut 3 inches, is to be allowed a bearing pressure of 300 lbs. per square inch. What axial load can be carried?

5. Calculate the shearing stress at the root of the thread in problem 4.

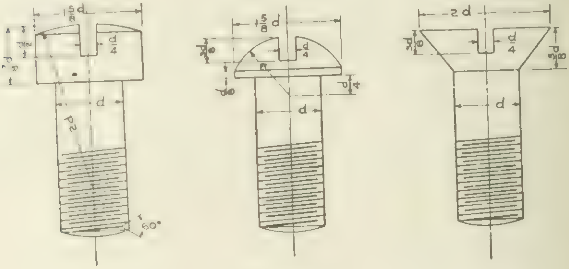


Fig. 64*a*.

KEYS, PINS, AND COTTERS.

NOTATION. The following notation is used throughout the chapter on Keys, Pins, and Cotters:

D = Average diameter of rod (inches).
D₁ = Outside diameter of socket (inches).
d = Diameter of shaft (inches).
L = Length of key (inches).
P = Driving force (lbs.).
P_1 = Axial load on rod (lbs.).
R = [illegible] (inches).
S_c = Safe crushing fiber stress (lbs. per sq. in.).
S_s = Safe shearing fiber stress (lbs. per sq. in.).
S_t = Safe tensile fiber stress (lbs. per sq. in.).
T = Thickness of key (inches).
W = Width of key (inches).
w = Average width of cotter (inches).
w_1 = End of slot to end of rod (inches).
w_2 = End of slot to end of socket (inches).

KEYS AND PINS.

ANALYSIS. Keys and pins are used to prevent relative rotary motion between machine parts intended to act together as one piece. If we drill completely through a hub and across the shaft, and insert a tightly fitted pin, any rotary motion of the one will be transmitted to the other, provided the pin does not fail by shearing off at the joint between the shaft and the hub. The shearing area is the sum of the cross-sections of the pin at the joint.

We may drill a hole in the joint, the axis of the hole being parallel to the axis of the shaft, and drive in a pin, in which case we introduce a shearing area as before, but the area is now equal to the diameter of the pin multiplied by its length, and the pin is stressed sidewise, instead of across. It is evident in the sidewise case that we may increase the shearing area to anything we please, without changing the diameter of the pin, merely by increasing the length of the pin.

As there are some manufacturing reasons why a round pin placed lengthwise in the joint is not always applicable, we may make the pin a rectangular one, in which case it is called a **key**.

When pins are driven across the shaft as in the first instance, they are usually made taper. This is because it is easier to ream a taper hole to size than a straight hole, and a taper pin will drive more easily than a straight pin, it not being necessary to match the hole in hub and shaft so exactly in order that the pin may enter. The taper pin will draw the holes into line as it is driven, and can be backed out readily in removal.

Keys of the rectangular form are either straight or tapered, but for different reasons from those just stated for pins. Straight keys have working bearing only at the sides, driving purely by shear, crushing being exerted by the side of the key in both shaft and hub, over the area against the key. The key itself does not prevent end motion along the shaft; and if end motion is not desired, auxiliary means of some sort must be resorted to, as, for example, set screws through the hub jamming hard against the top of the key.

If end motion along the shaft is desired, the key is called a **spline**, and, while not jammed against the shaft, is yet prevented from changing its relation to the hub by some means such as illustrated in Fig. 65.

Taper keys not only drive through sidewise shearing strength, but prevent endwise motion by the wedging action exerted between the shaft and hub. These keys drive more like a strut from corner to corner; but this action is incidental rather than intentional, and the proportions of a taper key should be such that it will give its full resisting area in shearing and crushing, the same as a straight key.

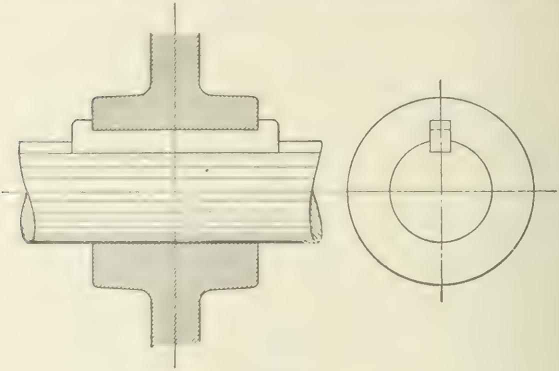


Fig. 65.

THEORY. Suppose that the pin illustrated in Fig. 66 passes through hub and shaft, and the driving force P acts at the radius R; then the force which is exerted at the surface of the shaft to shear off the pin at the points A and B is $\frac{2\,PR}{d}$. If D_1 is the average diameter of the pin, its shearing strength is $\frac{2\pi D_1^2 S_s}{4}$. Equating the external force to the internal strength, we have:

$$\frac{2PR}{d} = \frac{2\pi D_1^2\,S_s}{4};$$

or,

$$D_1 = \sqrt{\frac{4PR}{\pi d S_s}}. \qquad \textbf{(103)}$$

In Fig. 67 a rectangular key is sunk half way in hub and shaft according to usual practice. Here the force at the surface of the shaft, calculated the same as before, not only tends to shear off the key along the line AB, but tends to crush both the portion in the shaft and in the hub. The shearing strength along the line AB is LWS_s. Equating external force to internal strength, we have:

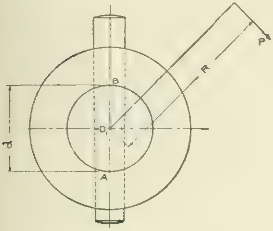


Fig. 66.

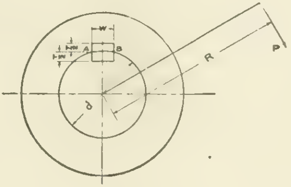


Fig. 67.

$$\frac{2PR}{d} = LWS_s\,;$$

or,

$$W = \frac{2PR}{dLS_s}. \qquad (104)$$

The crushing strength is, of course, that due to the weaker metal, whether in shaft or hub. Let S_c be this least safe crushing fiber stress. The crushing strength then is $\frac{LT}{2} S_c$, and, equating external force to internal strength, we have:

$$\frac{2PR}{d} = \frac{LT}{2} S_c\,;$$

or,

$$T = \frac{4PR}{dLS_c}. \qquad (105)$$

The proportions of the key must be such that the equations as above, both for shearing and for crushing, shall be satisfied.

PRACTICAL MODIFICATION. Pins across the shaft can be used to drive light work only, for the shearing area cannot be very large. A large pin cuts away too much area of the shaft, decreasing the latter's strength. Pins are useful in preventing end motion, but in this case are expected to take no shear, and may be of small diameter. The common split pin is especially adapted to this service, and is a standard commercial article.

Taper pins are usually listed according to the Morse standard taper, proportions of which may be found in any handbook. It is desirable to use *standard* taper pins in machine construction, as the reamers are a commercial article of accepted value, and readily obtainable in the machine-tool market.

With properly fitted keys, the shearing strength is usually the controlling element. For shafts of ordinary size, the standard proportions as given in tables like that below are safe enough without calculation, up to the limit of torsional strength of the shaft. For special cases of short hubs or heavy loads, a calculation is needed to check the size, and perhaps modify it.

Splines, also known as "feather keys," require thickness greater than regular keys, on account of the sliding at the sides. A table suggesting proportions for splines is given on page 166.

Though the spline may be either in the shaft or hub, it is the more usual thing to find the spline dovetailed (Fig. 67*a*), "gibbed," or otherwise fastened in the hub; and a long spline way made in the shaft, in which it slides.

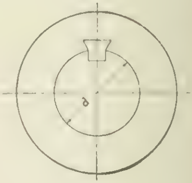


Fig. 67*a*.

The straight key, accurately fitted, is the most desirable fastening device for accurate machines, such as machine tools, on account of the fact that there is absolutely no radial force exerted to throw the parts out of true. It, however, requires a tight fit of hub to shaft, as the key cannot be relied upon to take up any looseness.

The taper key (Fig. 68), by its wedging action, will take up some looseness, but in so doing throws the parts out slightly. Or, even if the bored fit be good, if the taper key be not driven home with care, it will spring the hub, and make the parts run untrue. The great advantage, however, that the taper key has of holding the hub from endwise motion, renders it a very useful and practical article. It is usually provided with a head, or "gib," which permits a draw hook to be used to wedge between the face of the hub and the key to facilitate starting the key from its seat.

Two keys at 90° from each other may be used in cases where one key will not suffice. The fine workmanship involved in spacing these keys so that they will drive equally makes this plan inadvisable except in case of positive and unavoidable necessity.

The "Woodruff" key (Fig. 69) is a useful patented article for certain locations. This key is a half-disc, sunk in the shaft and the hub is slipped over it. A simple rotary cutter is dropped into the shaft to produce the key seat; and on account of the depth in the shaft, the tendency to rock sidewise is eliminated, and the drive is purely by shear.

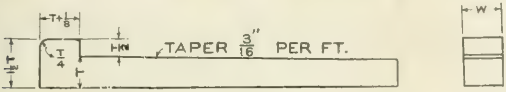


Fig. 68.

Keys may be milled out of solid stock, or drop-forged to within a small fraction of finished size. The drop-forged key is an excellent modern production and requires but a minimum amount of fitting. Any key, no matter how produced, requires some hand fitting and draw filing to bring it properly to its seat and give it full bearing.

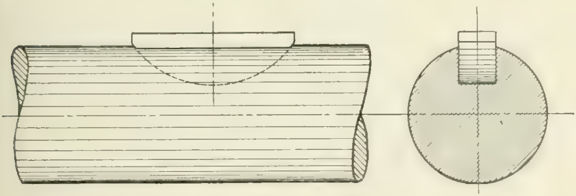


Fig. 69.

It is good mechanical policy to avoid keyed fastenings whenever possible. This does not mean that keys may never be used, but that a key is not an ideal way to produce an absolutely positive drive, partly because it is an expensive device, and partly because the tendency of any key is to work itself loose, even if carefully fitted.

The following tables are suggested as a guide to proportions of gib keys and feather keys, and will be found useful in the absence of any manufacturer's standard list:

Fig. 70. **PROPORTIONS FOR GIB KEYS.**

Diameter of shaft (*d*), inches.	$\frac{3}{4}$	1	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$1\frac{5}{8}$	2	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{4}$	4	5	$6\frac{1}{2}$
Width (W), inches.	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{7}{16}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{9}{16}$	$\frac{11}{16}$	$\frac{7}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{16}$	$1\frac{5}{16}$	$1\frac{5}{8}$
Thickness (T), inches.	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{9}{32}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{13}{32}$	$\frac{7}{16}$	$\frac{17}{32}$	$\frac{21}{32}$	$\frac{13}{16}$	1	$1\frac{1}{4}$

Fig. 71. **PROPORTIONS FOR FEATHER KEYS.**

Diameter of Shaft (*d*), inches,	$\frac{3}{4}$	1	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	$2\frac{1}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	3	$3\frac{1}{2}$	4	$4\frac{1}{2}$
Width (W), inches.	$\frac{3}{16}$	$\frac{7}{32}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{9}{16}$	$\frac{9}{16}$	$\frac{5}{8}$
Thickness (T), inches.	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{7}{16}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{8}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{7}{8}$

COTTERS.

ANALYSIS. Cotters are used to fasten hubs to rods rather than shafts, the distinction between a rod and a shaft being that a rod takes its load in the direction of its length, and does not drive by rotation. A cotter, therefore, is nothing but a cross-pin of modified form, to take shearing and crushing stress in the direction of the axis of the rod, instead of perpendicular to it.

Referring to Fig. 72, one will see that the cotter is made long and thin—long, in order to get sufficient shearing area to resist shearing along lines A and B; thin, in order to cut as little cross-sectional area out of the body of the shaft as possible. The cotter itself tends to shear along the lines A and B, and crush along the surfaces K, G, and J. The socket tends to crush along the surfaces K and G. The rod end D tends to be sheared out along the lines C H and Q E, and also to be crushed along the surface J. The socket tends to be sheared along the lines V U and X Y.

The cotter is made taper on one side, thus enabling it to draw up the flange of the rod tightly against the head of the socket. This taper must not be great enough to permit easy "backing out" and loosening of the cotter under load or vibration in the rod. In responsible situations this cannot be safely guarded against except through some auxiliary locking device, such as lock nuts on the end of the cotter (Fig. 73).

THEORY. Referring to Fig. 72, assume an axial load of P_1, as shown. The successive equations of external force to internal strength are enumerated below, for the different actions that take place:

For shearing along lines A and B, w being the average width of cotter, and S_s safe shearing stress of cotter,

$$P_1 = 2TwS_s. \qquad (106)$$

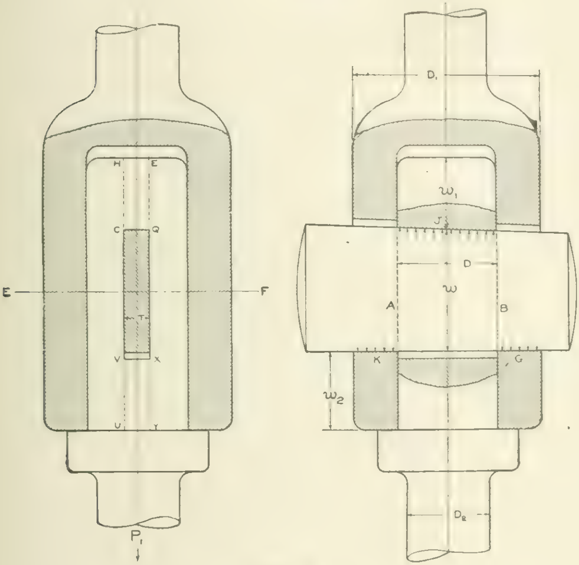


Fig. 72.

For crushing along surfaces K and G, S_c being least safe crushing stress, whether of cotter or socket,

$$P_1 = T(D_1 - D)S_c. \qquad (107)$$

For crushing along surface J, S_c being least safe crushing stress, whether of cotter or socket,

$$P_1 = DTS_c. \qquad (108)$$

For shearing along surfaces CH and QE, S_s being safe shearing stress of rod end, and w_1 end of slot to end of rod,

$$P_1 = 2w_1DS_s. \qquad \textbf{(109)}$$

For tension in rod end at section across slot, S_t being safe tensile stress in rod end,

$$P_1 = \left(\frac{\pi D^2}{4} - TD\right)S_t. \qquad \textbf{(110)}$$

For tension in socket at section across slot, S_t being safe tensile stress in socket,

$$P_1 = \left(\frac{\pi D_1^2}{4} - \frac{\pi D^2}{4} - T(D_1 - D)\right)S_t. \qquad \textbf{(111)}$$

For shearing in socket along the lines VU and XY, S_s being safe shearing stress in the socket, and w_2 end of slot to end of socket,

$$P_1 = 2w_2(D_1 - D)S_s. \qquad \textbf{(112)}$$

The proportions of cotter and socket may be fixed to some extent by practical or assumed conditions. The dimensions may then be tested by the above equations, that the safe working stresses may not be exceeded, the dimensions being then modified accordingly.

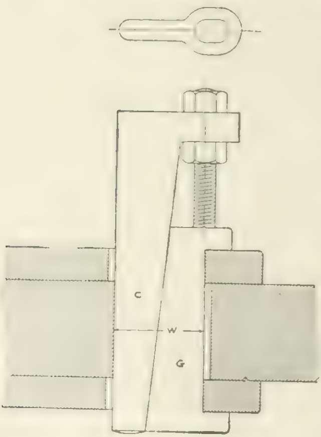


Fig. 73.

The steel of which both cotter and rod would ordinarily be made has range of working fiber stress as follows :

Tension, 8,000 to 12,000 (lbs. per sq. in.)
Compression, 10,000 to 16,000 (lbs. per sq. in.)
Shear, 6,000 to 10,000 (lbs. per sq. in.).

The socket, if made of cast iron, will be weak as regards tension, tendency to shear out at the end, and tendency to split. The uncertainty of cast iron to resist these is so great that the hub or socket must be very clumsy in order to have enough surplus strength. This is always a noticeable feature of the cotter type of fastening, and cannot well be avoided.

PRACTICAL MODIFICATION. The driving faces of the cotter are often made semicircular. This not only gives more shearing area at the sides of the slots, but makes the production of the slots easier in the shop. It also avoids the general objection to sharp corners—namely, a tendency to start cracks.

A practicable taper for cotters is $\frac{1}{2}$ inch per foot. This will under ordinary circumstances prevent the cotter from backing out under the action of the load. When set screws against the side of the cotter, or lock nuts are used, as in Fig. 73, the taper may be greater than this, perhaps as much as $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches per foot.

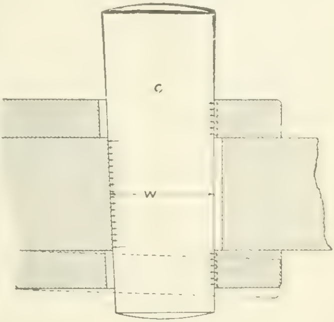


Fig. 74.

In the common use of the cotter for holding the strap at the ends of connecting rods, the strap acts like a modified form of socket. This is shown in Figs. 73 and 74. Here, in addition to holding the strap and rod together lengthwise, it may be necessary to prevent their spreading, and for this purpose an auxiliary piece G with gib ends is used. The tendency without this extra piece is shown by the dotted lines in Fig. 74.

The general mechanical fault with cottered joints is that the action of the load, especially when it constantly reverses, as in pump piston rods, always tends to work the cotter loose. Vibration also tends to produce the same effect. Once this looseness is started in the joint, the cotter loses its pure crushing and shearing action, and begins to partake of the nature of a hammer, and pounds itself and its bearing surfaces out of their true shape. Instead of a collar on the rod, we often find a taper fit of the rod in the socket; and any looseness in this case is still worse, for the rod then has end play in the socket, and by its "shucking" back and forth tends to split open the socket.

The only answer to these objections is to provide a positive locking device, and take up any looseness the instant it appears.

PROBLEMS ON KEYS, PINS, AND COTTERS.

1. Calculate the safe load in shear which can be carried on a key $\frac{3}{4}$ inch wide, $\frac{3}{8}$ inch thick, and 5 inches long. Assume $S_s = 6{,}000$.

2. Assuming the above key to be $\frac{3}{16}$ inch in hub and $\frac{3}{16}$ inch in shaft, test its proportions for crushing, at $S_c = 16{,}000$.

3. A gear 60 inches in diameter has a load of 3,000 lbs. at the pitch line. The shaft is 4 inches in diameter, in a hub, 5 inches long; and the key is a standard gib key as given in the table. Test its proportions for shearing.

4. A piston rod 2 inches in diameter carries a cotter $\frac{3}{8}$ inch thick, and has an axial load of 20,000 lbs. Calculate the average width of the cotter. $S_s = 9{,}000$.

5. Calculate fiber stress in rod in preceding problem at section through slot.

6. How far from the end of rod must the end of slot be?

7. Calculate the crushing fiber stresses on cotter, rod, and socket.

8. How far from the end of socket must the end of slot be, assuming the socket to be of steel?

BEARINGS, BRACKETS, AND STANDS.

NOTATION—The following notation is used throughout the chapters on Bearings Brackets and Stands.

A = Area (square inches).
a = Distance between bolt centers (inches).
b = Width of bracket base (inches).
c = Distance of neutral axis from outer fiber (inches).
D = Diameter of shaft (inches).
d = Diameter of bolt body (inches).
d_1 = Diameter at root of thread (inches).
H = Horse-power.
h = Thickness of cap at center (inches).
I = Moment of inertia.
L = Length of bearing (inches).
μ = Coefficient of friction (per cent).
N = Number of revolutions per minute.
n = Number of bolts in cap.
n_1 = Number of bolts in bracket base.
P = Total pressure on bearing (lbs.).
p = Pressure per square inch of projected area (lbs).
S = Safe tensile fiber stress (lbs.).
S_s = " shearing " (lbs.).
T = Total load on bolts at top of bracket (lbs.).
t = Thickness of bracket base (inches).
x = Distance from line of action of load to any section of bracket (inches).

ANALYSIS. Machine surfaces taking weight and pressure of other parts in motion upon them are, in general, known as **bearings.** If the motion is rectilinear, the bearing is termed a **slide, guide,** or **way,** such as the cross slide of a lathe, the cross-head guide of a steam engine, or the ways of a lathe bed.

If the motion is a rotary one, like that of the spindle of a lathe, the simple word "bearing" is generally used.

In any bearing, sliding or rotary, there must be strength to carry the load, stiffness to distribute the pressure evenly over the full bearing surface, low intensity of such pressure to prevent the lubricant from being squeezed out and to minimize the wear, and sufficient radiating surface to carry away the heat generated by friction of the surfaces as fast as it is generated. Sliding bearings are of such varied nature, and exist under conditions so peculiar to each case, that a general analysis is practically impossible beyond that given in the sentence above.

Rotary bearings can be more definitely studied, as there are but two variable dimensions, diameter and length, and it is the proper relation between these two that determines a good bearing. The size of the shaft, as noted under "Shafts," is calculated by taking the bending moment at the center of the bearing, combining it with the twisting moment, and solving for the diameter consistent with the assumed fiber stress. But this size must then be tried for deflection due to the bending load, in order that the requirement for stiffness may be fulfilled. When this is accomplished, the friction at the bearing surface may still generate so much heat that the exposed surface of the bearing will not radiate it as fast as generated, in which case the bearing gets hotter and hotter, until it finally burns out the lubricant and melts the lining of the bearing, and ruin results.

The heat condition is usually the critical one, as it is very easy to make a short bearing which is strong enough and amply stiff for the load it carries, but which nevertheless is a failure as a bearing, because it has so small a radiating surface that it cannot run cool.

The side load which causes the friction and the consequent development of heat, is due to the pull of the belt in the case of pulleys, the load on the teeth of gears, the pull on cranks and levers, the weight of parts, etc. If we could exert pure torsion on shafts without any side pressure, and counteract all the weight that comes on the shaft, we should not have any trouble with the development of heat in bearings; in fact, there would theoretically be no need of bearings, as the shafts would naturally spin about their axes, and would not need support.

It can be shown, theoretically, that the radiating surface of a bearing increases relatively to the heat generated by a given side load, *only when the length of the bearing is increased.* In other words, increasing the diameter and not the length, theoretically increases the heat generated per unit of time just as much as it increases the radiating surface; hence nothing is gained, and heat accumulates in the bearing as before. This important fact is verified by the design of high-speed bearings, which, it is always noted, are very long in proportion to their diameter, thus giving relatively high radiating power.

Bearings must be rigidly fastened to the body of the machine in some way, and the immediate support is termed a **bracket frame,** or **housing.** "Bracket" is a very general term, and applies to the supports of other machine parts besides "bearings." It is especially applicable to the more familiar types of bearing supports, and is here introduced to make the analysis complete.

The bracket must be strong enough as a beam to take the side load, the bending moment being figured at such points as are necessary to determine its outline. It may be of solid, box, or ribbed form, the latter being the most economical of material, and usually permitting the simplest pattern. The fastening of the bracket to the main body of the machine must be broad to give stability; the bolts act partly in shear to keep the bracket from sliding along its base, and partly in tension to resist its tendency to rotate about some one of its edges, due to the side pull of the belt, gear tooth, or lever load, as the case may be. The weight of the bracket itself and of the parts it sustains through the bearing, has likewise to be considered; and this acts, in conjunction with the working load on the bearing, to modify the direction and magnitude of the resultant load on the bracket and its fastening.

Stands are forms of brackets, and are subject to the same analysis. The distinction is by no means well defined, although we usually think more readily of a stand as having an upright or inverted position with reference to the ground. The ordinary "hanger" is a good example of an inverted stand; and the regular "floor stand," found on jack shafts in some power houses, is an example of the general class.

THEORY. As the method of calculation of the diameter of the shaft, as well as its deflection, has been considered under "Shafts," we may assume that the theoretical study of bearings starts on a given basis of shaft diameter D. The main problem then being one of heat control, let us first calculate the amount of heat developed in a bearing by a given side load. The force of friction acts at the circumference of the shaft, and is equal to the coefficient of friction times the normal force; or, for a given side load P, Fig. 75, the force of friction would be μP. The peripheral speed of the shaft for N revolutions per minute is $\frac{\pi DN}{12}$ feet per minute. As work is "force times distance," the work wasted in friction is then $\frac{\mu P \pi DN}{12}$ foot-pounds per minute. One horse-power being equal to 33,000 foot-pounds per minute, we have the equation,

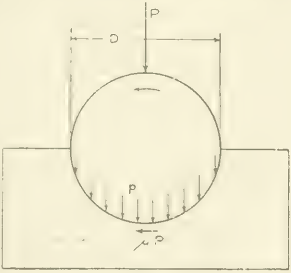


Fig. 75.

$$H = \frac{\mu P \pi DN}{12 \times 33,000}. \qquad (113)$$

The value of μ for ordinary, well lubricated bearings, may run as low as 5 per cent; but as the lubrication is often impaired, it quite commonly rises to 10 or 12 per cent. A value of 8 per cent is a fair average. This amount of horse-power is dissipated through the bearing in the form of heat. If we could exactly determine the ability that each particle of the metal around the shaft had to transmit the heat, or to pass it along to the outside of the casting, and if we could then determine the ability of the particles of air surrounding the casting to receive and carry away this heat, we could calculate just such proportions of the bearing and its casing as would never choke or retard this free transfer of heat away from the running surface.

Such refined theory is not practical, owing to the complicated shapes and conditions surrounding the bearing. The best that we can do is to say that for the usual proportions of bearings the side load may exist up to a certain intensity of "pressure per square inch of projected area" of bearing, or, in form of an equation,

$$P = pLD. \qquad (114)$$

The constant p is of a variable nature, depending on lubrication, speed, air contact, and other special conditions. For ordinary bearings having continuous pressure in one direction, and only fair lubrication, 400 to 500 is an average value. When the pressure changes direction at every half-revolution, the lubricant has a better chance to work fully over the bearing surface, and a higher value is permissible, say, 500 to 800. In locations where mere oscillation takes place, not continuous rotation, and reversal of pressure occurs, as on the cross head pin of a steam engine, p may run as high as 900 to 1,200. On the crank pins of locomotives, which have the reversal of pressure, and the benefit of high velocity through the air to facilitate cooling, the pressures may run equally high. On the eccentric crank pins of punching and shearing machines, where the pressure acts only for a brief instant and at intervals, the pressure ranges still higher without any dangerous heating action.

When a bearing, for practical reasons, is provided with a cap held in place by bolts or studs, the *theory* of the cap and bolts is of little importance, unless the load comes directly against the cap and bolts. Except in the latter case, the proportions of the cap and the size of the bolts are dependent upon general appearance and utility, it being manifestly desirable to provide a substantial design, even though some excess of strength is thereby introduced.

For the worst case of loading, however, which is when the cap is acted upon by the direct load, such as P in Fig. 76, we have the condition of a centrally loaded beam supported at the bolts. It is probable that the beam is partially fixed at the ends by the clamping of the nut; also that the load P, instead of being concentrated at the center, is to some extent distributed. It is hardly fair to assume the external moment equal to $\frac{Pa}{8}$ or $\frac{Pa}{4}$, the one being too small, perhaps, and the other too large. It will be reasonable to take the external moment at $\frac{Pa}{6}$, in which case, equating the external moment to the internal moment of resistance,

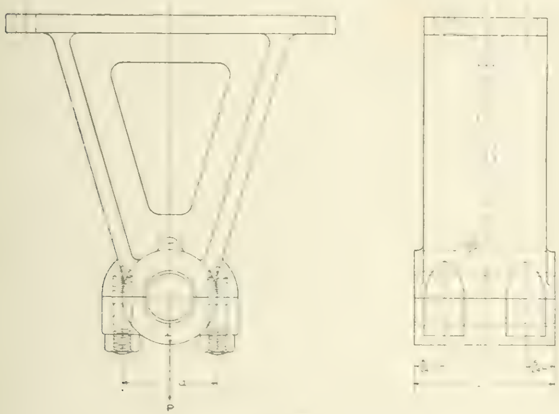


Fig. 76.

$$\frac{Pa}{6} = \frac{SI}{c} = \frac{SLh^2}{6} \qquad (115)$$

from which, the length of bearing being known, we may calculate the thickness h.

One bolt on each side is sufficient for bearings not more than 6 inches long, but for longer bearings we usually find two bolts on a side. The theoretical location for two bolts on a side, in order that the bearing may be equally strong at the bolts and at the center of the length, may be shown by the principles of mechanics to be $\frac{5}{24}$ L from each end, as indicated in Fig. 76.

The bolts are evidently in direct tension, and if equally loaded would each take their fractional share of the whole load P. This is difficult to guarantee, and it is safer to consider that $\frac{2}{3}$ P may be taken by the bolts on one side. On this basis, for total number of bolts n, equating the external force to the internal resistance of the bolts, we have :

$$\frac{2}{3}P = \frac{S\pi d_1^2}{4}\cdot\frac{n}{2}, \qquad (116)$$

from which the proper commercial diameter may be readily found.

The bracket may have the shape shown in Fig. 77. The portion at B is under direct shearing stress; and if A be the area at this point, and S_s the safe shearing stress, then, equating the external force to the internal shearing resistance,

$$P = AS_s. \qquad (117)$$

The same shear comes on all parts of the bracket to the left of the load, but there is an excess of shearing strength at these points.

At the point of fastening, the bolts are in shear, due to the same load, for which the equation is

$$P = \frac{\pi d^2}{4}n_1S_s. \qquad (118)$$

For the upper bolts, the case is that of direct tension, assuming that the whole bracket tends to rotate about the lower edge E. To find the load T on these bolts, we should take moments about the point E, as follows:

$$PL_1 = Tl; \text{ or } T = \frac{PL_1}{l}. \qquad (119)$$

Then, equating the external force to the internal resistance,

$$T = \frac{PL_1}{l} = \frac{\pi d_1^2}{4}\times\frac{n_1}{2}S. \qquad (120)$$

The upper flange is loaded with the bolt load T, and tends to break off at the point of connection to the main body of the bracket, the external moment, therefore, being Tr. The section of the flange is rectangular; hence the equation of external and internal moments is:

$$T_l = \frac{PL_1}{l} = \frac{Sbt^2}{6}. \qquad (121)$$

It may be noted that the lower bolts act on such a small leverage about E, that they would stretch and thus permit all the load to be thrown on the upper bolts; this is the reason why they are not subject to calculation for tension.

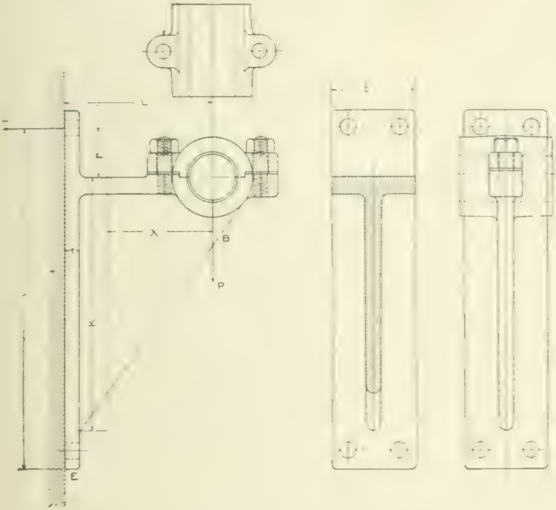


Fig. 77.

The section of the bracket to the left of the load P is dependent upon the bending moment, for, if this section is large enough to take the bending moment properly, the shear may be disregarded. It should be calculated at several points, to make sure that the fiber stress is within allowable limits. The general expression for the equation of moments is, for any section at leverage x,

$$Px = \frac{SI}{c}, \qquad (122)$$

from which, by the proper substitution of the moment of inertia of the section, the fiber stress can be calculated. The moment of inertia for simple ribbed sections can be found in most handbooks. The process of solution of the above equation, though simple, is apt to be tedious, and is not considered necessary to illustrate here.

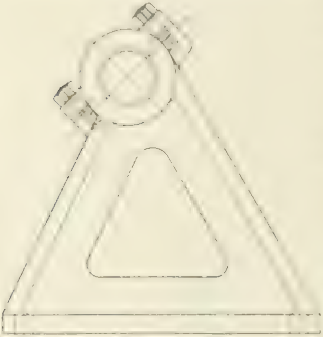


Fig. 78

PRACTICAL MODIFICATION. Adjustment is an important practical feature of bearings. Unless the proportions are so ample that wear is inappreciable, simple and ready adjustment must be provided. The taper bushing, Fig. 79, is neat and satisfactory for machinery in which expense and refinement are permissible. This is true of some machine tools, but is not true of the general "run" of bearings. The most common form of adjustment is secured by the plain cap, which may or may not be tongued into the brackets, with liners placed in the joint when new, which may subsequently be removed or reduced so as to allow the cap to close down upon the shaft. Several forms of cap bearings are illustrated in Figs. 80, 81, and 82.

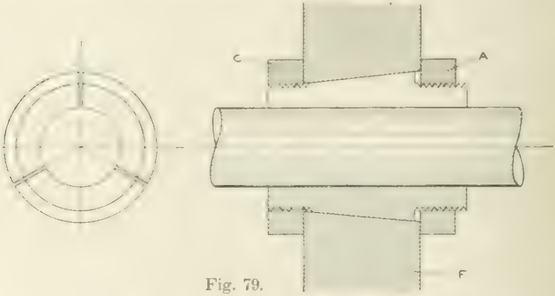


Fig. 79.

Large engine shaft bearings have special forms of adjustment by means of wedges and screws, which take up the wear in all directions, at the same time accurately preserving the alignment of the shafts; but this refinement is seldom required for shafts of ordinary machinery.

In cases where the cap bearing is not applicable, a simple bushing may be used. This may be removed when worn, and a new one inserted, the exact alignment being maintained, as the outside will be concentric with the original axis of shaft, regardless of the wear which has taken place in the bore.

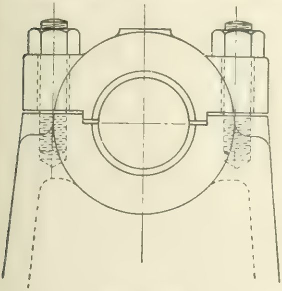


Fig. 80.

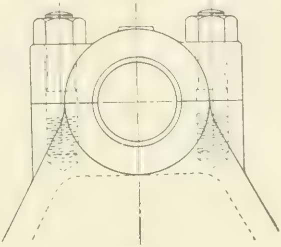


Fig. 81.

The lubrication of bearings is a part of the design, in that the lubricant should be introduced at the proper point, and pains taken to guarantee its distribution to all points of the running surface. The method of lubrication should be so certain that no excuse for its failure would be possible. Grease is a successful lubricator for heavy loads and slow speeds, oil for light loads and high speeds.

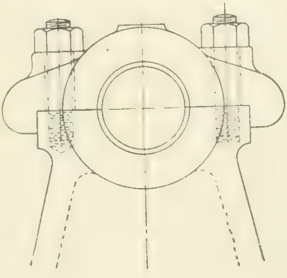


Fig. 82.

In order to insure the lubricant reaching the sliding surfaces and entering between them, it must be introduced at a point where the pressure is moderate, and where the motion of the parts will naturally lead it to all points of the bearing. Grooves and channels of ample size assist in this regard. A special form of bearing uses a ring riding on the shaft to carry the oil constantly from a small reservoir beneath the shaft up to the top, where it is distributed along the bearing and finally flows back to the reservoir and is used again.

The materials of which bearings are made vary with the service required and with the refinement of the bearing. Cast iron makes an excellent bearing for light loads and slow speeds, but it is very apt to "seize" the shaft in case the lubrication is in the least degree impaired. Bronze, in its many forms of density and hardness, is extensively used for high-grade bearings, but it also has little natural lubricating power, and requires careful attention to keep it in good condition.

Babbitt, a composition metal, of varying degrees of hardness, is the most universal and satisfactory material for ordinary bearings. It affords a cheap method of production, being poured in molten form around a mandrel, and firmly retained in its casing or shell through dovetailed pockets into which the metal flows and hardens. It requires no boring or extensive fitting. Some scraping to uniform bearing is necessary in most cases, but this is easily and cheaply done. Babbitt is a durable material, and has some natural lubricating power, so that it has less tendency to heat with scanty lubrication than any of the materials previously mentioned. Almost any grade of bearing may be produced with babbitt. In its finest form the babbitt is hammered, or pened, into the shell of the bearing, and then bored out nearly to size, a slightly tapered mandrel being subsequently drawn through, compressing the babbitt and giving a polished surface.

A combination bearing of babbitt and bronze is sometimes used. In this the bronze lies in strips from end to end of the bearing, and the babbitt fills in between the strips. The shell, being of bronze, gives the required stiffness, and the babbitt the favorable running quality.

PROBLEMS ON BEARINGS, BRACKETS, AND STANDS.

1. The allowable pressure on a bearing is 300 pounds per

square inch of projected area. What is the required length of the bearing if the total load is 4,500 pounds and the diameter is 3 inches?

2. The cross-head pin of a steam engine must be 2.5 inches in diameter to withstand the shearing strain. If the maximum pressure is 10,000 pounds, what length should be given to the pin?

3. The journals on the tender of a locomotive are $3\frac{1}{2} \times 7$ inches. The total weight of the tender and load is 60,000 pounds. If there are 8 journals, what is the pressure per square inch of projected area?

4. What horse-power is lost in friction at the circumference of a 3-inch bearing carrying a load of 6,000 pounds, if the number of revolutions per minute is 150 and the coefficient of friction is assumed to be 5 per cent?

5. The cast-iron bracket in Fig. 77 has a load P of 1,000 pounds. Determine the fiber stress in the web section at the base of the bracket if the thickness is taken at $\frac{1}{2}$ inch, and $L_1 = 12$ inches; $l = 20$ inches; $k = 11$ inches; $t = 1$ inch.

6. Calculate the diameter of the bolts at the top of the bracket.

7. Assuming r equal to 6 inches, what is the fiber stress at the root of flange?

GENERAL INDEX

GENERAL INDEX

In this index the Volume number appears in Roman numerals thus I, II, III, IV, etc., and the Page number in Arabic numerals thus 1, 2, 3, 4, etc. For example, Volume IV, Page 327, is written IV, 327.

The page numbers of each volume will be found at the bottom of the pages; the numbers at the top refer only to the section.

	Vol	Page
A		
Absolute and relative motion	III,	311
Acid converter lining	II,	248
Acid process, running	II,	256
Adiabatic compression	VI,	92
Adiabatic expansion	VI,	93
Adjustable dies	II,	94
Adjustable eccentrics	V,	274
Adjustable hollow mill	II,	112
Adjustable reamers	II,	51
Adjustable snap gauge	II,	215
Adjustable taps	II,	82
Admission	V,	229
Admission line	V,	200
Agents of refrigeration	V,	299
Air compressors	IV,	363-375
Air cushions	VI,	289
Air fans	VI,	226
Air pumps	IV,	314
Alloys	II,	276
Aluminum	II,	273
Aluminum steel	II,	259
American Crossley suction gas-producer	VI	50
American suction gas-producer	VI,	49
Ammeters	VI,	232
Ammonia condenser	V,	329
Ammonia receiver	V,	343
Amsler gas-producer	VI,	30
Angle of lead	V,	231
Angle valve	IV,	179
Angle weld	I,	288
Angular advance	V,	231
Angular cutters	II,	134
Annealing	III,	271
steel	I,	330
tool steel	II,	18
Annular gears	III,	365
Anvils	I,	271
Appliances for handling coal and iron ore	III,	299
Arbors	II,	60
Area of cards, to find	V,	195
Artificial lighting	I,	259
Ash zone	VI,	20
Assembly drawing	VII,	103
Atlas water-tube boiler	IV,	121
Atmospheric condenser	V,	333
Atmospheric line	V,	200
Automatic gas-producer, definition of	VI,	26
Automobile motor	VI,	161
Automobiles	VI,	151-238
B		
Babcock and Wilcox water-tube boiler	IV,	113
Back firing	VI,	12[illegible]
Back pressure line	V,	201
Back saw	III,	21

Note —For page numbers see foot of pages.

Vol. Page
Backlash I, 124, 169, III, 361
Balance V, 149
Balance gear VI, 201
Balanced valves V, 261
Ball pene hammer I, 11
Ball valves IV, 288
Band ring I, 284
Band saw III, 59
Barrel calorimeter IV, 209
Barrel core III, 221
Basic process, running II, 257
Beam compasses VII, 31
Beaumé scale V, 351
Beech III, 13
Begg's directurn boiler IV, 107
Belpaire boiler IV, 102
Belting I, 210
    H. P. transmitted by VII, 283
    material of VII, 285
    speed of VII, 285
Belts VII, 275
    initial tension in VII, 286
    proportions of VII, 287
Bench miller I, 167
Bending combined with torsion VII, 310
Bending die II, 197
Benzene VI, 139
Bessemer steel II, 244, 310, VII, 319
Bevel I, 16, III, 37
Bevel gears III, 367, VII, 332
Binders III, 197
Black prints, formula for VII, 104
Black walnut III, 13
Blacking III, 201
Blast I, 270
Blast furnace II, 229, 288
Blast-furnace gas VI, 15, 135
Block plane III, 26
Blow holes III, 182
Blow-off pipe IV, 69
Blow-out apparatus IV, 187
Blue-print solution, formula for VII, 104
Blue-printing VII, 100
Boiler accessories IV, 143-259
Boiler classification IV, 71
Boiler construction IV, 11-67
Boiler coverings IV, 220

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Vol. Page
Boiler definitions IV, 70
Boiler design IV, 44
Boiler explosions IV, 230
Boiler fittings and accessories IV, 69
Boiler furnaces IV, 149
Boiler materials IV, 11
Boiler setting IV, 143
Boiler supports IV, 148
Boilers
    care of IV, 257
    horse-power of IV, 221
    types of IV, 69-141
Bolt-cutter I, 70
Bolts VII, 355
Boring I, 114
Boring tools I, 102
Bow pen VII, 26
Box annealing II, 19
Box jig II, 174
Box-rule I, 14
Brake V, 143, VI, 211
Brake horse-power V, 192
Brass IV, 12
Brass work III, 271
Bridge tramways III, 301
Brine V, 350
Brine cooler V, 308
Brine systems V, 352
Brine tank V, 303
British thermal unit VI, 14
Bronze III, 272
Brown releasing gear V, 288
Buckets, wear on V, 152
Buckeye engine governor V, 70
Built-up patterns III, 91
Bushings II, 170
Butt weld I, 284
By-product gas-producers VI, 58

C

Cables VI, 286
Cahall water-tube boiler IV, 135
Caliper square I, 23
Calipers I, 21; III, 40
Calking IV, 42
Calorific power VI, 14
    of producer gas VI, 30

	Vol	Page
Calorimeter	IV, 208; V,	143
Calory	VI	14
Cams	III,	342
cutting of	I,	186
Cape chisel	I,	40
Capitaine underfeed gas producer	VI	42
Car-dumping machines	III	307
Carbon	II,	235
Carbon dioxide	VI,	12
Carbon monoxide	VI,	12
Carbureter	VI, 140,	171
Carburetted water gas	VI,	15
Cards for compound engines	V,	204
Case-hardening	II, 27,	260
Cast iron	II, 234; IV,	11
Casting iron	II,	293
Casting ladle	II,	249
Castings	II,	236
cleaning	III,	258
defects in	III,	182
duplicating	III,	211
steel	III,	263
Cementation steel	II,	241
Center chisels	I,	40
Center lines	VII,	65
Center punch	I,	12
Center square	I,	17
Centigrade	V,	298
Centrifugal blower	IV,	363
Centrifugal pump	IV, 274; VI,	225
Centrifugal whirling	VII,	313
Chain links	I,	285
Chains	VI,	196
Change-speed gears	VI,	182
Chaplets	III,	173
Chapman gate valve	IV,	180
Chasing	I,	125
Check-valves	IV,	180
Chemical action in gas-producer	VI,	20
Chemistry of iron	III,	249
Cherry	III,	13
Chimneys	IV,	64
Chipping	I,	42
Chisels	III,	31
Chrome steel	II,	259
Chuck-drills	I,	51
Chucks	I, 83; III,	52

	Vol	Page
Circular forming tools	II	7
Circular pitch	III	
Circular plane	III,	27
Circumferential pitch	III,	361
Clam-shell buckets	III,	304
Clamp coupling	VII,	354
Claw coupling	VII,	354
Clay wash	III,	162
Clearance	V, 22,	148
Clearance line	V,	202
Cleft or split weld for heavy stock	I,	288
Clincher tire	VI,	214
Clutches	VI,	193
Coal gas	VI,	129
Coal and iron ore, automatic appliances for handling	III, 299-309	
Coal-loading machines	III,	308
Cochrane vertical boiler	IV,	104
Cochrane feed-water heater	IV,	201
Cochrane steam separator	IV,	205
Coke-oven gas	VI,	14
Cold chisels	I,	207
Cold shuts	III,	182
Column patterns	III,	150
Combined diagrams	V,	208
Combined stresses	VII,	307
Combustion motor	VI,	75
Combustion zone	VI,	21
Compass saw	III,	22
Compasses	VII,	22
Compensation of cut-off	V,	234
Competition valve	IV,	179
Composite motions	III,	313
Compound engines	V,	25
Compound pumps	IV,	329
Compounding	V,	136
Compressed air, pumping by	IV,	356
Compression	V,	229
Compression curve	V,	202
Compressor	V,	320
Condensers	V, 47, 120,	150
advantages of	V,	121
ammonia	V,	329
cooling surface	V,	124
jet	V,	50
quantity of water	V,	123
surface	V,	47

Note —For page numbers see foot of pages

Vol Page

Condensers
  vacuum, measurement of V, 113
Condensing, advantages of V, 121
Conical boss VI, 319
Connecting rod V, 21
Construction of boilers IV, 11-67
Constructive calculations VII, 210
Continuous gas producer, definition of VI, 25
Cooling towers V, 53
Cooper Hewitt light I, 264
Copper II, 263; III, 272; IV, 12
Copper ores II, 263
Core arbors III, 205
Core binders III, 162
Core-box plane III, 29
Core templates III, 207
Core making III, 156, 196
Core prints III, 64
Cores, setting III, 207
Cores for columns III, 151
Corliss engines V, 44
Corliss valve setting V, 292
Corliss valves V, 127
Cornish boiler IV, 76
Corrosion IV, 223
Cotters VII, 372
Counterbores II, 100
Couplings VII, 351
  clamp VII, 354
  claw VII, 354
  flange VII, 352
  muff VII, 353
  problems on VII, 355
Crank V, 21
Crank action V, 131
Crank and connecting rod III, 352
Crank pin V, 21
Cross [illegible] V, 176
Crosshead V, 21
Cross pene hammer I, 13
Cross-sections VII, 69
Crowfoot stays IV, 35
Crowning pulleys III, 324
Crucible steel II, 243, 298
Crucibles III, 281
Crude oil engines VI, 143

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages

Vol Page

Cupola
  fuel for III, 253
  operating III, 244
Cupola mixtures III, 248
Cupola process II, 246, 264
Curtis turbine V, 147
Cutters I, 159, 163
Cut-off V, 229
Cut-off and expansion of steam engine V, 136
Cutting-off tool III, 56
Cutting speed of lathe tools I, 104
Cutting tools I, 39
Cycloidal curves VII, 322
Cylinder, steam engine V, 19
Cylinder heads V, 19
Cylinder ratios V, 27
Cylinders and cones connected by belts III, 322
Cylinders and cones revolving in contact III, 319
Cylindrical boiler IV, 74
Cylindrical cams III, 347

D

D valve IV, 319
Dashpot VI, 173, 275
  vacuum V, 292
Decomposition zone VI, 21
Deflection VII, 311
Deflectors VI, 62
De Laval turbine V, 82, 161
Design, method of VII, 204
Detail drawing VII, 97
Diagonal stays IV, 35
Dial gauge IV, 171
Diametral pitch III, 361
Diamond point chisel I, 40
Die forging I, 355
Die holders II, 98
Dies I, 67; II, 178
  adjustable II, 94
  bending II, 197
  clearance holes II, 93
  compound bending II, 198
  forming II, 198
  gang II, 193
  multiple II, 196

Vol. Page

Dies
  rake of cutting edge II. [illegible]
  spring screw [illegible] II. [illegible]
  thread cutting II. [illegible]
Diesel cycle VI. [illegible]
Differential steam trap IV. [illegible]
Dimension lines VII. [illegible]
Dipping basket III. [illegible]
Direct-acting steam pumps V. [illegible]
Direct expansion refrigeration V. [illegible]
Directurn boiler IV. [illegible]
Disc fan IV. 363
Disc and roller III. 329
Distillation zone VI. [illegible]
Dividers I. 20; III. 39; VII. [illegible]
Docks, iron ore II. [illegible]
Dolomite II. [illegible]
Double-acting engine V. [illegible]
Double heat valves IV. [illegible]
Double-ended return-tube boiler IV. [illegible]
Double-pipe condenser V. [illegible]
Double-ported valve V. [illegible]
Double-tube boiler, definition of IV. [illegible]
Double valve gears V. [illegible]
Down-draft furnaces IV. [illegible]
Down-draft gas-producer, definition of VI. [illegible]
Dowson water regulator VI. [illegible]
Draft III. 72; IV. 164
  closed ash-pit system IV. 165
  closed stoke-hold system IV. 165
  Ellis and Eaves system IV. 166
  Howden system IV. 166
  induced system IV. 166
  steam jets IV. [illegible]
Drafting room organization VII. 187 [illegible]
  material lists VII. [illegible]
  symbols VII. [illegible]
Draw sticks III. [illegible]
Drawfiling I. 47
Drawing instruments and materials VII. [illegible]
Drawing pen VII. [illegible]
Drill jigs II. [illegible]
Drill press I. [illegible]
Drilling hard metals I. [illegible]
Drilling in the lathe I. [illegible]
Drills I. 50; II. [illegible]
Drills
  flat II. [illegible]
  single lip II. [illegible]
  straightway II. [illegible]
  twist II. [illegible]
Driving gears VII. [illegible]
[illegible] V. 284
Drum and brake VII. 249
[illegible] VII. [illegible]
[illegible] III. 156
[illegible] III. [illegible]
Drying stoves III. 277
Duff gas-producer VI. [illegible]
Duff-Whitfield gas-producer VI. [illegible]
Dunlop carbureter VI. [illegible]
Duplex milling machine I. [illegible]
Duplex pump IV. 307, 328
Duplex pump plates VII. 123
  dimensions and letters VII. 137
  foundation VII. 175
  general drawing VII. 175
  inking and tracing VII. 145
  order sheets VII. 179
  piston rod and valve stem VII. 151
  plunger and valve details VII. 173
  steam chest and valve VII. [illegible]
  steam cylinder VII. 133
  steam end layout VII. 125
  valve motion details VII. 161
  valve motion layout VII. 157
  water cylinder VII. 169
  water cylinder, cap and air chamber VII. 171
  water end layout VII. [illegible]
  yoke, stuffing-boxes, bracket, etc VII. [illegible]
Duplex steam pump V. 44
Duplicating castings III. [illegible]

E

Eccentric III. [illegible] V. [illegible] 224
Eccentric arbors II. 67
Eccentric turning I. 111
Efficiency of
  actual engine V. [illegible]
  gas-producer VI. [illegible]
  [illegible] IV. [illegible]

Note.—F [illegible]

Vol. Page

[illegible]
    [illegible] IV. [illegible]
Electric elevators VI. [illegible]
[illegible] VI. [illegible]
[illegible] II. [illegible]
Electric lighting I. [illegible]
Electric limit switches VI. [illegible]
[illegible]
    [illegible]
Electric welder I. 368
Electric welding development I. 367–376
Elevators VI. 241–[illegible]
Ellis and Eaves system of forced draft V. 66
Emery cloth I. 48
End mills I. [illegible]; II. 147
Engine constants, table V. 191
Engine cylinder III. [illegible]
Engine governor V. 70
[illegible] I. 76
Engines V. [illegible]
    compound V. 25
    Corliss V. 44
    double-acting V. 31
    gas VI. 75
    high-speed V. 29
    marine V. [illegible]
    oil VI. 139
    pumping V. 40
    quadruple V. 27
    simple V. 24
    triple-expansion V. 27
    vertical and horizontal V. [illegible]
Epicyclic trains III. 370
[illegible] III. 365
Evaporators V. 302
Exhaust line V. 201
Exhaust valves VI. 87
Expanding mandrels I. 87; II. 65
Expansion
    of gases V. 93
    ratio of V. 128
Expansion curve V. 201
Explosive mixture VI. 122
Extension lines VII. 65
External-combustion motor VI. 75
External corrosion IV. 223

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages

Vol. Page

Externally fired boiler, definition of IV. 70

F

Face milling cutters II. 150
Face-plates III. 52, 117
Facing tool with inserted cutter II. 103
Facings III. [illegible]
Fagot welds I. 280
Fahrenheit scale V. 298
Fairbanks-Morse suction gas producer VI. 46
[illegible] VI. 163
Feed apparatus IV. 190
Feed pumps IV. 69
Feed-water heaters IV. 200; V. 138
Ferrules IV. 10
Fiber graphite V. 74
Files I. 43
Filing templet I. 70
Fillets III. 114
Filter VI. 63
Finishing metal I. 293
Fire-box boilers IV. 98
Fire clay III. 162
Fire pumps IV. 302
Fire-tube boilers IV. 80
Firing IV. 253
Fitting brasses I. 265
Fitting tongs I. 273
Fixed gauges I. 33
Flange coupling VII. [illegible]
Flanging iron and steel plates IV. 25
Flasks III. 163
Flat chisel I. 39
Flat drill I. 50; II. 28
Flat forming tools II. 115
Flat square I. 15
Flat or washer ring I. 284
Flatters I. 274
Flaws in castings II. 325–329
Flexible valve IV. 284
Float trap IV. 206
Flue boilers IV. 75
Flues, boiler IV. 60
Fluted chucking reamers II. 45
Fluted hand reamer II. 41
Fluting rollers I. 207
Fluxes I. 279

Vol Page

Fly milling cutters II 11
Fly wheel V, [illegible]
Follow boards III, 151
Forced draft IV, 165
Forces, moments and beams VII, 210
Forcing pump IV, 265, 280
Foreman, the ideal II, 353
Forge I, 268
Forge shop equipment I, 268
Forged work, calculation of stock for I, 310
Forging I, 267-[illegible]
Forging heat I, [illegible]
Forging operations I, 292
Formed milling cutters II, 137
Formed reamers II, 56
Forming die II 298
Forming tools II, 115
Forter gas-producer VI, 31
Foster reducing valve IV, 187
Foundry facing III, 160
Foundry ladles III, 175
Foundry sieve III, 166
Foundry swab III, 168
Foundry work III, 155-297
Four-bar linkage III, 350
Frame of engine V, 21
Franklinite II, 229
Fraser electric elevator VI 277
Fraser and Talbot gas-producer VI, 33
Friction clutches III, 321; VII, 345
Friction gear VI, 188
Friction and lubrication VII, 217
Fuel consumption in gas engine VI, 128
Fuel economizers IV, 159
Fuels used in gas engines VI, 129
Fuel used in steam production IV, 236
Full lines VII, 64
Fullers I, 275
Furnace flues IV, 41
Furnace hoists III, 306
Furnaces for boilers IV, 149
Fusible plugs IV, 69, 162

G

Gaggers III, 173
Galloway boiler IV 79
Galvanic cells VI, 222
Gang die II, 193

Gas cleaning VI 6
Gas engines VI, 75-139
Gas firing VI, 14
Gas poisoning VI, 71
Gas-producers II 257; VI, 11-72
Gaseous fuel VI, 11, 14
Gases VI, 11
expansion of V, 93
Gasification losses VI, 26
Gasoline VI, 139
Gasoline engines VI, 140
Gate valve IV, 180
Gating III, 175
Gauge cocks IV 69
Gauge-glasses IV 175
Gauges II 206; IV 71; V, 143
steam and vacuum IV 172
water IV, 174
Gear pump VI, 225
Gear wheel patterns III, 137
Gearing III, 366
Gears VII 241
cutting of I 188
Generating a surface plate I, 204
George automatic feed VI, 37
Gimbal joints VI 200
Globe valve III 131; IV 178
Gluing III, 88
Gooch link V, 268
Gouges III, 31, 54
Governing gas engine VI, 111
Governing turbines V, 150
Governors V, 62, 159
Grab buckets III, 303
Gradometers VI, 232
Gram-calory VI 14
Graphite V 74
Grate area of boiler IV, 45
Gravity motion III, 342
Green sand molding III, 155
Greene gear V, 290
Grinding drills I, 56
Grinding machine I, 190
Grinding snap gauges II 212
Grinding valves I, 63
Grindstones III, 50
Grooving IV 225

Note—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Vol Page
Gusset stays IV. 34

H

Hackworth gear V. 270
Hammer-break igniter VI. 108
Hammers I 11
Hand planer III. 60
Hand reamer I. 59
Hand saws III. 17
Hand screws III. 90
Hand taps II 73
[illegible] I 125
Hand-operated tools I 11
Handholes IV. 70
[illegible] I. 303
Hardening reamers II. 43
Hardening steel I. 329
Hardening taps II 79
Hardening tool steel II 21
Harmonic motion III 342
Harrison water-tube boiler IV 140
Harvey process for hardening armor plate II. 260
Haystack boiler IV. 72
Hazelton water-tube boiler IV 139
Heat [illegible] V. 80
Heat balance VI. 28
Heat losses in gasification VI. 28
Heine water-tube boiler IV. [illegible]
Helix III [illegible]
Hematite II 247
High-speed engines V 29
High-speed steel, economy of II 317-322
[illegible] IV. 286
Hollow arch IV 157
Hollow mills II 111
Holt valve IV. 187
Hook-tooth gear VII. 330
Horizontal milling machine I. 168
Hornblower's steam engine V 17
Horse-power
  [illegible] IV 14. 221
  of compound engines V 211
  of gearing VII. 314
  transmitted by belting VII. 283
Howden system of forced draft IV. 166
Hulett unloader III 305
Hydraulic elevators VI. 250
Hydraulic ram IV. 266
Hydraulic riveting IV. 21
Hydrogen VI. 12
Hydro-kineter IV. 198

I

Ideal foreman II. 353-358
Idle gear III. 369
Ignition VI. 105
Incrustation IV. 226
India oil stone III. 49
Indicated H P of engine V. 188
Indicator cards V. 212
Indicator diagrams
  to take V. 186
  theoretical V. 199
Indicators, steam engine V. 141, 173
Individual clutch transmission VI. 184
Induced draft IV. 166
Induced-draft gas-producers VI. 25, 40
Ingots II. 249
Initial tension in belt VII. 286
Injectors IV. 196
Inking and tracing VII. 145
Inlet valves VI 87
Inserted-blade reamers II. 50
Inserted-blade taps II. 83
Inserted-tooth cutter I. 161
Instruments and materials for drawing VII. 11
  beam compasses VII 31
  bow pen VII 26
  bow pencil VII. 26
  compasses VII. 22
  dividers VII. 25
  drawing board VII. 13
  drawing paper VII. 11
  drawing pen VII. 26
  erasers VII. 14
  ink VII. 28
  irregular curve VII. 30
  pencils VII. 14
  protractor VII. 29
  scales VII. 29
  T-square VII. 15
  thumb tacks VII 13
  triangles VII. 17
Internal-combustion motor VI. 76

Note—For page numbers see foot of pages

	Vol.	Page
Internal corrosion	IV	[illegible]
Internal furnace return tube boiler	IV	[illegible]
Internally-fired boiler, definition of	IV	79
Invention	VII	[illegible]
Invisible lines	VII	[illegible]
Involute curves	III, 365, VII	322
Iron	II	227
blast furnace	II	229
castings	II	[illegible]
chemistry of	III	[illegible]
manufacture of	II, [illegible]	[illegible]
minerals	II	229
ores of	II	227
welding	II	241
Iron moulding	III,	155
Iron ores	II,	227
Iron plane	III,	23
Iron pyrites	II,	229
Irregular curve	VII,	30

J

Jack plane	III,	26
Jack screw	III	336
Jacketing	V	116
Jaw clutch	III,	331
Jet condensers	V, 50,	116
Jet pump	IV	269
Jig	I	[illegible]
examples of	II	156
Jointer plane	III	26
Joy gear	V	272
Jump spark	VI	218
Jump spark ignition	VI,	110
Jump weld	I	287

K

Kerosene	VI	139
Kerosene engines	VI	143
Key seat rule	I	[illegible]
Keys and pins	VII	[illegible]
Kingston carbureter	VI	173

L

Ladles	III	247
Lagging	IV	217
Lancashire boiler	IV	77
Lap weld	I,	[illegible]
Lapping a gauge [illegible]	II	[illegible]

	Vol.	Page
Latent heat	V	[illegible]
Lathe	I, [illegible], III	[illegible]
Lathe dogs	I	85
Lathe tools	I, 95, III	54
boring	I	102
cutting speed of	I	104
gouge	III	54
skew chisel	III	55
turning	I	100
Lead	II, 267, III	[illegible]
baths	I	331
Lead	V,	[illegible]
definition of	VII,	340
Leather belting, strength of	VII,	283
Leather valves	IV,	286
Lenoir gas engine	VI,	78
Lentz boiler	IV,	[illegible]
Lever safety-valve	IV,	182
Levers	III	348
Lifting pump	IV, 264,	277
Limestone	II,	229
Limit gauge	I, [illegible], II	[illegible]
Limit valves	VI,	[illegible]
Limonite	II	227
Linear velocity	III,	[illegible]
Lines	VII,	64
Lining shafting	I	208
Link motion	V	18
Link work	III,	[illegible]
Lipe tool post	I,	99
Liquid lubricants	V	74
Liquid scrubbers	VI	[illegible]
Load, variation of	V	[illegible]
Loam	III	[illegible]
Loam molding	III,	[illegible]
Loam work	III	156
Locating gauge	II,	[illegible]
Lock nuts	VII	[illegible]
Locomotive, Stephenson	V	17
Locomotive taper	I	60
Log of test	V	[illegible]
Loomis induced-draft gas-producer	VI,	40
Lubricants	V	74
Lubrication	V, [illegible],	[illegible]
of drills	I,	[illegible]
of engine cylinder	VI,	[illegible]
Lubricators, sight feed	V,	[illegible]

Note.—For [illegible]

Vol. Page

M

Machine, definition of III. [illegible]
Machine design VII. 197-387
    base, brake strap, bracket, and foot lever VII. [illegible]
    bearings, brackets, and stands VII. [illegible]
    belts VII. [illegible]
    bevel gears VII. 332
    bolts VII. [illegible]
    brackets and caps VII. [illegible]
    calculations, notes, and records VII. 202
    cotters VII. [illegible]
    couplings VII. 351
    data on sketch VII. [illegible]
    definition VII. 197
    driving gears VII. 224
    [illegible] VII. [illegible]
    drum shaft VII. 235
    friction clutches VII. [illegible]
    gear guard and brake [illegible] spring VII. 255
    gears VII. [illegible]
    general drawing VII. [illegible]
    [illegible] VII. [illegible]
    length of [illegible] VII. [illegible]
    keys, pins, and cotters VII. [illegible]
    [illegible] VII. 230
    method of VII. 204
    original, suggestion on VII. 268
    pinion bore VII. 235
    pinion shaft outer bearing VII. 235
    preliminary layout VII. 237
    preliminary sketch VII. 224
    problem VII. 223
    pulleys VII. 227, 239, 288
    relation VII. 199
    rope and drum VII. 224
    shafts VII. [illegible] 235, 304
    spur gears VII. 320
    [illegible] VII. [illegible]
    width of belt VII. 229
    worm and worm gear VII. 338
Machine riveting IV. 21
Machine screws VII. 365
Machine setting I. 209
Machine shop work I. 11-211
Machine taps II. 80

Note.—For page numbers, see foot of pages

Machine tools VII. 261
Machinery
    classification of VII. [illegible]
    mill and plant VII. 267
    motive power VII. 263
    structural VII. [illegible]
[illegible] II. 343-350
[illegible] I. 38
Magnetic clutches II. 337-340
Magnetic plug VI. [illegible]
Magnetic separator III. [illegible]
[illegible] II. [illegible]
Magnets, electric lifting II. 331
[illegible] III. [illegible]
[illegible] VI. [illegible]
Malleable cast iron II. [illegible]
Mandrels I. [illegible] II. 60
Manganese II. [illegible]
Manganese steel II. 259
[illegible] IV. [illegible] 170
[illegible] boiler IV. [illegible]
Manometers VI. [illegible]
Manufacture of iron II. [illegible]
Manufacture of steel II. [illegible]
Maple III. [illegible]
Marine engines V. [illegible]
Marking gauges III. [illegible]
[illegible] VI. [illegible]
Marshall gear V. 272
Mason valve IV. 187
Mean effective pressure V. [illegible]
Measuring tools I. 18
Mechanical development, definition of VII. 197
Mechanical drawing VII. 11-[illegible]
    instruments and materials VII. 11
    plates VII. 31-38, 53-61, 109 [illegible]
    projections VII. 41
    working drawings (see "Working drawings") VII. [illegible]
    working shop drawings VII. 117
Mechanical efficiency V. 187, 195
Mechanical generators VI. 223
Mechanical specification, definition of VII. [illegible]
Mechanical stokers IV. [illegible]

	Vol.	Page
Mechanical thought, definition of	VII.	[illegible]
Mechanics, constructive	VII.	[illegible]
Mechanism	III.	[illegible]
Melting, principles of	III.	[illegible]
Melting metal	III.	238
Melting of steel	III.	268
Mensuration, problems in, for sheet metal workers	VI.	[illegible]
Metaline	V.	74
Metallurgy	II.	227–[illegible]
Metals, table of	II.	[illegible]
Meters	V.	[illegible]
Meyer valve	V.	[illegible]
Micrometer, reading the	I.	[illegible]
Micrometer caliper	I.	[illegible]
Micrometer graduations	I.	168
Mill and plant machinery	VII.	267
Milling cutters	II.	121
Milling machine	I.	155
Milling machine arbors	II.	68
Milne water-tube boiler	IV.	136
Minerals	II.	[illegible]
Mitre valve	IV.	[illegible]
Modern gas engine	VI.	81
Mond by-product gas-producer	VI.	60
Morgan gas-producer	VI.	37
Mortise teeth	VII.	329
Mosher water-tube boiler	IV.	[illegible]
Motion	III.	311
Motive-power machinery	VII.	263
Motor, gasoline	VI.	161
Motors in machine shops	I.	219
Mould		
building an intricate	III.	235
building a simple	III.	233
packing	III.	266
pressure in	III.	179
Moulding		
methods of	III.	[illegible]
principles of	III.	[illegible]
Moulding machines	III.	212
Moulding materials	III.	157
Moulding problems	III.	[illegible]
Moulding tools	III.	[illegible]
Muff coupling	VII.	[illegible]
Muffler	VI.	170
Multiple die	II.	196

Note. [illegible]

	Vol.	Page
Multiple expansion	V.	[illegible]

N

	Vol.	Page
Naphtha	VI.	[illegible]
Natural and forced drafts	IV.	[illegible]
Natural-draft gas-producer	VI.	25
Newcomen steam engine	V.	13
Nickel steel	II. [illegible]; VII.	[illegible]
Nitrogen	VI.	[illegible]
[illegible]	V.	[illegible]
Non-sectional boiler, definition of	IV.	76

O

	Vol.	Page
Odometers	VI.	232
Oil engines	VI.	139–149
Oil gas	VI.	15
Oil separator or interceptor	V.	343
Oil stones	III.	[illegible]
Olefiant gas	VI.	12
Open-hearth steel	II. [illegible]; VII.	[illegible]
Order sheets	VII.	181–184
Ores of iron	II.	227
Original design, suggestions on	VII.	[illegible]
Orthographic projection	VII.	[illegible]
Otto cycle	VI.	[illegible]
Oxygen	VI.	[illegible]

P

	Vol.	Page
Pack hardening	II.	[illegible]
Packing the mould	III.	266
Pantograph	V.	183
Parsons turbine	V.	[illegible]
Parting sand	III.	65, [illegible]
Pattern making	III.	11[illegible]
Pening	I.	[illegible]
Permanent gas	VI.	[illegible]
Petroleum	VI.	[illegible]
[illegible]	III.	[illegible]
[illegible]	II. [illegible]; VII.	[illegible]
Pickling	I.	[illegible]
Pierson water regulator	VI.	[illegible]
Pig iron	II.	[illegible]
Pin taper	I.	[illegible]
Pinion bore	VII.	[illegible]
[illegible]	III.	[illegible]
Pipe coverings	IV.	[illegible]
Pipe threads, cutting	I.	[illegible]

Vol. Page

Piping IV, 215
Piston V, 21, [illegible]
Piston rod V, 21
Piston speed V, 127, 190
Piston valve V, [illegible]
[illegible] VII, [illegible]
[illegible] III, [illegible]
[illegible] VII, [illegible]
[illegible] III, [illegible]
[illegible] IV, [illegible]
Plain milling cutter I, 163
Planer I, 139
Planer tools I, 143
Planes III, 23
Planetary gear VI, 183
[illegible] V, 197
Planing machines III, [illegible]
[illegible] III, [illegible]
Plate planer I, 145
[illegible] IV, [illegible]
Plug gauge II, [illegible]
Poetter gas-producer VI, [illegible]
Point of cut-off V, 201
[illegible] V, [illegible]
[illegible] V, 201
Pop regulator IV, [illegible]
Pop safety-valve IV, [illegible]
Poppet valve IV, [illegible]
Porter governor V, [illegible]
Positive blower IV, 366
[illegible] III, 247
[illegible] V, [illegible]
[illegible] VI, 276
Pressure gas-producers VI, 132
Pressure gauges IV, 69; V, 347
Pressure in moulds III, [illegible]
Pressure and superheat V, 152
Prick punch I, [illegible]
Priming IV, [illegible]
Producer gas VI, 15
Profile plane VII, 47
Projections
    orthographic VII, 41
    third plane of VII, 47
[illegible] V, 192
Protractor I, 17; VII, 29
[illegible] pig iron II, 237

Note [illegible]

Vol. Page

Pulley arms VII, [illegible]
Pulley hub VII, [illegible]
Pulley rim VII, 289
Pulleys VII, 227, 239, 288
    proportions of VII, 303
    special forms of VII, 302
Pulsometer V, 12
[illegible] IV, 284
[illegible] V, 40
Pumps for feeding boiler IV, [illegible]
Punch II, 188
[illegible] II, [illegible]

Q

[illegible] V, 27
[illegible] III, 357

R

[illegible] III, 27
Rack and pinion III, 365
Radial drill I, [illegible]
Radial valve gears V, 269
[illegible] VI, 200
[illegible] II, 251
Rammers III, [illegible]
Ramming III, 172
Rapping plates III, 110
Ratio of expansion V, 128
Reamer holders II, 60
Reamers [illegible] II, 50
    adjustable II, 51
    [illegible] II, 41
    formed II, 56
    hardening II, 43
    inserted-blade II, 50
    numbers of cutters for, table II, 42
    shell II, 54
    [illegible] II, [illegible]
    straightening II, [illegible]
    taper II, [illegible]
[illegible] V, 298
Receiving gauge II, [illegible]
Reducing valves IV, 186
Refining copper II, 265
Refrigerating machinery, erection of V, 320
Refrigeration V, 297, [illegible]
Release V, [illegible]
Releasing tap holders II, 87

Vol. Page

Removable bushings . II, [illegible]
Retort gas VI, [illegible]
Retrograde vernier I, [illegible]
Return traps IV, 208
Return-tube boilers IV, 89
Reverberatory furnaces I, [illegible]
Revolution, temporary center of III, 316
Revolving bodies III, 316
Reynolds Corliss gear V, 285
Ring gauge II, 205
Ring, round stock I, 283
Riveted joints IV, 56
Rivets and riveting IV, 20
Robb-Mumford boiler IV, 105
Rocker V, [illegible]
"Rocket" V, 17
Rocking grates IV, 153
Rope brake V, [illegible]
Rope and drum VII, 224
Root water-tube boiler IV, [illegible]
Rose reamers II, [illegible]
Rotary pumps IV, [illegible]
Round and hollow planes III, [illegible]
Round lap weld I, [illegible]
Router plane III, 30
Rules III, [illegible]

S

Safety cam V, [illegible]
Safety-stop VI, [illegible]
Safety governor VI, 280
Safety valves IV, 69, 181
Sand and borax I, 279
Sand holes III, [illegible]
Sand match III, 255
Sands for moulding III, 157
Saturated vapor V, 96
Savery steam engine V, 11
Saw bench III, 56
Sawing machines III, 56
Scabs III, [illegible]
Scale drawings VII, 93
Scales V, 141; VII, 29
Scarfing I, [illegible]
Scavenging the cylinder VI, [illegible]
Scraping I, 49
Scraping tools III, [illegible]

Note—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Scratch awl I, [illegible]; III, [illegible]
Screw cutting I, 116
Screw die hobs II, 81
Screw slotting cutters I, 158
Screw threads I, [illegible]; VII, 79
Screws III, [illegible]
Scroll saw III, [illegible]
Scrub plane III, 27
Sectional boiler, definition of IV, 70
Self-hardening steel I, 343
Sensible heat of gas VI, [illegible]
Separator IV, 204; V, 127
Separator calorimeter IV, 212
Set hammers I, 274
Set screws VII, 364
Shade lines VII, 65, 71
Shaft governors V, 69
Shafts V, 21; VII, 304
  bending combined with torsion VII, 310
  centrifugal whirling VII, 313
  combined stresses VII, 307
  deflection VII, 311
  horse-power of VII, 314
  problems on VII, 320
  simple bending VII, 307
  simple torsion VII, 307
  tension or compression combined with torsion VII, 309
  tension or pressure combined with bending VII, 308
Shank mill II, 147
Shaper I, 149
Shaping metal I, 292
Shapley boiler IV, 104
Sheet-metal work VI, 293-368
Sheet metal workers, problems in construction for VI, 371-375
Shell end mills I, 166
Shell reamers II, 54
Shock absorbers VI, 233
Shop lighting I, 255-264
Shrinkage III, 72
Shrinkage cracks III, 182
Shrinkage heads III, 178
Shrinkage rule III, [illegible]
Shrouding a tooth VII, [illegible]
Side milling cutters I, 159

Vol. Page
Sienite II. 229
Sight-feed lubricators V. 76
Silicon II. 255
Simple bending VII. 307
Simple engines V. 24
Simple torsion VII. 307
Single-furnace return-tube boiler IV. 60
Single-lip drills II. 31
[illegible] II. 18
Single-tube boiler, definition of IV. 70
Sketches VII. 96
Skew chisel III. 55
Slabbing miller I. 171
Slag II. 233
Sledges I. 271
Slide valve V. 22
Sliding gear transmission VI. 185
Slip IV. 349
Slotter I. 151
Smelting lead II. 268
[illegible] VI. 56
Smoke, prevention of IV. 155
Smoothing plane III. 26
Smythe gas-producer VI. 38
Snap flask III. 276
[illegible] II. 209
Soapstone V. 74
Solid lubricants V. 74
Solid milling cutters II. 122
[illegible] II. 258
Specific heat V. 297
    of producer gas, rule VI. 29
Specific gravity VI. 1
    of producer gas, rule VI. 29
Speed, effect of V. 138
Speed of belting VII. 285
Speed of drills I. 56
Speed lathe I. 74
Spill trough III. 276
Spiral milling cutters II. 127
Spirals, cutting of I. 186
Spline VII. 367, 370
Splining shafts I. 181
Split draft IV. 73
Split pulleys VII. 296
[illegible] I. 287
Spoke-shave III. 60

Spring governors V. 69
Spring screw-threading dies II. 97
Spring tempering II. 28
Sprue cutter III. 280
Spur gear rim, arms, and hub VII. 327
Spur gears III. 360 VII. 320
Square thread I. 147
Square thread taps II. 85
Squares III. 34
Standard key ways II. 137
Standard rule III. 46
Standard screw threads I. 118
Standard steel scale I. 19
Standard taper I. 52
Stanley steamer VI. 159
Stay bolts IV. 36
Stay tubes IV. 41
Staying IV. 61
Staying boiler shell IV. 32
Steady rest I. 84
Steam blowers VI. 19
Steam boiler trials IV. 243
Steam chest V. 21
Steam consumption V. 216
Steam decadence VI. 156
Steam distribution, inequality of V. 132
Steam elevators VI. 241
Steam engine V. 11–145
Steam engine indicators V. 167–221
Steam jackets V. 135
Steam jets IV. 167
Steam line V. 200
Steam pipe IV. 69
Steam pressure, effect of raising V. 134
Steam pumps IV. 261–360
    direct-acting V. 41
    duplex V. 44
Steam space IV. 49
Steam separators IV. 203
Steam tables V. 98
Steam traps IV. 206
Steam turbine V. 78, 143, 147
    balance V. 149
    bearings of V. 158
    clearances V. 148
    Curtis V. 147
    De Laval V. 82, 161

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

	Vol	Page
Steam turbine		
governors	V,	154
lubrication of	V,	159
Parsons	V,	85
speed limit of	V,	161
vertical type	V	148
Westinghouse Parsons	V,	156
Steam and vacuum gauges	IV,	171
Steam valves	IV,	318
Steam vehicles	VI,	159
Steel	IV,	12
Bessemer process	II,	244
cementation process	II,	241
crucible process	II,	243
cupola process	II,	246
definition of	II,	297
direct process	II,	246
effects of elements in	II,	261
manufacture of	II,	297
melting of	III,	268
tempering	II	261
tool	II,	17
Steel castings	III,	263
Steel cores	III,	267
Steel facing mixtures	III,	264
Steel flasks	III,	265
Steel moulds, setting up	III,	270
Steering heads	VI,	206
Step-bearing	V,	148
Stephenson link motion	V, [illegible]	262
Stephenson locomotive	V,	17
Stepped cones	III,	328
Stirling water-tube boiler	IV,	135
Stock for bent shapes, calculation of	I,	290
Straight edge	I,	14
Straight fluted drills	II,	[illegible]
Straight-line engine governor	V,	71
Straight pene hammer	I,	11
Straight reamers	II	41
Straightening reamers	II,	44
Strain, definition of	VII,	219
Stratton steam separator	IV,	205
Strength of boiler materials	IV,	15
Strength of boilers	IV,	53
Stress, definition of	VII,	219
Structural machinery	VII,	264
Stub teeth	VII,	330
Studs	VII [illegible]	[illegible]
Stuffing-box of compressor	V	[illegible]
[illegible]	V	[illegible]
Suction gas-producers	VI, 13,	132
Sulphur	II	[illegible]
Sulzer gear	V,	291
Sunlight, distribution of	I,	[illegible]
Superheated steam	V, 118,	135
Superheated vapor	V,	104
Surface condensers	V,	47
Surface gauge	I,	[illegible]
Surface mining of iron ore	II,	284
Swage blocks	I	[illegible]
Swages	I	274
Swells	III,	182
Swindell gas-producer	VI,	30
Symbols	VII	18
T		
T-rest	I,	75
T-slot cutters	II,	149
T-square	VII,	15
T-weld	I,	289
Tables		
alloy mixtures, proportions of	III,	274
alloys	II,	277
angles and tees	VI,	368
"arbitration bar," tests on	III,	293
barometer readings	IV,	261
boiler evaporation	IV,	46
boiler tests	IV,	252
boiler tubes, lap-welded	IV,	48
boilers, rate of combustion of	IV,	46
bolts, strength of	VII,	360
calcium brine solution	V,	373
cast-iron analyses	II,	235
cast iron, face milling of	I,	179
cast iron, surface milling of	I,	178
cast iron, wrought iron, copper, lead, brass, and zinc, weight of	VI	356
chimney data	IV,	65
chloride of sodium brine	V,	374
clearance, effect of, on efficiency of engine	VI	[illegible]
coal, analysis and heat value of	IV,	[illegible]
colors denoting tempers, and degree of heat corresponding	II,	[illegible]

Note — For page numbers see foot of pages.

Vol Page

Tables
- combustion data VI, 13
- crucibles, sizes of III, 287
- cupola furnace dimensions III, 240
- cutters for reamers, number of II, 17
- cutters, sizes of, for cutting flutes in twist drills II, 56
- cutters, standard keyways for II, 138
- cutting edges for milling cutters II, 122
- cutting edges for reamers II, 16
- drills, speed of I, 57
- elastic constants V, 191
- evaporation, factors of IV, 222
- face milling cutter data II, 152
- feather keys, proportions for VII, 372
- fire pumps, dimensions and capacities of IV, 304
- flat rolled iron, weights of I, 314; VI, 360–365
- foundry ladle data III, 246
- friction of water in pipes IV, 343
- gear design data VII, 332
- gib keys, proportions for VII, 372
- governors, sensitivity of V, 66
- grinding wheels, speed of I, 193
- heat losses in bare pipes IV, 218
- heating surface of boiler data IV, 51
- hexagon bolt heads, U. S. standard VII, 91
- hyperbolic or Napierian logarithms V, 131
- iron bars, square and round VI, 366, 367
- jobbing flasks, sizes of III, 165
- lap joints IV, 59
- laps, travel, and angular advance data V, 242
- mandrels, dimensions of, to 1 inch II, 64
- metals II, 275
- phosphor-bronze mixtures III, 275
- pig irons, analysis of II, 295
- piston rod data IV, 291
- producer-gas analysis VI, 13
- pump capacity data IV, 298
- pump data IV, 267, 268, 334
- radiation of heat, relative value of preventives of IV, 219

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages

Tables
- ratio of grate surface of boiler to H. P IV, 51
- riveted joints, relative strength of IV, 24
- round and square rolled iron, weights of I, 315
- saturated ammonia, properties of V, 372
- saturated steam, properties of V, 100
- screw threads, U. S. standard I, 119; VII, 83
- screw threads, Whitworth VII, 84
- sheet copper VI, 357
- sheet iron and steel, standard gauge for VI, 359
- sheet zinc VI, 358
- slip IV, 299
- soft machinery steel, face milling of I, 179
- soft machinery steel, surface milling of I, 178
- spring screw-threading dies II, 97
- spur gears, safe working stresses for different speeds VII, 226
- square bolt heads, U. S. standard VII, 91
- square and hexagon nuts VII, 91
- suction and delivery pipes, sizes of IV, 312
- taps, number of cutter for different diameters of II, 78
- taps and corresponding drills I, 63
- temperature, effects of, on action of steam VI, 23
- thermometer scales V, 371
- torsional moments VII, 229
- valve gear data V, 293
- variation of heat loss with pressure IV, 218
- wrought iron pipe, standard sizes of VII, 93
- wrought iron pipe, standard threads for VII, 93

Tabor indicator V, 179
Tap bolts VII, 364
Tap holders II, 87
Tap wrenches II, 87
Taper cones III, 326

Vol. Page

Taper pins VII. 370
Taper reamers II 53
Taper shank twist drill I 52
Taper taps II 80
Taps I 61 II 73
  adjustable II. 82
  forms of flutes II. 77
  hand II 73
  hardening II. 79
  inserted-blade II 83
  machine II 80
  square thread II. 85
  table II. 78
Tar VI 64
Taylor gas-producer VI. 37, 130
Tempering steel I. 330; II 26, 261
Template III. 132
Templets I. 70
Tension, compression, and torsion VII. 211
Tension or compression combined with torsion VII. 309
Tension or pressure combined with bending VII. 308
Testing machines IV. 14
Theoretical card, to draw V. 203
Theoretical indicator diagram V 199
Thermal capacity VI. 13
Thermal efficiency of steam engine V. 199
Thermodynamics of Otto cycle VI. 91
Thermometers V 140 297
Third plane of projection VII. 47
Thompson indicator V. 174
Thornycroft-Marshall water-tube boiler IV. 127
Thread-cutting dies II. 91
Threaded holes and invisible threads VII. 80
Three- and four-lipped roughing reamers II. 49
Throttling calorimeter IV. 213
Through bolts VII. 364
Through-tube boiler IV. 96
Thumb tacks VII. 13
Tight and loose pulleys III. 331
Timing valve VI. 107
Tin II. 271
Tires VI. 214
Tongs I 372
Tool forging and tempering I 331
Tool holders II 90
Tool maker II 11
Tool making II. 11-224
Tool steel I. 328; II. 17
  annealing II 18
  centering II 18
  cutting from bar II 18
  hardening II 21
  heat treatment for II 319
  straightening II [illegible]
  tempering II 26
Tool steel work I 328
Tools
  cutting I 39
  hand-operated I 11
  measuring I 18
  pattern maker's III. 17
Torsional moments, tabulation of VII. 229
Tracing VII. 99
Trains of wheels III. 367
Trammels III. 39
Transfer calipers I. 22
Trick valve V. 261
Triple-expansion engines V. 27
Triplex pump IV. 307
Trowels III. 168
Try-cocks IV. 170
Try square I. 15
Tube-cleaners IV 168
Tube space IV. 40
Tube-stoppers IV. 168
Tubes, boiler IV, 39, 47, 62
Tungsten steel II, 260, 317
Turbine, steam V, 78, 143, 147
Turning I. 106
Turning an eccentric I. 112
Turning up a section VII. 96
Turning a taper I. 107
Turning tools I. 100
Twist drills I, 51; II. 34
  backing off II. 37
  cutting flutes in, table II 36
  grinding II. [illegible]
  hardening II. [illegible]
Types of boilers IV. 69-141

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

	Vol.	Page
U		
[illegible]	VI.	[illegible]
[illegible]	III.	[illegible]
[illegible]	V.	[illegible]
[illegible]	V.	[illegible]
Universal [illegible]	III.	37
Universal [illegible]	I.	170
Universal wood trimmer	III.	61
[illegible]	IV.	[illegible]
[illegible]	IV.	[illegible]
V		
[illegible]	I.	117
[illegible]	V.	292
[illegible]	V.	[illegible]
Valve gears	V. [illegible]; VI.	[illegible]
[illegible]	V.	278
drop cut-off	V.	84
radial (see "Radial," etc.)	V.	269
[illegible]	V.	[illegible]
Valves	IV.	178
angle	IV.	179
check	IV.	80
in gas engines	VI.	87
[illegible]	IV.	80
globe	IV.	178
[illegible]	V.	[illegible]
without lap	V.	[illegible]
materials for	IV.	184
[illegible]	IV.	184
reducing	IV.	186
in refrigerating machinery	V.	[illegible]
[illegible]	IV.	181
[illegible]	VI.	[illegible]
[illegible]	VI.	171
Variation of load	V.	137
Vehicle control	VI.	192
Velocity		
composition of	III.	314
definition of	III.	312
linear	III.	317
[illegible]	III.	169
[illegible]	III.	174
Vernier	I.	27
Vernier height gauge	II.	15
Vernier micrometer	I.	31
Vertical and horizontal engines	V.	32
Vertical milling machine	I. 213	218
Vertical milling spindle	I.	173
Voltmeters	VI.	232
Volume of gas	VI.	13
W		
Wagon boiler	IV.	73
Walschaert gear	V.	278
Warping	III.	182
Warping and twisting of wood	III.	14
Washita oil stone	III.	48
Water balance elevator	VI.	249
Water gas	VI. [illegible]	[illegible]
Water gauge-glass	IV.	177
Water gauges	IV.	174
gauge glasses	IV.	175
try cocks	IV.	175
Water jacket	V. 323; VI.	[illegible]
Water regulators	VI.	54
Water-seal gas-producer, definition of	VI.	25
Water space	IV.	49
Water-tube boilers	IV.	108
Water vapor	VI.	12
Watt's diagram of work	V.	172
Watt's indicator	V.	16
Watt's steam engine	V.	[illegible]
Wear on buckets	V.	152
Web gears	VII.	331
Weight of producer gas, rule	VI.	29
Welded joints	IV.	25
Welding	I. 278; II.	243
Welding compounds	I.	280
Welding tool steel	I.	289
Welsbach burner	I.	260
Westinghouse-Parsons steam turbine	V.	156
Wheel draft	IV.	73
White pine	III.	12
White steamer	VI.	159
Whitworth thread	I.	117
Wickes water-tube boiler	IV.	132
Willans central valve engine	V.	31
Wing dividers	I.	20
Wintherthur water regulator	VI.	55
Wipe break	VI.	109
Wood used for patterns	III.	12
Wood, warping and twisting of	III.	14
Wood turning lathe	III.	51

[illegible] pages

Vol. Page
Wooden chucks III, [illegible]
Wolf's engine V, 19, 204
Wootten boiler IV, [illegible]
Work
  definition of V, 167
  formula for V, 168
  Watt's diagram of V, 172
Working drawings VII, 63
  assembly drawing VII, 103
  blue-printing VII, 100
  bolts and nuts VII, 84
  conventional methods VII, 78
  cross sections VII, 69
  definition of VII, 63
  detail drawing VII, 97
  dimensions VII, 74
  finished surfaces VII, 77
  in general VII, 96
  lines VII, 64
  location of views VII, 65
  long pieces VII, 95
  materials VII, 78
  pipes and pipe threads VII, 92
  scale drawings VII, 93
  screw threads VII, 79

Vol Page
Working drawings
  shade lines VII, 71
  sketches VII, 90
  threaded holes and invisible threads VII, 81
  threads in sectional pieces VII, 82
  tracing VII, 99
Working shop drawings VII, 117
  advanced work VII, 117
  cost of producing VII, 120
  duplex pump plates VII, 123
  essentials VII, 119
  method of procedure VII, 122
Working stresses and strains VII, 218
Worm and wheel III, 340
Worm and worm gear VII, 88
Worthington water-tube boiler IV, 117
Wrought iron II, 237 IV, [illegible]
Wyer suction gas-producer VI, [illegible]

Z

Zero line V, 202
Zeuner's valve diagrams V, 256
Zinc II, [illegible] III, [illegible]

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

BINDING SECT. JUL 15 1974

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

TJ American School, Chicago
9 Cyclopedia of mechanical
A54 engineering
1908
v.7

Engin. [redacted]